

**23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503**

**CIHM  
Microfiche  
Series  
(Monographs)**

**ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches  
(monographies)**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

**© 1992**

# Technical and Bibliographic Notes / Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

☐ Coloured covers/  
Couverture de couleur

☐ Coloured pages/  
Pages de couleur

☐ Covers damaged/  
Couverture endommagée

☐ Pages damaged/  
Pages endommagées

☐ Covers restored and/or laminated/  
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée

☐ Pages restored and/or laminated/  
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées

☐ Cover title missing/  
Le titre de couverture manque

☒ Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/  
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées

☐ Coloured maps/  
Cartes géographiques en couleur

☐ Pages detached/  
Pages détachées

☐ Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/  
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)

☒ Showthrough/  
Transparence

☐ Coloured plates and/or illustrations/  
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur

☒ Quality of print varies/  
Qualité inégale de l'impression

☐ Bound with other material/  
Relié avec d'autres documents

☒ Continuous pagination/  
Pagination continue

☒ Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/  
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure

☒ Includes index(es)/  
Comprend un (des) index

☐ Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/  
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.

Title on header taken from:/  
Le titre de l'en-tête provient:

☐ Title page of issue/  
Page de titre de la livraison

☐ Caption of issue/  
Titre de départ de la livraison

☐ Masthead/  
Générique (périodiques) de la livraison

☒ Additional comments: / Irregular pagination.  
Commentaires supplémentaires:

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/  
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X
						<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>					

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

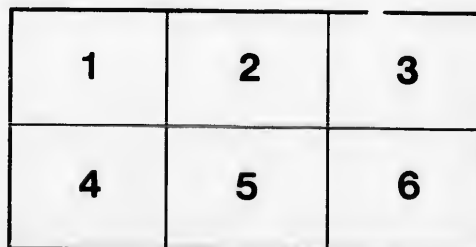
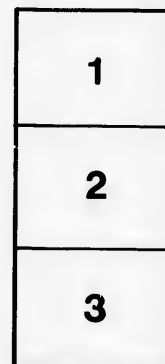
D. B. Weldon Library  
University of Western Ontario

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol → (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ▼ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

D. B. Weldon Library  
University of Western Ontario

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole → signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ▼ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.



A

H

D

THREE YEARS  
**T R A V E L S**  
THROUGH THE  
INTERIOR PARTS  
OF  
**NORTH-AMERICA,**  
FOR MORE THAN  
**FIVE THOUSAND MILES;**

CONTAINING  
An Account of the great LAKES, and all the LAKES, ISLANDS,  
and RIVERS, CATARACTS, MOUNTAINS, MINERALS, SOIL,  
and VEGETABLE PRODUCTIONS of the NORTH-WEST  
REGIONS of that vast CONTINENT;

WITH A  
DESCRIPTION OF THE BIRDS, BEASTS,  
REPTILES, INSECTS, AND FISHES  
PECULIAR TO THE COUNTRY.

TOGETHER WITH A CONCISE  
HISTORY OF THE GENIUS, MANNERS, AND CUSTOMS  
OF THE INDIANS INHABITING THE LANDS THAT LIE  
ADJACENT TO THE HEADS, AND TO THE WESTWARD  
OF THE GREAT RIVER MISSISSIPPI;

AND AN  
**A P P E N D I X,**  
DESCRIBING THE UNCULTIVATED PARTS OF AMERICA THAT  
ARE THE MOST PROPER FOR FORMING SETTLEMENTS.

---

BY CAPTAIN JONATHAN CARVER,  
OF THE PROVINCIAL TROOPS IN AMERICA.

---

EDINBURGH:  
PUBLISHED BY JAMES KEY.—1807.

12964

---

TO  
JOSEPH BANKS, Esq;  
PRESIDENT  
OF THE  
*ROYAL SOCIETY.*

SIR,

WHEN the Public are informed that I have long had the Honour of your Acquaintance—that my design in publishing the following Work has received your Sanction—that the Composition of it has stood the Test of your Judgment—and that it is by your Permission, a Name so deservedly eminent in the Literary World is prefixed to it,

I need not be apprehensive of its Success; as your Patronage will unquestionably give them Assurance of its Merit.

For this Public Testimony of your Favour, in which I pride myself, accept, Sir, my most grateful Acknowledgments; and believe me to be, with great Respect,

Your obedient,

Humble Servant,

J. CARVER.

s Suc-  
nques-  
of its

ur Fa-  
accept,  
ments ;  
espect,

VER.

---

AN

A D D R E S S

TO THE

P U B L I C.

THE favourable reception this Work has met with, claims the Author's most grateful acknowledgments. A large edition having run off in a few months, and the sale appearing to be still unabated, a new impression is become necessary. On this occasion, was he to conceal his feelings, and pass over in silence a distinction so beneficial and flattering, he would justly incur the imputation of ingratitude. That he might not do this, he takes the opportunity, which now presents itself, of conveying to the Public (though in terms inadequate to the warm emotions of his heart,) the sense he entertains of their favour ; and thus transmits to them his thanks.

In this new edition, care has been taken to rectify those errors which have unavoidably proceeded from the hurry of the press, and likewise any incorrectness in the language that has found its way into it.

The credibility of some of the incidents related in the following pages, and some of the stories intro-

duced therein, having been questioned, particularly the prognostication of the Indian priest on the banks of Lake Superior, and the story of the Indian and his rattle snake, the author thinks it necessary to avail himself of the same opportunity, to endeavour to eradicate any impressions that might have been made on the minds of his readers, by the apparent improbability of these relations.

As to the former, he has related it just as it happened. Being an eye-witness to the whole transaction, (and, he flatters himself, at the time, free from every trace of sceptical obstinacy or enthusiastic credulity,) he was consequently able to describe every circumstance minutely and impartially. This he has done; but without endeavouring to account for the means by which it was accomplished. Whether the prediction was the result of prior observations, from which certain consequences were expected to follow by the sagacious priest, and the completion of it merely accidental; or whether he was really endowed with supernatural powers, the narrator left to the judgment of his readers; whose conclusions, he supposes, varied according as the mental faculties of each were disposed to admit or reject facts that cannot be accounted for by natural causes.

The story of the rattle snake was related to him by a French gentleman of undoubted veracity; and were the readers of this work as thoroughly acquainted with the sagacity and instinctive proceedings of that animal, as he is, they would be as well assured of the truth of it. It is well known that those snakes which have survived through the summer the accidents reptiles are liable to, periodically retire to the woods, at the approach of winter; where each (as curious observers have remarked) take possession of the cavity it had occupied the preceding year. As

soon as the season is propitious, enlivened by the invigorating rays of the sun, they leave these retreats, and make their way to the same spot, though ever so distant, on which they had before found subsistence, and the means of propagating their species. Does it then require any extraordinary exertions of the mind to believe, that one of these regular creatures, after having been kindly treated by its master, should return to the box, in which it had usually been supplied with food, and had met with a comfortable abode, and that nearly about the time the Indian, from former experiments, was able to guess at. It certainly does not; nor will the liberal and ingenious doubt the truth of a story so well authenticated, because the circumstances appear extraordinary in a country where the subject of it is scarcely known.

These explanations the author hopes will suffice to convince his readers, that he has not, as travellers are sometimes supposed to do, amused them with improbable tales, or wished to acquire importance by making his adventures favour of the marvellous.

---



*[The text on this page is extremely faint and illegible due to the quality of the scan. It appears to be a single paragraph of text.]*

## CONTENTS.

<b>I</b>	<b>INTRODUCTION,</b>	21
	The Author sets out from Boston on his Travels,	31
	Description of Fort Michillimackinac,	32
	Fort La Bay	33
	the Green Bay,	34
	Lake Michigan,	38
	Arrives at the town of the Winnebagoes,	40
	Excursion of the Winnebagoes towards the Span- ish Settlements,	42
	Description of the Winnebago Lake,	43
	Instance of resolution of an Indian Woman,	45
	Description of the Fox River,	46
	Remarkable story of a Pattle Snake,	47
	The great Town of the Saukies,	49
	Upper Town of the Ottawaumies,	50
	Description of the Ouisconsin River,	ib.
	Lower Town of the Ottawaumies, or, La Prairie les Ouiens,	51
	An attack by some Indian Plunderers,	52
	Description of the Mississippi from the mouth of the Ouisconsin to Lake Pepin,	54
	Lake Pepin,	ib.
	Remarkable ruins of an ancient Fortification,	55
	The River Bands of the Naudowessie Indians,	57
	Adventure with a party of these, and some of the Chipeways,	ib.
	Description of a remarkable Cave,	60

# CONTENTS.

Uncommon behaviour of the Prince of the Winnebagoes at the Falls of St Anthony,	62
Description of the Falls,	63
Extent of the Author's Travels,	65
Description of the River St Pierre,	67
Sources of the four great Rivers of North America,	ib.
Reflections on their Affinity,	68
The Naudowessies of the Plains, with whom the Author wintered in the year 1766,	70
The author returns to the Mouth of the River St Pierre,	73
Account of a violent Thunder Storm,	ib.
Speech made by the Author in a Council held by the Naudowessies at the Great Cave,	74
Adventure with a Party of Indians near Lake Pepin,	80
Description of the Country adjacent to the River St Pierre,	82
Account of different Clays found near the Marble River,	83
Description of the Chipeway River,	84
Extraordinary effects of a Hurricane,	85
The Author arrives at the Grand Portage on the North-west borders of Lake Superior,	87
Account of the Lakes lying further to the North-west: Lake Bourbon, Lake Winnepeek, Lake Du Bois, Lake La Pluye, Red Lake, &c.	ib.
Account of a nation of Indians supposed to have been tributary to the Mexican Kings,	94
the shining Mountains,	96
A singular prediction of the Chief Priest of the Killistinoes verified,	97
Description of Lake Superior,	103
Story of the two Chipeways landing on the Island of Maurepas,	105
Account of great quantities of Copper Ore,	107.

the Win- 62  
 ay, 63  
 - 65  
 67  
 th Ame- ib.  
 68  
 hom the 70  
 e River 73  
 - ib.  
 cil held 74  
 ave, 80  
 r Lake 82  
 e River 83  
 e Mar- 84  
 - 85  
 on the 87  
 ; North-  
 peek, Lake,  
 ib.  
 o have 94  
 96  
 the 97  
 103  
 the 105  
 107

## CONTENTS.

Description of the Falls of St Marie,	109
----- Lake Huron,	110
----- Saganaum and Thunder Bays,	111
Extraordinary phenomenon in the Straits of	
Michillimackinac,	112
Description of Lake St Claire,	114
----- the River, Town and Fort of Detroit,	114
Remarkable rain at Detroit,	116
Attack of Fort Detroit by Pontiac,	117
Description of Lake Erie,	125
----- the River and Falls of Niagara,	126
----- Lake Ontario and Lake Oneida,	127
----- Lake Champlain and Lake George,	128
Account of a tract of land granted to Sir Ferdi-	
nando Gorges, and Captain John Mason,	129
The Author's Motives for undertaking his Tra-	
vels,	132

## CHAPTER I.

The origin of the Indians,	135
Sentiments of various Writers on this point,	136
----- Monsieur Charlevoix,	142
----- James Adair, Esq;	148
----- the Author of this Work,	152
Corroboration of the latter by Dr Robertson,	158

## CHAPTER II.

Of the persons, dress, &c. of the Indians,	160
An account of those who have written on this	
Subject,	ib.
Description of the persons of the Indians,	162
----- their Dress,	164

# CONTENTS.

the Dress of the Ottagumies,	165
the Dress of the Naudowessies,	ib.
The manner in which they build their tents and huts,	168
Their domestic utensils,	169

## CHAPTER III.

Of the manners, qualifications, &c. of the Indians,	171
Peculiar customs of the women,	172
The circumspect and stoical disposition of the men,	173
Their amazing sagacity,	175
The liberality of the Indians, and their opinion respecting money,	178

## CHAPTER IV.

Their method of reckoning time, &c.	180
The names by which they distinguish the months,	ib.
Their idea of the use of figures,	182

## CHAPTER V.

Of their Government, &c.	184
Their division into tribes,	ib.
The Chiefs of their bands,	185
The members that compose their councils,	187

## CONTENTS.

### CHAPTER VI.

Of their feasts,	-	189
Their usual food,	-	ib.
Their manner of dressing and eating their victu- als,	-	190

### CHAPTER VII.

Of their dances,	-	192
The manner in which they dance,	-	ib.
The pipe or calumet dance,	-	194
The war dance,	-	ib.
The Pawwaw dance,	-	195
An uncommon admission into a society among the Naudowessies,	-	ib.
The dance of the Indians on the banks of the Mississippi, referred to in the Journal,	-	200
The dance of the sacrifice,	-	204

### CHAPTER VIII.

Of their Hunting,	-	204
Their preparations before they set out,	-	205
Their manner of hunting the Bear,	-	206
Buffaloe, Deer, &c.	-	ib.
Beaver,	-	208

### CHAPTER IX.

Of their manner of making War, &c.	-	211
------------------------------------	---	-----

The Indian Weapons,	212
Their Motives for making War,	213
Preparations before they take the Field,	215
The manner in which they solicit other Nations to become their Auxiliaries,	218
Their manner of declaring War,	219
The method of engaging their Enemies,	221
An instance of the efficacy of it in the Defeat of General Braddock,	222
A detail of the Massacre at Fort William Henry in the year 1757,	223
Acuteness and Alacrity of the Indians in pur- suing their Enemies,	232
Their manner of Scalping,	233
The manner in which they retreat, and carry off their Prisoners,	234
A remarkable instance of heroism in a Female Prisoner,	235
Treatment of their Prisoners,	238
The origin of their selling Slaves,	245

## CHAPTER X.

Of their manner of making Peace, &c.	248
Account of an Engagement between the Iro- quois and the Ottagaumies and Saukies,	249
Manner in which they conduct a Treaty of Peace,	253
Description of the Pipe of Peace,	ib.
Belts of Wampum,	255

## CHAPTER XI.

Of their Games,	257
The Game of the Ball,	ib.
Bowl or Platter,	258

## CONTENTS:

### CHAPTER XII.

Of their Marriage Ceremonies,	260
The manner in which the Tribes near Canada celebrate their Marriages,	261
The form of Marriage among the Naudowessies,	264
Their manner of carrying on an Intrigue,	266
Of the Indian Names,	268

### CHAPTER XIII.

Of their Religion,	269
Their Ideas of a Supreme Being,	ib.
Future State,	271
Of their Priests,	ib.
The sentiments of others on the religious Prin- ciples of the Indians opposed,	273

### CHAPTER XIV.

Of their Diseases, &c.	275
The Complaints to which they are chiefly subject,	ib.
The manner in which they construct their Sweat- ing Stoves,	276
The methods in which they treat their Diseases,	277
An extraordinary instance of the judgment of an Indian Woman, in a desperate case,	279

### CHAPTER XV.

The manner in which they treat their Dead,	281
A specimen of their Funeral Harangues,	282
Their method of burying their Dead,	283
A singular instance of parental Affection in a Naudowessie Woman,	284



## CONTENTS.

### CHAPTER XVI.

A concise character of the Indians, . . .	288
Their personal and mental Qualifications, . . .	289
Their public Character as Members of a Community, . . .	290

### CHAPTER XVII.

Of their Language; Hieroglyphics, &c. . .	293
Of the Chipeway Tongue, . . .	ib.
Descriptive Specimen of their Hieroglyphics, &c. . .	295
Vocabulary of the Chipeway Language, . . .	298
<u>                    </u> Naudowessie Language, . . .	308

### CHAPTER XVIII.

Of the Beasts, Birds, Fishes, Reptiles; and Insects, which are found in the Interior Parts of North-America, . . .	314
--	-----

## B E A S T S.

The Tiger. The Bear. . . . .	315
The Wolf. The Fox. Dogs. The Cat of the Mountain, . . .	316
The Buffalo. The Deer. The Elk, . . .	317
The Moose. The Carraboo, . . .	318
The Carcajou. The Skunk, . . .	319
The Porcupine, . . .	321
The Wood-chuck. The Raccoon. The Marten. The Musquash, . . .	322
Squirrels. The Beaver, . . .	324
The Otter. The Mink, . . .	328

258

-	288
-	289
Com-	
-	290
-	
-	293
-	ib.
phics,	
-	295
-	298
,,	308

The Eagle.	The Night-Hawk.	The Whip-	
perwill,	-	-	329
The Fish-Hawk.	The Owl.	The Crane,	331
Ducks.	The Teal.	The Loon.	The Partridge,
			332
The Wood Pigeon.	The Woodpecker.	The	
Blue Jay.	The Wakon Bird,	-	333
The Black Bird.	The Red Bird.	The Whet-	
faw,	-	-	335
The King Bird.	The Humming Bird,		ib.

d In-  
Parts  
314

The Sturgeon,	-	-	-	336
The Cat Fish.	The Carp.	The Chub,	-	337

of the 315  
316  
- 317  
- 318  
- 319  
- 321

The Rattle Snake,	-	338
The Long Black Snake.	The Striped or Gar-	
ter Snake,	-	341
The Water Snake.	The Hissing Snake.	
Green Snake,	-	342
The Thorn-tail Snake.	The Speckled Snake.	
The Ring Snake.	The two-headed Snake.	
The Tortoise or Land Turtle,	-	343

arten.	322
	324
	328

The Swift Lizard. The Slow Lizard. The Tree Toad, 344

## I N S E C T S.

The Silk Worm.	The Tobacco Worm.	The Bee.	The Lightning Bug or Fire Fly,	345
The Water Bug.	The horned Bug.	Locust,		347

## CHAPTER XIX.

Of the Trees, Shrubs, Roots, Herbs, Flowers, &c.		348
---	--	-----

## T R E E S.

The Oak,		ib.
The Pine Tree.	The Maple.	The Ash,
		349
The Hemlock Tree.	The Bass or White Wood.	
The Wickopick or Suckwick.	The Button Wood,	351

## N U T T R E E S.

The Butter or Oil Nut.	The Beech Nut.	352
The Pecan Nut.	The Hickory,	353

## F R U I T T R E E S.

The Vine,		354
The Mulberry Tree.	The Crab Apple Tree.	
The Plum Tree.	The Cherry Tree.	
The Sweet Gum Tree,		ib.

## CONTENTS.

xix

### S H R U B S.

The Willow. Shin Wood. The Saffafras,	356
The Prickly Ash. The Moofe Wood. The	
Spoon Wood. The Elder,	357
The Shrub Oak. The Witch Hazel. The Myr-	
tle Wax Tree. Winter Green,	358
The Fever Bush. The Cranberry Bush. The	
Choak Berry,	359

### R O O T S   A N D   P L A N T S.

Spikenard. Sarfaparilla. Gingseng,	360
Gold Thread. Solomon's Seal. Devil's Bit.	
Blood Root,	361

### H E R B S.

Sanicle. Rattle Snake Plantain,	363
Poor Robin's Plantain. Toad Plantain. Rock	
Liverwort. Gargit or Skoke. Skunk Cab-	
bage or Poke. Wake Robin,	364
Wild Indigo. Cat Mint,	
FLOWERS,	365
	366

### F A R I N A C E O U S   A N D   L E G U M I N O U S R O O T S, &c.

Maize or Indian Corn. Wild Rice,	366
Beans. The Squash,	367

## CONTENTS.

### APPENDIX.

The Probability of the interior parts of North-America becoming Commercial Colonies,	371
The Means by which this might be effected,	372
Tracts of land pointed out, on which Colonies may be established with the greatest Advantage,	374
Dissertation on the Discovery of the North-west Passage,	378
The most certain way of attaining it,	ib.
Plan proposed by Richard Whitworth Esq; for making an Attempt from a Quarter hitherto unexplored,	379
The Reason of its being postponed,	380

---

## INTRODUCTION.

NO sooner was the late war with France concluded, and peace established by the treaty of Versailles in the year 1763, than I began to consider (having rendered my country some services during the war) how I might continue still serviceable, and contribute, as much as lay in my power, to make that vast acquisition of territory, gained by Great-Britain in North-America, advantageous to it. It appeared to me indispensibly needful, that Government should be acquainted, in the first place, with the true state of the dominions they were now become possessed of. To this purpose, I determined, as the next proof of my zeal, to explore the most unknown parts of them, and to spare no trouble or expence in acquiring a knowledge that promised to be so useful to my countrymen. I knew that many obstructions would arise to my scheme from the want of good maps and charts; for the French, whilst they retained their power in North-America, had taken every artful method to keep all other nations, particularly the English, in ignorance of the concerns of the interior parts of it: and to accomplish this design with the greater certainty, they had published inaccurate maps and false accounts; calling the different nations of the Indians by nicknames they had given them, and not by those really appertaining to them. Whether the intention of the French in doing this, was to prevent these nations from being discovered and traded with, or to con-

of North-  
Colonies, 371  
affected, 372  
Colonies  
atest Ad-  
374  
North-  
378  
ib.  
orth Esq;  
Quarter  
379  
380

deal their discourse, when they talked to each other of the Indian concerns, in their presence, I will not determine; but whatsoever was the cause from which it arose, it tended to mislead.

As a proof that the English had been greatly deceived by these accounts, and that their knowledge relative to Canada had usually been very confined;—before the conquest of Crown Point in 1759, it had been esteemed an impregnable fortress; but no sooner was it taken, than we were convinced that it had acquired its greatest security from false reports, given out by its possessors, and might have been battered down with a few four pounders. Even its situation, which was represented to be so very advantageous, was found to owe its advantages to the same source. It cannot be denied but that some maps of these countries have been published by the French with an appearance of accuracy; but these are of so small a size, and drawn on so minute a scale, that they are nearly inexplicable. The sources of the Mississippi, I can assert from my own experience, are greatly misplaced; for when I had explored them, and compared their situation with the French charts, I found them very erroneously represented, and am satisfied that these were only copied from the rude sketches of the Indians.

Even so lately as their evacuation of Canada, they continued their schemes to deceive, leaving no traces by which, any knowledge might accrue to their conquerors; for though they were well acquainted with all the lakes, particularly with Lake Superior, having constantly a vessel of considerable burden thereon, yet their plans of them are very incorrect. I discovered many errors in the descriptions given therein of its islands and bays, during a progress of eleven hundred miles that I coasted it in canoes.

ed to each other  
ence, I will not  
ause from which

been greatly de-  
their knowledge  
en very confin-  
Point in 1759,  
le fortrefs; but  
convinced that  
from false re-  
nd might have  
ounders. Even  
to be so very  
advantages to  
but that some  
blished by the  
cy; but these  
minute a scale,  
the sources of  
own experi-  
I had explor-  
tion with the  
roncously re-  
ere only copi-  
ns.

Canada, they  
aving no tra-  
crue to their  
acquainted  
Superior,  
able burden  
by incorrect  
ptions given  
progress of  
t in canoes.

## INTRODUCTION.

23

They likewise, on giving up the possessions of them, took care to leave the places they had occupied, in the same uncultivated state they had found them; at the same time destroying all their naval force. I observed myself part of the hulk of a very large vessel, burnt to the water's edge, just at the opening from the Straits of St Marie into the Lake.

These difficulties, however, were not sufficient to deter me from the undertaking, and I made preparations for setting out. What I chiefly had in view, after gaining a knowledge of the manners, customs, languages, soil, and natural productions of the different nations that inhabit the back of the Mississippi, was to ascertain the breadth of that vast continent, which extends from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean; in its broadest part between 43 and 46 degrees northern latitude. Had I been able to accomplish this, I intended to have proposed to government to establish a post in some of those parts about the Straits of Annian, which, having been first discovered by Sir Francis Drake, of course belong to the English. This I am convinced would greatly facilitate the discovery of a northwest passage, or a communication between Hudson's Bay and the Pacific Ocean: An event so desirable, and which has been so often sought for, but without success. Besides this important end, a settlement on that extremity of America would answer many good purposes, and repay every expence the establishment of it might occasion. For it would not only disclose new sources of trade, and promote many useful discoveries, but would open a passage for conveying intelligence to China, and the English settlements in the East Indies, with greater expedition than a tedious voyage by the Cape of Good Hope, or the Straits of Magellan, will allow of.



How far the advantages arising from such an enterprise may extend, can only be ascertained by the favourable concurrence of future events. But that the completion of the scheme, I have had the honour of first planning and attempting, will some time or other be effected, I make no doubt. From the unhappy divisions that at present subsist between Great Britain and America, it will probably be some years before the attempt is repeated; but whenever it is, and the execution of it carried on with propriety, those who are so fortunate as to succeed, will reap, exclusive of the national advantages that must ensue, emoluments beyond their most sanguine expectations. And whilst their spirits are elated by their success, perhaps they may bestow some commendations and blessings on the person who first pointed out to them the way. These, though but a shadowy recompence for all my toil, I shall receive with pleasure.

To what power or authority this new world will become dependent, after it has risen from its present uncultivated state, time alone can discover. But as the seat of empire from time immemorial has been gradually progressive towards the west, there is no doubt but that at some future period, mighty kingdoms will emerge from these wildernesses, and stately palaces and solemn temples, with gilded spires reaching the skies, supplant the Indian huts, whose only decorations are the barbarous trophies of their vanquished enemies.

As some of the preceding passages have already informed the reader, that the plan I had laid down for penetrating to the Pacific Ocean proved abortive, it is necessary to add, that this proceeded, not from its impracticability (for the farther I went, the more convinced I was that it could certainly be accom-

from such an en-  
 e ascertained by  
 re events. But  
 I have had the  
 ings, will some-  
 o doubt. From  
 subfist between  
 probably be some-  
 ; but whenever  
 on with pro-  
 to succeed, will  
 atages that must  
 ft sanguine ex-  
 are elated by  
 ow some com-  
 rson who first  
 e, though but  
 , I shall receive

ew world will  
 n from its pre-  
 can discover.  
 e immemorial  
 rds the west,  
 future period,  
 these wilder-  
 temples, with  
 out the Indian  
 barbarous trou

have already  
 laid down for  
 ed abortive,  
 ed, not from  
 ent, the more  
 be accom-

## INTRODUCTION.

25

plished), but from unforeseen disappointments. How-  
 ever, I proceeded so far, that I was able to make  
 such discoveries as will be useful in any future at-  
 tempt, and prove a good foundation for some more  
 fortunate successor to build upon. These I shall  
 now lay before the public in the following pages;  
 and am satisfied that the greatest part of them have  
 never been published by any person that has hi-  
 therto treated of the interior nations of the Indians;  
 particularly, the account I give of the Naudowessies,  
 and the situation of the heads of the four great rivers  
 that take their rise within a few leagues of each  
 other, nearly about the centre of this great conti-  
 nent; viz: The river Bourbon, which empties itself  
 into Hudson's Bay; the Waters of Saint Lawrence;  
 the Mississippi, and the River Oregon, or the River  
 of the West, that falls into the Pacific Ocean, at the  
 Straits of Annian.

The impediments that occasioned my return, be-  
 fore I had accomplished my purposes, were these.  
 On my arrival at Michillimackinac, the remotest  
 English post, in September 1766, I applied to Mr  
 Rogers, who was then governor of it, to furnish me  
 with a proper assortment of goods, as presents for  
 the Indians who inhabit the tract I intended to  
 pursue. He did this only in part; but promised to  
 supply me with such as were necessary, when I  
 reached the falls of Saint Anthony. I afterwards  
 learned that the governor fulfilled his promise in  
 ordering the goods to be delivered to me; but those  
 to whose care he intrusted them, instead of conform-  
 ing to his orders, disposed of them elsewhere.

Disappointed in my expectations from this quar-  
 ter, I thought it necessary to return to La Prairie  
 Le Chien; for it was impossible to proceed any fur-  
 ther without presents to ensure me a favourable re-

ception. This I did in the beginning of the year 1767, and finding my progress to the westward thus retarded, I determined to direct my course northward. I took this step with a view of finding a communication from the heads of the Mississippi, into Lake Superior, in order to meet at the grand Portage on the north-west side of that lake, the traders that usually come, about this season, from Michillimackinac. Of these I intended to purchase goods, and then to pursue my journey from that quarter, by way of the lakes du Pluye, Dubois, and Ounipique, to the heads of the River of the West, which, as I have said before, falls into the Straits of Annian, the termination of my intended progress.

I accomplished the former part of my design, and reached Lake Superior in proper time; but unluckily the traders I met there, acquainted me that they had no goods to spare; those they had with them being barely sufficient to answer their own demands in these remote parts. Thus disappointed a second time, I found myself obliged to return to the place from whence I began my expedition, which I did, after continuing some months on the north and east borders of Lake Superior, and exploring the bays and rivers that empty themselves into this large body of water.

As it may be expected that I should lay before the public the reasons that these discoveries, of so much importance to every one who has any connections with America, have not been imparted to them before, notwithstanding they were made upwards of ten years ago, I will give them to the world in a plain and candid manner, and without mingling with them any complaints on account of the ill treatment I have received.

On my arrival in England, I presented a petition to his Majesty in council, praying for a reimbursement of those sums I had expended in the service of Government. This was referred to the lords commissioners of trade and plantations. Their lordships from the tenor of it thought the intelligence I could give of so much importance to the nation, that they ordered me to appear before the board. This message I obeyed, and underwent a long examination; much I believe to the satisfaction of every lord present. When it was finished, I requested to know what I should do with my papers; without hesitation the first lord replied, That I might publish them whenever I pleased. In consequence of this permission, I disposed of them to a bookseller: but when they were nearly ready for the press, an order was issued from the council board, requiring me to deliver, without delay, into the plantation office, all my charts and journals, with every paper relative to the discoveries I had made. In order to obey this command, I was obliged to re-purchase them from the bookseller at a very great expence, and delivered them up. This fresh disbursement I endeavoured to get annexed to the account I had already delivered in, but the request was denied me, notwithstanding I had only acted, in the disposal of my papers, conformably to the permission I had received from the board of trade. This loss, which amounted to a very considerable sum, I was obliged to bear, and to rest satisfied with an indemnification for my other expences.

Thus situated, my only expectations are from the favour of a generous public; to whom I shall now communicate my plans, journals and observations, of which I luckily kept copies, when I delivered the originals into the plantation office. And this I do the more readily, as I hear they are mislaid; and

there is no probability of their ever being published. To those who are interested in the concerns of the interior parts of North-America, from the contiguity of their possessions, or commercial engagements, they will be extremely useful, and fully repay the sum at which they are purchased. To those, who, from a laudable curiosity, wish to be acquainted with the manners and customs of every inhabitant of this globe, the accounts here given of the various nations that inhabit so vast a tract of it, a country hitherto almost unexplored, will furnish an ample fund of amusement, and gratify their most curious expectations. And I flatter myself they will be as favourably received by the public, as descriptions of islands, which afford no other entertainment than what arises from their novelty; and discoveries, that seem to promise very few advantages to this country, though acquired at an immense expence.

To make the following work as comprehensive and entertaining as possible, I shall first give my readers an account of the route I pursued over this immense continent, and as I pass on, describe the number of the inhabitants, the situation of the rivers and lakes, and the productions of the country. Having done this, I shall treat, in distinct chapters, of the manners, customs, and languages of the Indians, and to complete the whole, add a vocabulary of the words most in use among them.

And here it is necessary to bespeak the candour of the learned part of my readers in the perusal of it, as it is the production of a person unused, from opposite avocations, to literary pursuits. He therefore begs they would not examine it with too critical an eye; especially when he assures them, that his attention has been more employed in giving a just description of a country, that promises, in some future

being published,  
 concerns of the  
 from the conti-  
 nental engage-  
 and fully re-  
 d. To those,  
 to be acquaint-  
 every inhabitant  
 of the various  
 it, a country  
 with an ample  
 most curious  
 they will be as  
 descriptions of  
 inment than  
 discoveries,  
 ages to this  
 the expence.

comprehensive  
 first give my  
 ed over this  
 describe the  
 of the rivers  
 the country.  
 st chapters,  
 of the In-  
 vocabulary

candour of  
 refusal of it,  
 , from op-  
 e therefore  
 critical an  
 t his atten-  
 a just de-  
 some future

period, to be an inexhaustible source of riches to  
 that people who shall be so fortunate as to possess it,  
 than on the stile or composition ; and more careful  
 to render his language intelligible and explicit, than  
 smooth and florid.

E

P  
é  
H  
n  
fo  
c  
to  
d

e  
ri  
m  
fi

---

A  
JOURNAL  
OF THE  
TRAVELS,  
WITH A  
DESCRIPTION  
OF THE  
COUNTRY, LAKES, &c.

---

IN June 1766, I set out from Boston, and proceeded by way of Albany and Niagara, to Michillimackinac; a fort situated between the Lakes Huron and Michigan, and distant from Boston 1300 miles. This being the uttermost of our factories towards the north-west, I considered it as the most convenient place from whence I could begin my intended progress, and enter at once into the regions I designed to explore.

Referring my readers to the publications already extant for an account of those parts of North-America, which, from lying adjacent to the back settlements, have been frequently described, I shall confine myself to a description of the more interior parts



of it, which, having been but seldom visited, are consequently but little known. In doing this, I shall in no instance exceed the bounds of truth, or have recourse to those useless and extravagant exaggerations, too often made use of by travellers, to excite the curiosity of the public, or to encrease their own importance. Nor shall I insert any observations, but such as I have made myself, or, from the credibility of those by whom they were related, am enabled to vouch for their authenticity.

Michillimackinac, from whence I began my travels, is a fort composed of a strong stockade, and is usually defended by a garrison of one hundred men. It contains about thirty houses, one of which belongs to the governor, and another to the commissary. Several traders also dwell within its fortifications, who find it a convenient situation to traffic with the neighbouring nations. Michillimackinac, in the language of the Chipeway Indians, signifies a Tortoise; and the place is supposed to receive its name from an island, lying about six or seven miles to the north-east, within sight of the fort, which has the appearance of that animal.

During the Indian war that followed soon after the conquest of Canada, in the year 1763, and which was carried on by an army of confederate nations, composed of the Hurons, Miamies, Chipeways, Ottowaws, Pontowattimies, Mississauges, and some other tribes, under the direction of Pontiac, a celebrated Indian warrior, who had always been in the French interest, it was taken by surprise in the following manner: The Indians having settled their plan, drew near the fort, and began a game at ball, a pastime much used among them, and not unlike tennis. In the height of their game, at which some of the English officers, not suspecting

dom visited, are doing this, I shall truth, or have agant exaggeravellers, to excite crease their own y observations, from the credited, am ena-

began my tra- stockade, and f one hundred s, one of which er to the com- within its for- ent situation to Michillimac- peway Indians, e is supposed ying about six n fight of the t animal.

ved soon after 63, and which erate nations; Chipeways, es, and some Pontiac, a ce- ways been in y surprise in having settled began a game em, and not eir game, at ot suspecting.

any deceit, stood looking on, they struck the ball, as if by accident, over the stockade; this they repeated two or three times, to make the deception more complete; till at length, having by this means lulled every suspicion of the centry at the south gate, a party rushed by him; and the rest soon following, they took possession of the fort, without meeting with any opposition. Having accomplished their design, the Indians had the humanity to spare the lives of the greatest part of the garrison and traders, but they made them all prisoners, and carried them off. However, some time after they took them to Montreal, where they were redeemed at a good price. The fort also was given up again to the English at the peace made with Pontiac, by the commander of Detroit the year following.

Having here made the necessary disposition for pursuing my travels, and obtaining a credit from Mr Rogers, the governor, on some English and Canadian traders, who were going to trade on the Mississippi, and received also from him a promise of a fresh supply of goods when I reached the falls of Saint Anthony, I left the fort on the 3d of September, in company with these traders. It was agreed that they should furnish me with such goods as I might want, for presents to the Indian chiefs, during my continuance with them, agreeable to the governor's orders. But when I arrived at the extent of their route, I was to find other guides, and to depend on the goods the governor had promised to supply me with.

We accordingly set out together, and on the 18th arrived at Fort La Bay. This fort is situated on the southern extremity of a bay in Lake Michigan, termed by the French, the Bay of Puants; but which, since the English have gained possession of all

the settlements on this part of the continent, is called by them the Green Bay. The reason of its being thus denominated, is from its appearance; for on leaving Michillimackinac in the spring season, though the trees there have not even put forth their buds, yet you find the country around La Bay, notwithstanding the passage has not exceeded fourteen days, covered with the finest verdure, and vegetation as forward as it could be were it summer.

This fort is also only surrounded by a stockade, and being much decayed, is scarcely defensible against small arms. It was built by the French for the protection of their trade, some time before they were forced to relinquish it; and when Canada and its dependencies were surrendered to the English, it was immediately garrisoned with an officer and thirty men. These were made prisoners by the Menomones soon after the surprise of Michillimackinac, and the fort has neither been garrisoned nor kept in repair since.

The bay is about ninety miles long, but differs much in its breadth; being in some places only fifteen miles, in others from twenty to thirty. It lies nearly from north-east to south-west. At the entrance of it from the lake are a string of islands, extending from north to south, called the Grand Traverse. These are about thirty miles in length, and serve to facilitate the passage of canoes, as they shelter them from the winds, which sometimes come with violence across the Lake. On the side that lies to the south-east is the nearest and best navigation.

The islands of the Grand Traverse are mostly small and rocky. Many of the rocks are of an amazing size, and appear as if they had been fashi-

continent, is called  
reason of its being  
pearance; for on  
the spring season,  
then put forth their  
round La Bay, not  
exceeded fourteen  
ture, and vegeta-  
in summer.

by a stockade,  
defensible against  
French for the  
time before they  
then Canada and  
to the English, it  
officer and thirty  
by the Menomo-  
nimackinac, and  
nor kept in re-

ong, but differs  
places only fif-  
to thirty. It lies  
t. At the en-  
ring of islands,  
led the Grand  
iles in length,  
canoes, as they  
ich sometimes  
On the side  
nearest and best

se are mostly  
ks are of an  
had been fashi-

oned by the hands of artists. On the largest and  
best of these islands stands a town of the Ottawaws,  
at which I found one of the most considerable  
chiefs of that nation, who received me with every  
honour he could possibly show to a stranger. But  
what appeared extremely singular to me at the time,  
and must do so to every person unacquainted with  
the customs of the Indians, was the reception I met  
with on landing. As our canoes approached the  
shore, and had reached within about threescore rods  
of it, the Indians began a feu-de-joye; in which they  
fired their pieces loaded with balls; but at the same  
time they took care to discharge them in such a  
manner as to fly a few yards above our heads: during  
this they ran from one tree or stump to another,  
shouting and behaving as if they were in the heat of  
battle. At first I was greatly surprised, and was on  
the point of ordering my attendants to return their  
fire, concluding that their intentions were hostile;  
but being undeceived by some of the traders, who  
informed me that this was the usual method of re-  
ceiving the chiefs of other nations, I considered it in  
its true light, and was pleased with the respect  
thus paid me.

I remained here one night. Among the presents  
I made the chiefs, were some spirituous liquors, with  
which they made themselves merry, and all joined  
in a dance, that lasted the greatest part of the night.  
In the morning when I departed, the chief attended  
me to the shore, and, as soon as I had embarked,  
offered up in an audible voice, and with great so-  
lemnity, a fervent prayer in my behalf. He prayed  
“ That the great spirit would favour me with a pro-  
sperous voyage; that he would give me an unclouded  
sky, and smooth waters, by day, and that I might  
lie down, by night, on a beaver blanket, enjoying  
uninterrupted sleep, and pleasant dreams; and also

that I might find continual protection under the great pipe of peace." In this manner he continued his petitions till I could no longer hear them.

I must here observe, that notwithstanding the inhabitants of Europe are apt to entertain horrid ideas of the ferocity of these savages, as they are termed, I received from every tribe of them in the interior parts, the most hospitable and courteous treatment, and am convinced, that till they are contaminated by the example, and spiritous liquors of their more refined neighbours, they retain this friendly and inoffensive conduct towards strangers. Their inveteracy and cruelty to their enemies, I acknowledge to be a great abatement of the favourable opinion I would wish to entertain of them; but this failing is hereditary, and having received the sanction of immemorial custom, has taken too deep root in their minds to be easily extirpated.

Among these people I eat of a very uncommon kind of bread. The Indians, in general, use but little of this nutritious food: whilst their corn is in the milk as they term it, that is, just before it begins to ripen, they slice off the kernels from the cob to which they grow, and knead them into a paste. This they are enabled to do without the addition of any liquid, by the milk that flows from them; and when it is effected, they parcel it out into cakes, and enclosing them in leaves of the basswood tree, place them in hot embers, where they are soon baked. And better flavoured bread I never eat in any country.

This place is only a small village, containing about twenty-five houses and sixty or seventy warriors. I found nothing there worthy of further remark.

edion under the  
ner he continued  
hear them.

withstanding the  
entertain horrid  
ges, as they are  
e of them in the  
e and courteous  
at till they are  
spiritous liquors  
they retain this  
wards strangers.  
r enemies, I ac-  
of the favoura-  
n of them; but  
g received the  
taken too deep  
ated.

very uncommon  
eneral, use but  
their corn is in  
before it be-  
nels from the  
them into a  
without the ad-  
at flows from  
parcel it out in-  
ves of the bass-  
rs, where they  
bread I never

e, containing  
eventy warri-  
of further re-

The land on the south-east side of the Green Bay is but very indifferent, being overspread with a heavy growth of hemlock, pine, spruce, and fir trees. The communication between lake Michigan and the Green Bay, has been reported by some to be impracticable for the passage of any vessels larger than canoes or boats, on account of the shoals that lie between the islands in the Grand Traverse; but on sounding it, I found sufficient depth for a vessel of sixty tons, and the breadth proportionable.

The land adjoining to the bottom of this bay is very fertile, the country in general level, and the perspective view of it pleasing and extensive.

A few families live in the fort, which lies on the west side of the Fox River, and opposite to it, on the east side of its entrance, are some French settlers, who cultivate the land, and appear to live very comfortably.

The Green Bay or Bay of Puants is one of those places to which the French, as I have mentioned in the introduction, have given nicknames. It is termed by the inhabitants of its coasts, the Menomonic Bay; but why the French have denominated it the Puant or Stinking Bay, I know not. The reason they themselves gave for it is, that it was not with a view to mislead strangers, but that by adopting this method, they could converse with each other concerning the Indians, in their presence, without being understood by them. For it was remarked by the persons who first traded among them, that when they were speaking to each other about them, and mentioned their proper names, they instantly grew suspicious, and concluded that their visitors were either speaking ill of them, or plot-

ting their distruction. To remedy this they gave them some other name. The only bad consequence arising from the practice then introduced is, that English and French géographers, in their plans of the interior parts of America, gave different names to the same people, and thereby perplex those who have occasion to refer to them.

Lake Michigan, of which the Green Bay is a part, is divided on the north-east from Lake Huron by the Straits of Michillimackinac; and is situated between forty-two and forty-six degrees of latitude, and between eighty-four and eighty-seven degrees of west longitude. Its greatest length is two hundred and eighty miles, its breadth about forty, and its circumference nearly six hundred. There is a remarkable string of small islands, beginning over against Askin's farm, and running about thirty miles south-west into the lake. These are called the Beaver Islands. Their situation is very pleasant, but the soil is bare. However, they afford a beautiful prospect.

On the north-west part of this lake the waters branch out into two bays. That which lies towards the north is the bay of Noquets, and the other the Green Bay just described.

The waters of this as well as the other great lakes are clear and wholesome, and of sufficient depth for the navigation of large ships. Half the space of the country that lies to the east, and extends to Lake Huron, belongs to the Ottowaw Indians. The line that divides their territories from the Chipeways, runs nearly north and south, and reaches almost from the southern extremity of this lake, across the high lands, to Michillimackinac, through the centre of which it passes. So that when



ly this they gave  
y bad consequence  
ntroduced is, that  
in their plans of  
different names  
erplex those who

een Bay is a part,  
Lake Huron by  
nd is situated be-  
rees of latitude,  
ty-seven degrees  
gh is two hun-  
about forty, and  
ed. There is a  
beginning over  
bout thirty miles  
are called the  
very pleasant,  
afford a beauti-

lake the waters  
ich lies towards  
d the other the

he other great  
d of sufficient  
hips. Half the  
east, and ex-  
Ottowaw In-  
territories from  
nd south, and  
remity of this  
chillimackinac,  
So that when

these two tribes happen to meet at the factory, they each encamp on their own dominions, at a few yards distance from the stockade.

The country adjacent either to the east or west side of this lake, is composed but of an indifferent soil, except where small brooks or rivers empty themselves into it; on the banks of these it is extremely fertile. Near the borders of the lake grow a great number of sand cherries, which are not less remarkable for their manner of growth, than for their exquisite flavour. They grow upon a small shrub, not more than four feet high, the boughs of which are so loaded that they lie in clusters on the sand. As they grow only on the sand, the warmth of which probably contributes to bring them to such perfection, they are called by the French, cherries de sable, or sand cherries. The size of them does not exceed that of a small musket ball, but they are reckoned superior to any other sort for the purpose of steeping in spirits. There also grow around the lake, gooseberries, black currants, and an abundance of juniper, bearing great quantities of berries of the finest sort.

Sumack likewise grows here in great plenty; the leaf of which, gathered at Michaelmas, when it turns red, is much esteemed by the natives. They mix about an equal quantity of it with their tobacco, which causes it to smoke pleasantly. Near this lake, and indeed about all the great lakes, is found a kind of willow, termed by the French, bois rouge, in English, red wood. Its bark, when only of one year's growth, is of a fine scarlet colour, and appears very beautiful; but as it grows older, it changes into a mixture of grey and red. The stalks of this shrub grow many of them together, and rise to the height of six or eight feet, the largest not exceeding



an inch diameter. The bark being scraped from the sticks, and dried and powdered, is also mixed by the Indians with their tobacco, and is held by them in the highest estimation for their winter smoking. A weed that grows near the great lakes, in rocky places, they use in the summer season. It is called by the Indians Segockimac, and creeps like a vine on the ground, sometimes extending to eight or ten feet, and bearing a leaf about the size of a silver penny, nearly round; it is of the substance and colour of the laurel, and is, like the tree it resembles, an evergreen. These leaves, dried and powdered, they likewise mix with their tobacco; and, as said before, smoke it only during the summer. By these three succedaneums, the pipes of the Indians are well supplied through every season of the year; and as they are great smokers, they are very careful in properly gathering and preparing them.

On the 20th of September I left the Green Bay, and proceeded up Fox River, still in company with the traders and some Indians. On the 25th I arrived at the great town of the Winnebagoes, situated on a small island, just as you enter the east end of Lake Winnebago. Here the queen who presided over this tribe instead of a Sachem, received me with great civility, and entertained me in a very distinguished manner, during the four days I continued with her.

The day after my arrival I held a council with the chiefs, of whom I asked permission to pass through their country, in my way to more remote nations, on business of importance. This was readily granted me, the request being esteemed by them as a great compliment paid to their tribe. The queen sat in the council, but only asked a few

ing scraped from  
ed, is also mixed  
o, and is held by  
their winter smok-  
e great lakes, in  
summer season. It  
mac, and creeps  
mes extending to  
af about the size  
it is of the sub-  
is, like the tree  
ese leaves, dried  
k with their to-  
t only during the  
neums, the pipes  
rough every fea-  
great smokers,  
athering and pre-

the Green Bay,  
ill in company  
On the 25th  
e Winnebagoes,  
u enter the east  
the queen who  
achem, received  
ed me in a very  
r days I conti-

a council with  
mission to pass  
o more remote  
This was rea-  
g esteemed by  
to their tribe.  
ly asked a few

questions, or gave some trifling directions in matters relative to the state; for women are never allowed to sit in their councils, except they happen to be invested with the supreme authority, and then it is not customary for them to make any formal speeches as the chiefs do. She was a very ancient woman, small in stature, and not much distinguished by her dress from several young women that attended her. These her attendants seemed greatly pleased whenever I showed any tokens of respect to their queen, particularly when I saluted her, which I frequently did to acquire her favour. On these occasions the good old lady endeavoured to assume a juvenile gaiety, and by her smiles, showed she was equally pleased with the attention I paid her.

The time I resided here, I employed in making the best observations possible on the country, and in collecting the most certain intelligence I could, of the origin, language, and customs of this people. From these enquiries I have reason to conclude, that the Winnebagoes originally resided in some, of the provinces belonging to New Mexico, and being driven from their native country, either by intestine divisions, or by the extension of the Spanish conquests, they took refuge in these more northern parts about a century ago.

My reasons for adopting this supposition, are, First, from their unalienable attachment to the Naudowessie Indians (who, they say, gave them the earliest succours during their emigration,) notwithstanding their present residence is more than six hundred miles distant from that people.

Secondly, that their dialect totally differs from every other Indian nation yet discovered; being a very uncouth, guttural jargon, which none of their neighbours will attempt to learn. They con-

verse with other nations in the Chipeway tongue, which is the prevailing language throughout all the tribes, from the Mohawks of Canada, to those who inhabit the borders of the Mississippi, and from the Hurons and Illinois to such as dwell near Hudson's Bay.

Thirdly, from their inveterate hatred to the Spaniards. Some of them informed me that they had many excursions to the south-west, which took up several moons. An elderly chief more particularly acquainted me, that about forty-six winters ago, he marched at the head of fifty warriors, towards the south-west, for three moons. That during this expedition, whilst they were crossing a plain, they discovered a body of men on horseback, who belonged to the Black people; for so they call the Spaniards. As soon as they perceived them, they proceeded with caution, and concealed themselves till night came on, when they drew so near as to be able to discern their number and situation of their enemies. Finding they were not able to cope with so great a superiority by day-light, they waited till they had retired to rest; when they rushed upon them, and, after having killed the greatest part of the men, took eighty horses loaded with what they termed white stone. This I suppose to have been silver, as he told me the horses were shod with it, and that their bridles were ornamented with the same. When they had satiated their revenge, they carried off their spoil, and being got so far as to be out of the reach of the Spaniards that had escaped their fury, they left the useless and ponderous burden, with which the horses were loaded, in the woods, and mounting themselves, in this manner returned to their friends. The party they had thus defeated, I conclude to be the caravan that annually conveys to Mexico the silver which the Spaniards

pey tongue,  
throughout all  
Canada, to those  
Mississippi, and from  
well near Hud-

ed to the Spa-  
that they had  
which took up  
e particularly  
winters ago,  
towards  
t during this  
a plain, they  
ck, who be-  
they call the  
d them, they  
l themselves  
near as to  
ation of their  
o cope with  
y waited till  
ushed upon  
areft part of  
n what they  
have been  
od with it,  
ed with the  
venge, they  
ar as to be  
ad escaped  
erous bur-  
ed, in the  
his manner  
y had thus  
at annually  
Spaniards

find in great quantities on the mountains lying near the heads of the Colerado River: and the plains where the attack was made, probably, they were obliged to pass over in their way to the heads of the River St Fee, or Rio del Nord, which falls into the Gulf of Mexico, to the west of the Mississippi.

The Winnebagoes can raise about two hundred warriors. Their town contains about fifty houses, which are strongly built with pallisades, and the island on which it is situated, nearly fifty acres. It lies thirty-five miles, reckoning according to the course of the river, from the Green Bay.

The river, for about four or five miles from the bay, has a gentle current; after that space, till you arrive at the Winnebago Lake, it is full of rocks and very rapid. At many places we were obliged to land our canoes, and carry them a considerable way. Its breadth, in general, from the Green Bay to the Winnebago Lake, is between seventy and a hundred yards; the land on its borders very good, and thinly wooded with hickory, oak, and hazel.

The Winnebago Lake is about fifteen miles long from east to west, and six miles wide. At its south-east corner, a river falls into it that takes its rise near some of the northern branches of the Illinois River. This I called the Crocodile River, in consequence of a story that prevails among the Indians, of their having destroyed, in some part of it, an animal, which from their description must be a crocodile or an alligator.

The land adjacent to the Lake is very fertile, abounding with grapes, plums, and other fruits;

which grow spontaneously. The Winnebagoes raise on it a great quantity of Indian corn, beans, pumpkins, squashes, and water melons, with some tobacco. The Lake itself abounds with fish, and in the fall of the year, with geese, ducks, and teal. The latter, which resort to it in great numbers, are remarkably good and extremely fat, and are much better flavoured than those that are found near the sea, as they acquire their excessive fatness by feeding on the wild rice, which grows so plentifully in these parts.

Having made some acceptable presents to the good old queen, and received her blessing, I left the town of the Winnebagoes on the 29th of September, and about twelve miles from it, arrived at the place where the Fox River enters the Lake on the north side of it. We proceeded up this river, and on the 7th of October reached the great carrying place, which divides it from the Ouisconsin.

The Fox River, from the Green Bay to the carrying place, is about one hundred and eighty miles. From the Winnebago Lake to the carrying place, the current is gentle, and the depth of it considerable; notwithstanding which, it is in some places with difficulty that canoes can pass through the obstructions they meet with from the rice stalks, which are very large and thick, and grow here in great abundance. The country around it is very fertile, and proper in the highest degree for cultivation, excepting in some places near the river, where it is rather too low. It is in no part very woody, and yet can supply sufficient to answer the demands of any number of inhabitants. This river is the greatest resort of wild fowl of every kind, that I met with in the whole course of my travels; frequently the fun would be obscured by them for some minutes together.

the Winnebagoes  
Indian corn, beans,  
melons, with some  
with fish, and in  
ducks, and teal.  
eat numbers, are  
, and are much  
found near the  
tness by feeding  
ntifully in these

presents to the  
essing, I left the  
n of September,  
ved at the place  
e on the north  
ver, and on the  
carrying place,

ay to the car-  
d eighty miles.  
carrying place,  
considerable;  
e places with  
h the obstruc-  
lks, which are  
in great abun-  
ry fertile, and  
ation, except-  
re it is rather  
, and yet can  
of any num-  
reatest resort  
et with in the  
he fun would  
together.

## CARVER'S TRAVELS.

About forty miles up this river, from the great town of the Winnebagoes, stands a smaller town belonging to that nation.

Deer and bears are very numerous in these parts, and a great many beavers, and other furs are taken on the streams that empty themselves into this river.

The river I am treating of, is remarkable for having been, about eighty years ago, the residence of the united bands of the Ottigaumies and the Saukies, whom the French had nicknamed, according to their wonted custom, Des Sacs and Des Reynards, the Sacks and the Foxes, of whom the following anecdote was related to me by an Indian.

About sixty years ago, the French missionaries and traders having received many insults from these people, a party of French and Indians, under the command of Captain Morand, marched to revenge their wrongs. The Captain set out from the Green Bay in the winter, when they were unsuspecting of a visit of this kind, and pursuing his route over the snow to their villages, which lay about fifty miles up the Fox River, came upon them by surprise. Unprepared as they were, he found them an easy conquest, and consequently killed or took prisoners the greatest part of them. On the return of the French to the Green Bay, one of the Indian chiefs in alliance with them, who had a considerable band of the prisoners under his care, stopped to drink at a brook; in the mean time his companions went on: which being observed by one of the women whom they had made captive, she suddenly seized him with both her hands, whilst he stooped to drink, by an exquisitely susceptible part, and held him fast till he expired on the spot. As the chief, from the



extreme torture he suffered, was unable to call out to his friends, or to give any alarm, they passed on without knowing what had happened; and the woman having cut the bands of those of her fellow-prisoners who were in the rear, with them made her escape. This heroine was ever after treated by her nation as their deliverer, and made a chiefs in her own right, with liberty to entail the same honour on her descendants; an unusual distinction, and permitted only on extraordinary occasions.

About twelve miles before I reached the carrying place, I observed several small mountains which extended quite to it. These indeed would only be esteemed as molehills, when compared with those on the back of the colonies, but as they were the first I had seen since my leaving Niagara, a track of nearly eleven hundred miles, I could not leave them unnoticed.

The Fox River, where it enters the Winnebago Lake, is about fifty yards wide, but it gradually decreases to the carrying place, where it is no more than five yards over, except in a few places where it widens into small lakes, though still of a considerable depth. I cannot recollect any thing else that is remarkable in this river, except that it is so serpentine for five miles, as only to gain in that place one quarter of a mile.

The carrying place between the Fox and Ouisconsin Rivers, is in breadth not more than a mile and three quarters, though in some maps it is so delineated as to appear to be ten miles. And here I cannot help remarking, that all the maps of these parts, I have ever seen, are very erroneous. The rivers in general are described as running in different directions from what they really do; and many

able to call out  
they passed on  
; and the wo-  
of her fellow-  
them made her  
ter treated by  
de a chiefs in  
ne same honour  
ction, and per-  
s.

d the carrying  
ains which ex-  
would only be  
ed with those  
they were the  
ara, a track of  
not leave them

e Winnebago  
gradually de-  
it is no more  
places where it  
of a consider-  
g else that is  
t is so serpen-  
that place one

ox and Ouif-  
e than a mile  
ps it is so de-  
And here I  
haps of these  
neous. The  
g in different  
; and many

branches of them, particularly of the Mississippi, omitted. The distances of places, likewise, are greatly misrepresented. Whether this is done by the French geographers (for the English maps are all copied from theirs) through design, or for want of a just knowledge of the country, I cannot say; but I am satisfied that travellers who depend upon them in the parts I visited, will find themselves much at a loss.

Near one half of the way, between the rivers, is a morass overgrown with a kind of long grass, the rest of it a plain with some few oak and pine trees growing thereon. I observed here a great number of rattle-snakes. *Monf. Pinnisance*, a French trader, told me a remarkable story concerning one of these reptiles, of which he said he was an eye-witness. An Indian, belonging to the *Menomoniè* nation, having taken one of them, found means to tame it; and when he had done this, treated it as a Deity, calling it his Great Father, and carrying it with him, in a box, wherever he went. This the Indian had done for several summers, when *Monf. Pinnisance* accidentally met with him at his carrying place, just as he was setting off for a winter's hunt. The French gentleman was surprised, one day, to see the Indian place the box which contained his god, on the ground, and opening the door, give him his liberty; telling him, whilst he did it, to be sure and return by the time he himself should come back, which was to be in the month of May following. As this was but October, *Monsieur* told the Indian, whose simplicity astonished him, that he fancied he might wait long enough when May arrived, for the arrival of his great father. The Indian was so confident of his creature's obedience, that he offered to lay the Frenchman a wager of two gallons of rum, that at the time appointed he would come and crawl into his box. This was agreed on, and the second



week in May following, fixed for the determination of the wager. At that period they both met there again; when the Indian set down his box, and called for his great father. The snake heard him not; and the time being now expired, he acknowledged that he had lost. However, without seeming to be discouraged, he offered to double the bet, if his great father came not within two days more. This was further agreed on; when behold, on the second day, about one o'clock, the snake arrived, and, of his own accord, crawled into the box, which was placed ready for him. The French gentleman vouched for the truth of this story, and from the accounts I have often received of the docility of those creatures, I see no reason to doubt of its veracity.

I observed that the main body of the Fox River came from the south-west, that of the Ouiskonsin from the north-east; and also that some of the small branches of these two rivers, in descending into them, doubled within a few feet of each other, a little to the south of the carrying place. That two such should take their rise so near each other, and after running different courses, empty themselves into the sea, at a distance so amazing (for the former having passed through several great lakes, and run upwards of two thousand miles, falls into the Gulf of St Lawrence, and the other, after joining the Mississippi, and having run an equal number of miles, disembogues itself into the Gulf of Mexico), is an instance scarcely to be met with in the extensive continent of North-America. I had an opportunity, the year following, of making the same observations on the affinity of various head branches of the waters of the St Lawrence and the Mississippi, to each other; and now bring them as a proof, that the opinion of those geographers who assert, that rivers taking their rise so near each other, must spring from the same

e determination  
both met there  
box, and called  
heard him not;  
e acknowledged  
t seeming to be  
the bet, if his  
ays more. This  
l, on the second  
ived, and; of his  
hich was placed  
leman vouched  
n the accounts  
of those crea-  
veracity.

the Fox River  
the Ouiskonsin  
me of the small  
dding into them,  
her, a little to  
That two such  
her, and after  
nselfes into the  
e former hav-  
s, and run up-  
to the Gulf of  
oining the Mis-  
mber of miles,  
Mexico); is an  
extensive conti-  
ppportunity, the  
bservations on  
of the waters of  
to each other;  
the opinion of  
ers taking their  
from the same

source, is erroneous. For I perceived a visibly distinct separation in all of them, notwithstanding, in some places, they approached so near, that I could have stepped from the one to the other.

On the 8th of October we got our canoes into the Ouiskonsin River, which at this place is more than a hundred yards wide; and the next day arrived at the great town of the Saukies. This is the largest and best built Indian town I ever saw. It contains about ninety houses, each large enough for several families. These are built of hewn plank, neatly jointed, and covered with bark so compactly as to keep out the most penetrating rains. Before the doors are placed comfortable sheds, in which the inhabitants sit when the weather will permit, and smoke their pipes. The streets are regular and spacious; so that it appears more like a civilized town, than the abode of savages. The land near the town is very good. In their plantations, which lie adjacent to their houses, and which are neatly laid out, they raise great quantities of Indian corn, beans, melons, &c. so that this place is esteemed the best market for traders to furnish themselves with provisions, of any within eight hundred miles of it.

The Saukies can raise about three hundred warriors, who are generally employed every summer in making incursions into the territories of the Illinois and Pawnee nations, from whence they return with a great number of slaves. But those people frequently retaliate, and, in their turn, destroy many of the Saukies, which I judge to be the reason that they increase no faster.

Whilst I staid here, I took a view of some mountains that lie about fifteen miles to the southward, and abound in lead ore. I ascended one of the

highest of these, and had an extensive view of the country. For many miles nothing was to be seen but lesser mountains, which appeared at a distance like haycocks, they being free from trees. Only a few groves of hickory, and stunted oaks, covered some of the vallies. So plentiful is lead here, that I saw large quantities of it lying about the streets in the town belonging to the Saukies, and it seemed to be as good as the produce of other countries.

On the 10th of October we proceeded down the river, and the next day reached the first town of the Ottigauemies. This town contained about fifty houses, but we found most of them deserted, on account of an epidemical disorder that had lately raged among them, and carried off more than one half of the inhabitants. The greater part of those who survived, had retired into the woods, to avoid the contagion.

On the 15th, we entered that extensive river the Mississippi. The Ouisconsin, from the carrying place to the part where it falls into the Mississippi, flows with a smooth, but strong current; the water of it is exceedingly clear, and through it you may perceive a fine sandy bottom, tolerably free from rocks. In it are a few islands, the soil of which appeared to be good, though somewhat woody. The land near the river also seemed to be, in general, excellent; but that at a distance is very full of mountains, where it is said there are many lead mines.

About five miles from the junction of the rivers, I observed the ruins of a large town, in a very pleasing situation. On enquiring of the neighbouring Indians, why it was thus deserted, I was informed, that about thirty years ago, the Great Spirit had appeared on the top of a pyramid of rocks, which lay

ensive view of the  
g was to be seen  
red at a distance  
n trees. Only a  
ed oaks, covered  
s lead here, that  
out the streets in  
and it seemed to  
countries.

eeded down the  
first town of the  
bout fifty houses,  
ted, on account  
ad lately raged  
than one half of  
f those who sur-  
to avoid the

ensive river the  
n the carrying  
the Mississippi,  
ent; the water  
th it you may  
ably free from  
e soil of which  
ewhat woody.  
o be, in gene-  
is very full of  
re many lead

of the rivers,  
n, in a very  
neighbour-  
was informed,  
Spirit had ap-  
s, which lay

## CARVER'S TRAVELS.

51

at a little distance from it, towards the west, and warned them to quit their habitations; for the land on which they were built belonged to him, and he had occasion for it. As a proof that he, who gave them these orders, was really the Great Spirit, he further told them, that the grass should immediately spring up on those very rocks from whence he now addressed them, which they knew to be bare and barren. The Indians obeyed, and soon after discovered that this miraculous alteration had taken place. They shewed me the spot, but the growth of the grass appeared to be no wise supernatural. I apprehend this to have been a stratagem of the French or Spaniards, to answer some selfish view; but in what manner they effected their purpose, I know not.

This people, soon after their removal, built a town on the bank of the Mississippi, near the mouth of the Ouïskonfin, at a place called by the French La Prairie les Chiens, which signifies the Dog Plains; it is a large town, and contains about three hundred families; the houses are well built after the Indian manner, and pleasantly situated on a very rich soil, from which they raise every necessary of life in great abundance. I saw many horses here of a good size and shape. This town is the great mart where all the adjacent tribes, and even those who inhabit the most remote branches of the Mississippi, annually assemble about the latter end of May, bringing with them the furs to dispose of to the traders. But it is not always that they conclude their sale here; this is determined by a general council of the chiefs, who consult whether it would be more conducive to their interest, to sell their goods at this place, or carry them on to Louisiana, or Michillimackinac. According to the decisions of this council, they either proceed further, or return to their different homes.

The Mississippi, at the entrance of the Ouisconsin, near which stands a mountain of considerable height, is about half a mile over; but opposite to the last mentioned town, it appears to be more than a mile wide, and full of islands, the soil of which is extraordinary rich, and but thinly wooded.

A little further to the west, on the contrary side, a small river falls into the Mississippi, which the French call *Le Jaune Riviere*, or the Yellow River. Here the traders who had accompanied me hitherto, took up their residence for the winter. I then bought a canoe, and with two servants, one a French Canadian, and the other a Mohawk of Canada, on the 19th proceeded up the Mississippi.

About ten days after I had parted from the traders, I landed, as I usually did every evening, and having pitched my tent, I ordered my men, when night came on, to lay themselves down to sleep. By a light that I kept burning, I then sat down to copy the minutes I had taken in the course of the preceding day. About ten o'clock, having just finished my memorandums, I stepped out of my tent to see what weather it was. As I cast my eyes towards the bank of the river, I thought I saw by the light of the stars, which shone bright, something that had the appearance of a herd of beasts, coming down a descent at some distance; whilst I was wondering what they could be, one of the number suddenly sprung up, and discovered to me the form of a man. In an instant they were all on their legs, and I could count about ten or twelve of them running towards me. I immediately re-entered the tent, and having awakened my men, ordered them to take their arms, and follow me. As my first apprehensions were for my canoe, I ran to the water's side, and found a party

of Indians, (for such I now discovered them to be) on the point of plundering it. Before I reached them, I commanded my men not to fire till I had given the word, being unwilling to begin hostilities unless occasion absolutely required. I accordingly advanced with resolution, close to the points of their spears; they had no other weapons, and brandishing my hanger, asked them with a stern voice, what they wanted? They were staggered at this, and perceiving they were like to meet with a warm reception, turned about and precipitately retreated. We pursued them to an adjacent wood, which they entered, and we saw no more of them. However, for fear of their return, we watched alternately during the remainder of the night. The next day my servants were under great apprehensions, and earnestly entreated me to return to the traders we had lately left. But I told them, that if they would not be esteemed old women, (a term of the greatest reproach among the Indians) they must follow me; for I was determined to pursue my intended route, as an Englishman, when once engaged in an adventure, never retreated. On this they got into the canoe, and I walked on the shore to guard them from any further attack. The party of Indians who had thus intended to plunder me, I afterwards found to be some of those straggling bands, that having been driven from among the different tribes to which they belonged, for various crimes, now associated themselves together, and, living by plunder, prove very troublesome to travellers who pass this way; nor are even Indians of every tribe spared by them. The traders had before cautioned me to be upon my guard against them, and I would repeat the same caution to those whose business might call them into these parts.

On the 1st of November I arrived at Lake Pepin, which is rather an extended part of the river Mississippi; that the French have thus denominated, but two hundred miles from the Quisconsin. The Mississippi below this lake flows with a gentle current, but the breadth of it is very uncertain, in some places it being upwards of a mile, in others not more than a quarter. This river has a range of mountains on each side throughout the whole of the way; which in particular parts approach near to it, in others lie at a greater distance. The land betwixt the mountains, and on their sides, is generally covered with grass, with a few groves of trees interspersed, near which, large droves of deer and elk are frequently seen feeding.

In many places pyramids of rocks appeared, resembling old ruinous towers; at others amazing precipices; and what is very remarkable, whilst this scene presented itself on one side, the opposite side of the same mountain was covered with the finest herbage, which gradually ascended to its summit. From thence the most beautiful and extensive prospect that imagination can form, opens to your view. Verdant plains, fruitful meadows, numerous islands, and all these abounding with a variety of trees that yield amazing quantities of fruit, without care or cultivation; such as the nut-tree; the maple which produces sugar, vines loaded with rich grapes, and plum-trees bending under their blooming burdens; but above all, the fine river flowing gently beneath, and reaching as far as the eye can extend, by turns attract your admiration, and excite your wonder.

The Lake is about twenty miles long, and near six in breadth; in some places it is very deep, and abounds with various kinds of fish. Great num-



at Lake Pepin,  
the river Mis-  
sissippi. The  
island is denominated,  
the Mississippi.  
The island is  
with a gentle cur-  
rent, uncertain, in  
some places, in others  
it has a range  
of the whole of  
the approach near  
the river. The land  
on its sides, is ge-  
nerally covered with  
few groves of  
timber, and deer

appeared, re-  
markable, amazing  
the opposite  
covered with the  
extended to its  
beautiful and ex-  
tensive form, opens  
fertile meadows,  
bordered with a va-  
riety of fruit,  
the nut-tree;  
is loaded with  
under their  
the river flow-  
far as the eye  
admiration, and

long, and near  
very deep, and  
Great num-

bers of fowl frequent also this Lake and the rivers  
adjacent; such as storks, swans, geese, brants, and  
ducks: and in the groves are found great plenty  
of turkeys and partridges. On the plains are the  
largest buffaloes of any in America. Here I ob-  
served the ruins of a French factory, where it is said  
Captain St Pierre resided, and carried on a very  
great trade with the Naudowessies, before the reduc-  
tion of Canada.

About sixty miles below this Lake is a moun-  
tain remarkably situated; for it stands by itself  
exactly in the middle of the river, and looks as if  
it had slid from the adjacent shore into the stream.  
It cannot be termed an island, as it rises immedi-  
ately from the brink of the water to a considerable  
height. Both the Indians and the French call it  
the Mountain in the river.

One day having landed on the shore of the Mis-  
sissippi, some miles below Lake Pepin, whilst my  
attendants were preparing my dinner, I walked out  
to take a view of the adjacent country. I had not  
proceeded far, before I came to a fine, level, open  
plain, on which I perceived, at a little distance, a par-  
tial elevation that had the appearance of an intrench-  
ment. On a nearer inspection, I had greater reason  
to suppose that it had really been intended for this  
many centuries ago. Notwithstanding it was now  
covered with grass, I could plainly discern that it  
had once been a breast-work of about four feet in  
height, extending the best part of a mile, and suffi-  
ciently capacious to cover five thousand men. Its  
form was somewhat circular, and its flanks reached  
to the river. Though much defaced by time, every  
angle was distinguishable, and appeared as regular,  
and fashioned with as much military skill, as if  
planned by Vauban himself. The ditch was not



visible, but I thought, on examining more curiously, that I could perceive there certainly had been one. From its situation also, I am convinced that it must have been designed for this purpose. It fronted the country, and the rear was covered by the river; nor was there any rising ground for a considerable way, that commanded it; a few straggling oaks were alone to be seen near it. In many places small tracts were worn across it by the feet of the elks and deer, and from the depth of the bed of earth by which it was covered, I was able to draw certain conclusions of its great antiquity. I examined all the angles, and every part with great attention, and have often blamed myself since, for not encamping on the spot, and drawing an exact plan of it. To shew that this description is not the offspring of a heated imagination, or the chimerical tale of a mistaken traveller, I find on enquiry, since my return, that *Monf. St Pierre* and several traders, have, at different times, taken notice of similar appearances, on which they have formed the same conjectures, but without examining them so minutely as I did. How a work of this kind could exist in a country that has hitherto (according to the general received opinion) been the seat of war to untutored Indians alone, whose whole stock of military knowledge has only, till within two centuries, amounted to drawing the bow, and whose only breast-work, even at present, is the thicker, I know not. I have given as exact an account as possible of this singular appearance, and I leave to future explorers of these distant regions, to discover whether it is a production of nature or art.

Perhaps the hints I have here given, might lead to a more perfect investigation of it, and give up very different ideas of the ancient state of realms

more curiously,  
had been one;  
ed that it must  
It fronted the  
by the river;  
a considerable  
raggling oaks  
many places  
the feet of the  
of the bed of  
s able to draw  
quity. I exa-  
with great at-  
yself since, for  
tawing an exact  
tion is not the  
the chimerical  
enquiry, since  
d several tra-  
notice of simi-  
re formed the  
ning them so  
his kind could  
ording to the  
eat of war to  
stock of mili-  
two centuries;  
d whose only  
e thicker, I  
n account as  
nd I leave to  
s, to discover  
art.

given, might  
of it, and give  
ate of realms

that we at present believe to have been from the earliest period the only habitation of savages.

The Mississippi, as far as the entrance of the river St Croix, thirty miles above Lake Pepin, is very full of islands; some of which are of a considerable length. On these also grow great numbers of the maple or sugar tree, and around them, vines loaded with grapes, creeping to their very tops. From the lake upwards, few mountains are to be seen, and those but small. Near the river St Croix, reside three bands of the Naudowessie Indians, called the River Bands.

This nation is composed, at present, of eleven bands. They were originally twelve; but the Assinipoils, some years ago, revolting, and separating themselves from the others, there remain only at this time eleven. Those I met here are termed the River Bands, because they chiefly dwell near the banks of this river; The other eight are generally distinguished by the title, Naudowessies of the plains, and inhabit a country that lies more to the westward. The names of the former are the Nehogatawonahs, the Mawtawbauntowahs, and the Shawsweetowas, and consist of about four hundred warriors.

A little before I met with these three bands, I fell in with a party of the Mawtawbauntowahs, amounting to forty warriors and their families. With these I resided a day or two, during which time five or six of their number who had been out on an excursion, returned in great haste, and acquainted their companions, that a large party of the Chipe-way warriors, "enough," as they expressed themselves; "to swallow them all up," were close at their heels, and on the point of attacking their little

camp. The chiefs applied to me, and desired I would put myself at their head, and lead them out to oppose their enemies. As I was a stranger, and unwilling to excite the anger of either nation, I knew not how to act, and never found myself in a greater dilemma. Had I refused to assist the Naudowessies, I should have drawn on myself their displeasure; or had I met the Chipeways with hostile intentions, I should have made that people my foes; and had I been fortunate enough to have escaped their arrows at this time, on some future occasion I should probably have experienced the severity of their revenge. In this extremity I chose the middle course, and desired that the Naudowessies would suffer me to meet them, that I might endeavour to avert their fury. To this they reluctantly assented, being persuaded, from the inveteracy which had long prevailed between them, that my remonstrances would be in vain.

Taking my Frenchman with me, who could speak their language, I hastened towards the place where the Chipeways were supposed to be. The Naudowessies, during this, kept at a distance behind. As I approached them with the pipe of peace, a small party of their chiefs, consisting of about eight or ten, came in a friendly manner towards me; with whom, by the means of my interpreter, I held a long conversation; the result of which was, that their rancour being by my persuasions in some measure mollified, they agreed to return back, without accomplishing their savage purposes. During our discourse I could perceive, as they lay scattered about, that the party was very numerous, and many of them armed with muskets.

Having happily succeeded in my undertaking, I returned without delay to the Naudowessies, and

, and desired I  
lead them out  
a stranger, and  
either nation, I  
and myself in a  
assist the Nau-  
myself their dis-  
ys with hostile  
people my foes;  
have escaped  
ure occasion I  
he severity of  
ose the middle  
owessies would  
endeavour to  
antly assisted,  
which had long  
remonstrances

, who could  
ards the place  
to be. The  
stance behind.  
e of peace, a  
ng of about  
nner towards  
y interpreter,  
of which was,  
ions in some  
n back, with-  
ses. During  
lay scattered  
us, and many

undertaking, I  
owessies, and

desired they would instantly remove their camp to some other part of the country, lest their enemies should repent of the promise they had given, and put their intentions in execution. They accordingly followed my advice, and immediately prepared to strike their tents. Whilst they were doing this, they loaded me with thanks; and when I had seen them on board their canoes, I pursued my route.

To this adventure I was chiefly indebted for the friendly reception I afterwards met with from the Naudowessies of the plains, and for the respect and honours I received during my abode among them. And when I arrived many months after at the Chipeway village, near the Ottowaw lakes, I found that my fame had reached that place before me. The chief received me with great cordiality, and the elder part of them thanked me for the mischief I had prevented. They informed me, that the war between their nation and the Naudowessies had continued without interruption for more than forty winters. That they had long wished to put an end to it, but this was generally prevented by the young warriors of either nation, who could not restrain their ardour when they met. They said they should be happy if some chief, of the same pacific disposition as myself, and who possessed an equal degree of resolution and coolness, would settle in the country between the two nations; for by the interference of such a person, an accommodation, which on their parts they sincerely desired, might be brought about. As I did not meet any of the Naudowessies, afterwards, I had not an opportunity of forwarding so good a work.

About thirty miles below the Falls of St Anthony, at which I arrived the tenth day after I left

Lake Pepin, is a remarkable cave of an amazing depth. The Indians term it Wakon-teebe, that is, the Dwelling of the Great Spirit. The entrance into it is about ten feet wide, the height of it five feet. The arch within is near fifteen feet high, and about thirty feet broad. The bottom of it consists of fine clear sand. About twenty feet from the entrance begins a lake, the water of which is transparent; and extends to an unsearchable distance; for the darkness of the cave prevents all attempts to acquire a knowledge of it. I threw a small pebble towards the interior parts of it, with my utmost strength: I could hear that it fell into the water, and notwithstanding it was of so small a size, it caused an astonishing and horrible noise, that reverberated through all those gloomy regions. I found in this cave many Indian hieroglyphics, which appeared very ancient, for time had nearly covered them with moss, so that it was with difficulty I could trace them. They were cut in a rude manner, upon the inside of the walls, which were composed of a stone so extremely soft, that it might easily be penetrated with a knife; a stone every where to be found near the Mississippi. The cave is only accessible by ascending a narrow, steep passage, that lies near the brink of the river.

At a little distance from this dreary cavern, is the burying-place of several bands of the Naudowessie Indians: though these people have no fixed residence, living in tents, and abiding but a few months on one spot, yet they always bring the bones of their dead to this place; which they take the opportunity of doing when the chiefs meet to hold their councils, and to settle all public affairs for the ensuing summer.

e of an amazing  
on-teebe, that is,  
. The entrance  
height of it five  
ten feet high, and  
om of it consists  
feet from the en-  
which is transpa-  
distance; for the  
I attempts to ac-  
a small pebble  
with my utmost  
to the water, and  
a size, it caused  
that reverberated  
I found in this  
which appeared  
vered them with  
ould trace them.  
upon the inside  
of a stone so ex-  
penetrated with  
found near the  
ffible by ascend-  
near the brink

ry cavern, is the  
ne Naudowessie  
no fixed resi-  
at a few months  
ng the bones of  
y take the op-  
eet to hold their  
fairs for the en-

Ten miles below the Falls of St Anthony, the River St Pierre, called by the natives the Waddapawmenefotor, falls into the Mississippi from the west. It is not mentioned by Father Hennipin, although a large, fair river; this omission, I conclude, must have proceeded from a small island that is situated exactly at its entrance, by which the sight of it is intercepted. I should not have discovered this river myself, had I not taken a view, when I was searching for it, from the high lands opposite, which rise to a great height.

Nearly over against this river I was obliged to leave my canoe, on account of the ice, and travel by land to the Falls of St Anthony, where I arrived on the 17th of November. The Mississippi from the St Pierre to this place, is rather more rapid than I had hitherto found it, and without islands of any consideration.

Before I left my canoe, I overtook a young prince of the Winnebago Indians, who was going on an embassy to some of the bands of the Naudowessies. Finding that I intended to take a view of the Falls, he agreed to accompany me, his curiosity having been often excited by the accounts he had received from some of his chiefs: he accordingly left his family (for the Indians never travel without their households) at this place, under the care of my Mohawk servant, and we proceeded together by land, attended only by my Frenchman, to this celebrated place.

We could distinctly hear the noise of the water full fifteen miles before we reached the falls; and I was greatly pleased and surprised, when I approached this astonishing work of nature; but I was not long at liberty to indulge these emotions, my attention being called off by the behaviour of my companion.

The prince had no sooner gained the point that overlooks this wonderful cascade, than he began with an audible voice to address the Great Spirit, one of whose places of residence he imagined this to be. He told him, that he had come a long way to pay his adorations to him, and now would make him the best offering in his power. He accordingly first threw his pipe into the stream; then the roll that contained his tobacco; after these the bracelets he wore on his arms and wrists; next an ornament that encircled his neck, composed of beads and wires; and at last the ear-rings from his ears; in short, he presented to his god, every part of his dress that was valuable: during this he frequently smote his breast with great violence, threw his arms about, and appeared to be much agitated.

All this while he continued his adorations, and at length concluded them with fervent petitions that the Great Spirit would constantly afford us his protection on our travels, giving us a bright sun, a blue sky, and clear and untroubled waters: nor would he leave the place till we had smoked together with my pipe, in honour of the Great Spirit.

I was greatly surprised at beholding an instance of such elevated devotion in so young an Indian, and instead of ridiculing the ceremonies attending it, as I observed my catholic servant tacitly did, I looked on the prince with a greater degree of respect for these sincere proofs he gave of his piety; and I doubt not but that his offerings and prayers were as acceptable to the universal Parent of mankind, as if they had been made with greater pomp, or in a consecrated place.

Indeed, the whole conduct of this young prince at once amazed and charmed me. During the few



ed the point that  
 than he began  
 the Great Spirit,  
 e imagined this to  
 me a long way to  
 would make him  
 accordingly first  
 then the roll that  
 the bracelets he  
 an ornament that  
 beads and wires;  
 ars; in short, he  
 his dress that was  
 y smote his breast  
 s about, and ap-

dorations, and at  
 petitions that the  
 d us his protec-  
 ight fun, a blue  
 rs: nor would he  
 together with my

ng an instance of  
 an Indian, and  
 attending it, as  
 ly did, I looked  
 e of respect for  
 ety; and I doubt  
 s were as accept-  
 kind, as if they  
 or in a conse-

s young prince  
 During the few

days we were together, his attention seemed totally to be employed in yielding me every assistance in his power; and even in so short a time, he gave me innumerable proofs of the most generous and disinterested friendship; so that on our return I parted from him with great reluctance. Whilst I beheld the artless, yet engaging manner of this unpolished savage, I could not help drawing a comparison between him and some of the more refined inhabitants of civilized countries, not much, I own, in favour of the latter.

The Falls of St Anthony received their name from Father Louis Hennepin, a French missionary, who travelled into these parts about the year 1680, and was the first European ever seen by the natives. This amazing body of waters, which are above 250 yards over, form a most pleasing cataract; they fall perpendicularly about thirty feet, and the rapids below, in the space of 300 yards more, render the descent considerably greater; so that when viewed at a distance, they appear to be much higher than they really are. The above-mentioned traveller has laid them down at above sixty feet; but he had made a greater error in calculating the height of the Falls of Niagara, which he asserts to be 600 feet; whereas, from later observations accurately made, it is well known that they do not exceed 140 feet. But the good father I fear too often had no other foundation for his accounts, than report, or, at best, a slight inspection.

In the middle of the Falls stands a small island, about forty feet broad, and somewhat longer, on which grow a few cragged hemlock and spruce trees, and about half way between this island and the eastern shore is a rock, lying at the very edge of the Fall, in an oblique position, that appeared to be



about five or six feet broad, and thirty or forty long. These Falls vary much from all the others I have seen, as you may approach close to them, without finding the least obstruction from any intervening hill or precipice.

The country around them is extremely beautiful. It is not an uninterrupted plain, where the eye finds no relief, but composed of many gentle ascents, which in the summer are covered with the finest verdure, and interspersed with little groves, that give a pleasing variety to the prospect. On the whole, when the Falls are included, which may be seen at the distance of four miles, a more pleasing and picturesque view cannot, I believe, be found throughout the universe. I could have wished that I had happened to enjoy this glorious sight at a more seasonable time of the year, whilst the trees and hillocks were clad in nature's gayest livery, as this must have greatly added to the pleasure I received; however, even then it exceeded my warmest expectations. I have endeavoured to give the reader as just an idea of this enchanting spot, as possible; but all description, whether of the pencil or the pen, must fall infinitely short of the original.

At a little distance below the Falls stands a small island, of about an acre and a half, on which grow a great number of oak trees, every branch of which, able to support the weight, was full of eagles' nests. The reason that this kind of birds resort in such numbers to this spot, is, that they are here secure from the attack, either of man or beast, their retreat being guarded by the rapids, which the Indians never attempt to pass. Another reason is, that they find a constant supply of food for themselves and their young, from the animals and fish which are

thirty or forty long.  
the others I have  
to them, without  
any intervening hill

extremely beautiful.  
where the eye finds  
very gentle ascents,  
and with the finest  
little groves, that  
fect. On the whole,  
which may be seen at  
pleasing and pic-  
e found through-  
wished that I had  
light at a more fea-  
trees and hillocks  
ery, as this must  
I received; how-  
nest expectations.  
der as just an idea  
; but all descrip-  
pen, must fall in-

stands a small  
on which grow a  
branch of which,  
of eagles' nests,  
s resort in such  
are here secure  
east, their retreat  
rich the Indians  
ason is, that they  
themselves and  
fish which are

dashed to pieces by the Falls, and driven on the ad-  
jacent shore.

Having satisfied my curiosity as far as the eye of  
man can be satisfied, I proceeded on, still accom-  
panied by my young friend, till I had reached the  
River St Francis, near sixty miles above the Falls.  
To this river Father Hennepin gave the name of St  
Francis, and this was the extent of his travels, as  
well as mine, towards the north-west. As the season  
was so advanced, and the weather extremely cold, I  
was not able to make for man observations on these  
parts as I otherwise should have done.

It might, however, perhaps, be necessary to ob-  
serve, that in the little town I made about the Falls,  
after travelling fourteen miles by the side of the Mis-  
sissippi, I came to a river nearly twenty yards  
wide, which ran from the north-east, called Rum  
River. And on the 20th of November came to  
another termed Goose River, about twelve yards  
wide. On the 21st I arrived at the St Francis,  
which is about thirty yards wide. Here the Mississippi  
itself grows narrow, being not more than ninety  
yards over, and appears to be chiefly composed of  
small branches. The ice prevented me from noti-  
cing the depth of any of these three rivers.

The country in some places is hilly, but without  
large mountains; and the land is tolerably good. I  
observed here many deer and cariboes, some elk,  
with abundance of beavers, otters, and other furs.  
A little above this, to the north-east, are a number  
of small lakes, called the Thousand Lakes; the parts  
about which, though but little frequented, are the  
best within many miles for hunting, as the hunter  
never fails of returning loaded beyond his expecta-  
tions.

The Mississippi has never been explored higher up than the river St Francis, and only by Father Hennepin and myself thus far. So that we are obliged solely to the Indians, for all the intelligence we are able to give relative to the more northern parts. As this river is not navigable from the sea for vessels of any considerable burthen, much higher up than the forks of the Ohio, and even that is accomplished with great difficulty, owing to the rapidity of the current, and the winding of the river; those settlements that may be made on the interior branches of it, must be indisputably secure from the attacks of any maritime power. But at the same time the settlers will have the advantage of being able to convey their produce to the sea-ports with great facility, the current of the river from its source to its entrance into the Gulf of Mexico, being extremely favourable for doing this in small craft. This might also in time be facilitated by canals or shorter cuts; and a communication opened by water with New-York, Canada, &c. by way of the lakes. The forks of the Ohio are about nine hundred miles from the mouth of the Mississippi, following the course of the river; and the Messuri two hundred miles above these. From the latter it is about twenty miles to the Illinois river, and from that to the Ouiskonsin, which I have given an account of, about eight hundred more.

On the 25th I returned to my canoe, which I had left at the mouth of the river St Pierre; and here I parted with regret from my young friend, the Prince of the Winnebagoes. This river being clear of ice, by reason of its southern situation, I found nothing to obstruct my passage. On the 28th, being advanced about forty miles, I arrived at a small branch that fell into it from the north; to which, as it had no name that I could distinguish it by, I gave

explored higher  
ly by Father  
that we are  
the intelligence  
more northern,  
from the sea  
much higher  
en that is ac-  
g to the ra-  
of the river ;  
the interior  
cure from the  
at the same  
age of being  
ea-ports with  
om its source  
p, being ex-  
craft. This  
als or shorter  
water with  
lakes. The  
ndred miles  
llowing the  
wo hundred  
bout twenty  
to the Ou-  
t of, about

which I had  
; and here  
friend, the  
ing clear of  
found no-  
8th, being  
at a small  
o which, as  
by, I gave

my own. About forty miles higher up, I came to the Forks of Verd and Red Marble rivers, which join at some little distance before they enter the St Pierre.

The River St Pierre, at its junction with the Mississippi, is about a hundred yards broad, and continues that breadth nearly all the way I sailed upon it. It has a great depth of water, and in some places runs very briskly. About fifty miles from its mouth are some rapids, and much higher up there are many others.

I proceeded upon this river about two hundred miles to the country of the Naudowessies of the Plains, which lies a little above the forks formed by the Verd and Red Marble rivers, just mentioned, where a branch from the south nearly joins the Messori river. By the accounts I received from the Indians, I have reason to believe that the river St Pierre and the Messori, though they enter the Mississippi twelve hundred miles from each other, take their rise in the same neighbourhood ; and this within the space of a mile.

The river St Pierre's northern branch rises from a number of lakes near the shining mountains ; and it is from some of these, also, that a capital branch of the river Bourbon, which runs into Hudson's Bay, has its sources.

From the intelligence I gained from the Naudowessie Indians, among whom I arrived on the 7th of December, and whose language I perfectly acquired during a residence of five months ; and also from the accounts I afterwards obtained from the Assinipoils, who speak the same tongue, being a revolted band of the Naudowessies ; and from the Kil-

distances, neighbours of the Assinipoils, who speak the Chipeway language, and inhabit the heads of the river Bourbon; I say, from these nations, together with my own observations, I have learnt that the four most capital rivers on the Continent of North America, viz. the St Lawrence, the Mississippi, the river Bourbon, and the Oregon, or the River of the West (as I hinted in my introduction) have their sources in the same neighbourhood. The waters of the three former are within thirty miles of each other; the latter, however, is rather further west.

This shews that these parts are the highest lands in North-America; and it is an instance not to be paralleled on the other three quarters of the globe, that four rivers of such magnitude should take their rise together, and each, after running separate courses, discharge their waters into different oceans at the distance of two thousand miles from their sources. For in their passage from this spot to the Bay of St Lawrence, east; to the Bay of Mexico, south; to Hudson's Bay, north; and to the bay at the Straits of Annian, west, each of these traverse upwards of two thousand miles.

I shall here give my readers such reflections as occurred to me, when I had received this interesting information, and had by numberless enquiries, ascertained the truth of it; that is, as far as it was possible to arrive at a certainty, without a personal investigation.

It is well known that the Colonies, particularly those of New-England and Canada, are greatly affected, about the time their winter sets in, by a north-west wind, which continues for several months, and renders the cold much more intense there than it is in the interior parts of America. This I can,

oils, who speak  
the heads of the  
ations, together  
learnt that the  
inent of North  
Mississippi, the  
he River of the  
on) have their  
The waters of  
miles of each  
further west.

e highest lands  
ance not to be  
s of the globe,  
ould take their  
g separate cour-  
rent oceans at  
m their sources.  
the Bay of St  
tico, south; to  
y at the Straits  
erse upwards of

reflections as  
d this interest-  
rless enquiries,  
s far as it was  
out a personal

es, particularly  
, are greatly  
sets in, by a  
everal months,  
nse there than  
This I can,

from my own knowledge, assert, as I found the winter, that I passed to the westward of the Mississippi, far from severe; and the north-west wind blowing on those countries considerably more temperate than I have often experienced it to be nearer the coast. And that this did not arise from an uncertainty of the seasons, but was annually the case, I conclude, both from the small quantity of snow that then fell, and a total disuse of snow-shoes by these Indians, without which none of the more eastern nations can possibly travel during the winter.

As naturalists observe, that air resembles water in many respects, particularly by often flowing in a compact body; and that this is generally remarked to be with the current of large streams, and seldom across them, may not the winds that set violently into the Bay of Mexico about the latter end of the year, take their course over the continent in the same direction as the Mississippi does, till meeting the north winds (that from a similar cause blow up the Bourbon from Hudson's Bay), they are forced across the great lakes, down the current of the waters of the St. Lawrence, and, united, commit those ravages, and occasion those severe winters, experienced in the before-mentioned countries? During their progress over the lakes they become expanded, and consequently affect a greater tract of land than they otherwise would do.

According to my scanty knowledge of natural philosophy, this does not appear improbable. Whether it is agreeable to the laws established by naturalists to account for the operations of that element, I know not. However, the description here given of the situation of these vast bodies of water, and their near approach to each other, with my own



undigested suppositions of their effect on the winds, may prove, perhaps, in abler hands, the means of leading to many useful discoveries.

On the 7th of December, I arrived (as I said before) at the utmost extent of my travels towards the west; where I met with a large party of the Naudowessie Indians, among whom I resided seven months. These constituted a part of the eight bands of the Naudowessies of the Plains, and are termed the Wawpeentowahs, the Tintons, the Asrahcootans, the Mawhaws, and the Schians. The other three bands, whose names are, the Schianese, the Chongoufseton, and the Waddapawjestin, dwell higher up, to the west of the river St. Pierre, on plains that, according to their account, are unbounded; and probably terminate on the coast of the Pacific Ocean. The Naudowessie nation, when united, consists of more than two thousand warriors. The Assinipoils, who revolted from them, amount to about three hundred; and leagued with the Killistinoes, live in a continual state of enmity with the other eleven bands.

As I proceeded up the river St. Pierre, and had nearly reached the place where these people were encamped, I observed two or three canoes coming down the stream; but no sooner had the Indians that were on board them, discovered us, than they rowed towards the land, and leaping ashore with precipitation, left their canoes to float as the current drove them. In a few minutes I perceived some others; who, as soon as they came in sight, followed, with equal speed, the example of their countrymen.

I now thought it necessary to proceed with caution: and therefore kept on the side of the river opposite to that on which the Indians had landed.

fect on the winds,  
ands, the means of

ived (as I said be-  
ravel towards the  
party of the Nau-  
ided seven months:  
ight bands of the  
termed the Waw-  
afrahcootians, the  
other three bands,  
the Chongoufce-  
vell higher up, to  
a plains that, ac-  
ounded; and pro-  
ne Pacific Ocean.  
nited, consists of  
The Assinipoils,  
t to about three  
littinoes, live in a  
her eleven bands.

Pierre, and had  
these people were  
e canoes coming  
had the Indians  
ed us, than they  
bing ashore with  
at as the current  
perceived some  
ne in fight, fol-  
le of their coun-

roceed with cau-  
side of the river  
ians had landed.

However, I still continued my course, satisfied that the pipe of peace, which was fixed at the head of my canoe, and the English colours that were flying at the stern, would prove my security. After rowing about half a mile further, in turning a point, I discovered a great number of tents, and more than a thousand Indians, at a little distance from the shore. Being now nearly opposite to them, I ordered my men to pull directly over, as I was willing to convince the Indians by such a step, that I placed some confidence in them.

As soon as I had reached the land, two of the chiefs presented their hands to me, and led me, amidst the astonished multitude, who had most of them never seen a white man before, to a tent. Into this we entered, and according to the custom that universally prevails among every Indian nation, began to smoke the pipe of peace. We had not sat long before the crowd became so great, both around, and upon the tent, that we were in danger of being crushed by its fall. On this we returned to the plain, where, having gratified the curiosity of the common people, their wonder abated, and ever after they treated me with great respect.

From the chiefs I met with the most friendly and hospitable reception; which induced me, as the season was so far advanced, to take up my residence among them during the winter. To render my stay as comfortable as possible, I first endeavoured to learn their language. This I soon did, so as to make myself perfectly intelligible, having before acquired some slight knowledge of the language of those Indians that live on the back of the settlements, and in consequence met with every accommodation their manner of living would afford. Nor did I want for such amusements as tended to make so



long a period pass cheerfully away. I frequently hunted with them; and at other times beheld with pleasure their recreations and pastimes, which I shall describe hereafter.

Sometimes I sat with the chiefs, and whilst we smoked the friendly pipe, entertained them, in return for the accounts they gave me of their wars and excursions, with a narrative of my own adventures, and a description of all the battles fought between the English and French in America, in many of which I had a personal share. They always paid great attention to my details, and asked many pertinent questions relative to the European methods of making war.

I held these conversations with them in a great measure to procure from them some information relative to the chief point I had constantly in view, that of gaining a knowledge of the situation and produce, both of their own country, and those that lay to the westward of them. Nor was I disappointed in my designs; for I procured from them much useful intelligence. They likewise drew for me plans of all the countries with which they were acquainted; but as I entertained no great opinion of their geographical knowledge, I placed not much dependence on them, and therefore think it unnecessary to give them to the public. They draw with a piece of burnt coal, taken from the hearth, upon the inside of the birch tree, which is as smooth as paper, and answers the same purposes, notwithstanding it is of a yellow cast. Their sketches are made in a rude manner, but they seem to give as just an idea of a country, although the plan is not so exact as more experienced draughtsmen could do.

ay. I frequently  
times beheld with  
mes, which I shall

s, and whilst we  
tained them, in  
ine of their wars.  
f my own adven-  
battles fought be-  
America, in many  
They always paid  
asked many per-  
European methods

them in a great  
ome information  
stantly in view,  
the situation and  
ry, and those that  
was I disappointed  
n them much use-  
drew for me plans  
were acquainted;  
on of their geo-  
ot much depen-  
nk it unnecessary  
ey draw with a  
the hearth, upon  
ich is as smooth  
e purposes; not-  
Their sketches  
ey seem to give  
lthough the plan  
ced draughtsmen

I left the habitation of these hospitable Indians the latter end of April 1767; but did not part from them for several days, as I was accompanied on my journey by near three hundred of them, among whom were many chiefs, to the mouth of the river St Pierre. At this season, these bands annually go to the Great Cave, before mentioned, to hold a grand council with all the other bands; wherein they settle their operations for the ensuing year. At the same time they carry with them their dead, for interment, bound up in buffaloes skins. Besides those that accompanied me, others were gone before, and the rest were to follow.

Never did I travel with so cheerful and happy a company. But their mirth met with a sudden and temporary allay from a violent storm that overtook us one day on our passage. We had just landed, and were preparing to set up our tents for the night, when a heavy cloud overspread the heavens, and the most dreadful thunder, lightning and rain issued from it, that ever I beheld.

The Indians were greatly terrified, and ran to such shelter as they could find; for only a few tents were as yet erected. Apprehensive of the danger that might ensue from standing near any thing which could serve as a conductor, as the cloud appeared to contain such an uncommon quantity of electrical fluid, I took my stand as far as possible from any covering; chusing rather to be exposed to the peltings of the storm, than receive a fatal stroke. At this the Indians were greatly surprised, and drew conclusions from it not unfavourable to the opinion they already entertained of my resolution. Yet I acknowledge that I was never more affected in my life; for nothing scarcely could exceed the terrific scene. The peals of thunder were so loud

that they shook the earth; and the lightning flashed along the ground in streams of sulphur; so that the Indian chiefs themselves, although their courage in war is usually invincible, could not help trembling at the horrid combustion. As soon as the storm was over, they flocked around me, and informed me, that it was a proof of the anger of the evil spirits, whom they were apprehensive that they had highly offended.

When we arrived at the Great Cave, and the Indians had deposited the remains of their deceased friends in the burial place that stands adjacent to it, they held their great council, into which I was admitted, and at the same time had the honour to be installed or adopted a chief of their bands. On this occasion I made the following speech, which I insert, to give my readers a specimen of the language and manner in which it is necessary to address the Indians, so as to engage their attention, and to render the speaker's expression consonant to their ideas. It was delivered on the first day of May 1767.

“ My brothers, chiefs of the numerous and powerful Naudowessies. I rejoice that through my long abode with you, I can now speak to you (though after an imperfect manner) in your own tongue, like one of your own children. I rejoice also that I have had an opportunity so frequently to inform you of the glory and power of the great King that reigns over the English and other nations; who is descended from a very ancient race of sovereigns as old as the earth and waters; whose feet stand on two great islands, larger than any you have ever seen, amidst the greatest waters in the world; whose head reaches to the sun, and whose arms encircle the whole earth; the number of whose warriors are equal to the trees in the

lightning flashed  
 ohur; so that the  
 h. their courage  
 not help trem-  
 As soon as the  
 nd me, and in-  
 he anger of the  
 enfive that they

ave, and the In-  
 f their deceased  
 ls adjacent to it,  
 which I was ad-  
 ne honour to be  
 bands. On this  
 , which I insert,  
 e language and  
 ddress the Indi-  
 a, and to render  
 to their ideas:  
 May 1767.

erous and pow-  
 at through my  
 speak to you  
 ) in your own  
 dren. I rejoice  
 y so frequently  
 wer of the great  
 and other nati-  
 y ancient race  
 and waters;  
 ds, larger than  
 greatest waters  
 to the sun, and  
 th; the num-  
 he trees in the

"vallies, the stalks of rice in yonder marshes, or  
 "the blades of grass in your great plains: who has  
 "hundreds of canoes of his own, of such amazing  
 "bigness, that all the waters in your country would  
 "not suffice for one of them to swim in; each of  
 "which have guns, not small like mine, which you  
 "see before you, but of such magnitude, that an  
 "hundred of your stoutest young men would with  
 "difficulty be able to carry one. And these are  
 "equally surprising in their operation against the  
 "great king's enemies when engaged in battle; the  
 "terror they carry with them, your language wants  
 "words to express. You may remember the other  
 "day, when we were encamping at Wadawpaw-  
 "menefotor, the black clouds, the wind, the fire,  
 "the stupendous noise, the horrible cracks, and the  
 "trembling of the earth, which then alarmed you,  
 "and gave you reason to think your gods were  
 "angry with you; not unlike these are the warlike  
 "implements of the English, when they are fight-  
 "ing the battles of their great king.

"Several of the chiefs of your bands have often  
 "told me, in times past, when I dwelt with you  
 "in your tents, that they much wished to be counted  
 "among the children and allies of the great king  
 "my master. You may remember how often you  
 "have desired me, when I returned again to my  
 "own country, to acquaint the great king of your  
 "good disposition towards him and his subjects, and  
 "that you wished for traders from the English to  
 "come among you.

"Being now about to take my leave, of you, and  
 "to return to my own country, a long way towards  
 "the rising sun, I again ask you to tell me, whether  
 "you continue of the same mind as when I spoke to  
 "you in council last winter; and as there are now

“ several of your chiefs here, who came from the  
 “ great plains towards the setting of the sun, whom I  
 “ have never spoke with in council before, I ask you  
 “ to let me know, if you are all willing to acknow-  
 “ ledge yourselves the children of my great master  
 “ the King of the English and other nations, as I  
 “ shall take the first opportunity to acquaint him of  
 “ your desires and good intentions.

“ I charge you not to give heed to bad reports ;  
 “ for there are wicked birds flying about among the  
 “ neighbouring nations, who may whisper evil  
 “ things in your ears against the English, contrary  
 “ to what I have told you ; you must not believe  
 “ them, for I have told you the truth.

“ And as for the chiefs that are about to go to  
 “ Michillimackinac, I shall take care to make for  
 “ them and their suite, a straight road, smooth waters,  
 “ and a clear sky ; that they may go there, and  
 “ smoke the pipe of peace, and rest secure on a  
 “ beaver blanket, under the shade of the great tree  
 “ of peace. Farewell !”

To this speech I received the following answer,  
 from the mouth of the principal chief :

“ Good brother ! I am now about to speak to you  
 “ with the mouths of these my brothers, chiefs of the  
 “ eight bands of the powerful nation of the Nau-  
 “ dowessies. We believe and are well satisfied in  
 “ the truth of every thing you have told us about  
 “ your great nation, and the great King, our greatest  
 “ father ; whom we spread this beaver blanket,  
 “ that his father's protection may ever rest easy and  
 “ safe among us his children : your colours and your  
 “ arms agree with the accounts you have given us  
 “ about your great nation. We desire, that when you

came from the  
the sun, whom I  
before, I ask you  
ling to acknow-  
my great matter  
er nations, as I  
acquaint him of

to bad reports;  
about among the  
ay whisper evil  
English, contrary  
must not believe  
th.

about to go to  
re to make for  
smooth waters;  
go there, and  
est secure on a  
of the great tree

llowing answer,  
chief:

t to speak to you  
ers; chiefs of the  
on of the Nau-  
well satisfied in  
e told us about  
ing, our greatest  
beaver blanket,  
ver rest easy and  
colours and your  
have given us  
e, that when you

"return, you will acquaint the great King how  
"much the Naudowessies wish to be counted among  
"his good children.

"You may believe us when we tell you, that we  
"will not open our ears to any who may dare to  
"speak evil of our great father the king of the Eng-  
"lish and other nations.

"We thank you for what you have done for us  
"in making peace between the Naudowessies and  
"the Chipeways, and hope, when you return to us  
"again, that you will complete this good work; and  
"quite dispelling the clouds that intervene, open  
"the blue sky of peace, and cause the bloody hatchet  
"to be deep buried under the roots of the great tree  
"of peace.

"We wish you to remember to represent to our  
"great father, how much we desire that traders may  
"be sent to abide among us, with such things as we  
"need, that the hearts of our young men, our wives,  
"and our children may be made glad. And may  
"peace subsist between us, so long as the sun, the  
"moon, the earth, and the waters shall endure.  
"Farewell!"

I thought it necessary to caution the Indians against  
giving heed to any bad reports that may reach them  
from the neighbouring nations, to the disadvantage  
of the English, as I had heard, at different places  
through which I passed, that emissaries were still em-  
ployed by the French to detach those who were  
friendly to the English from their interest. And I  
saw, myself, several belts of wampum that had been  
delivered for this purpose to some of the tribes I was  
among. On the delivery of each of these, a Talk

was held, wherein the Indians were told that the English, who were but a petty people, had stolen that country from their great father the king of France, whilst he was asleep; but that he would soon awake, and take them again under his protection. These I found were sent from Canada, by persons who appeared to be well affected towards the government under which they lived.

Whilst I tarried at the mouth of the River St. Pierre, with these friendly Indians, I endeavoured to gain intelligence whether any goods had been sent towards the Falls of St. Anthony for my use, agreeable to the promise I had received from the governor when I left Michillimackinac. But finding from some Indians, who passed by in their return from those parts, that this agreement had not been fulfilled, I was obliged to give up all thoughts of proceeding further to the north-west by this route, according to my original plan. I therefore returned to La Prairie le Chien, where I procured as many goods from the traders I left there the preceding year, as they could spare.

As these, however, were not sufficient to enable me to renew my first design, I determined to endeavour to make my way across the country of the Chipeways to Lake Superior; in hopes of meeting at the Grand Portage on the north side of it, the traders that annually go from Michillimackinac to the north-west; of whom I doubted not but that I should be able to procure goods enough to answer my purpose, and also to penetrate through those more northern parts to the Straits of Annian.

And I the more readily returned to La Prairie le Chien, as I could by that means the better fulfil the



old that the Eng-  
s, had stolen that  
king of France,  
ould soon awake,  
tection. These  
persons who ap-  
the government

f the River St.  
endeavoured to  
ds had been sent  
r my use, agree-  
d from the go-  
c. But finding  
in their return  
nt had not been  
all thoughts of  
by this route,  
erefore returned  
cured as many  
re the preceding

cient to enable  
nined to endea-  
country of the  
hopes of meet-  
north side of it,  
Michillimackinac  
ted not but that  
ough to answer  
through those  
Annian.

o La Prairie le  
better fulfil the

engagement I had made to the party of Naudowessies mentioned at the conclusion of my speech.

During my abode with this people, wishing to secure them entirely in the interest of the English, I had advised some of the chiefs to go to Michillimackinac, where they would have an opportunity of trading, and of hearing the accounts that I had entertained them with of my countrymen, confirmed. At the same time I had furnished them with a recommendation to the governor, and given them every direction necessary for their voyage.

In consequence of this, one of the principal chiefs, and twenty-five of an inferior rank, agreed to go the ensuing summer. This they took an opportunity of doing when they came with the rest of their band to attend the grand council at the mouth of the River St. Pierre. Being obliged, on account of the disappointment I had just been informed of, to return so far down the Mississippi, I could from thence the more easily set them on their journey.

As the intermediate parts of this river are much frequented by the Chipeways, with whom the Naudowessies are continually at war, they thought it more prudent, being but a small party, to take the advantage of the night, than to travel with me by day; accordingly, no sooner was the grand council broke up, than I took a friendly leave of these people, from whom I had received innumerable civilities, and pursued once more my voyage.

I reached the eastern side of Lake Pepin the same night, when I went ashore and encamped as usual. The next morning, when I had proceeded some miles further, I perceived at a distance before me, a smoke, which denoted that some Indians were near; and in



a short time discovered ten or twelve tents, not far from the bank of the river. As I was apprehensive that this was a party of the rovers I had before met with, I knew not what course to pursue. My attendants persuaded me to endeavour to pass by them on the opposite side of the river; but as I had hitherto found that the best way to ensure a friendly reception from the Indians, is to meet them boldly, and without shewing any tokens of fear, I would by no means consent to this proposal. Instead of this, I crossed directly over, and landed in the midst of them, for by this time the greatest part of them were standing on the shore.

The first I accosted were Chipeways inhabiting near the Ottowaw Lake; who received me with great cordiality, and shook me by the hand in token of friendship. At some little distance behind these stood a chief remarkably tall and well made, but of so stern an aspect, that the most undaunted person could not behold him without feeling some degree of terror. He seemed to have passed the meridian of life, and by the mode in which he was painted and tattooed, I discovered that he was of high rank. However, I approached him in a courteous manner, and expected to have met with the same reception I had done from the other; but to my great surprise, he withheld his hand, and looking fiercely at me, said, in the Chipeway tongue, "Cawin nishishin saganosh," that is, "The English are no good." As he had his tomahawk in his hand, I expected that this laconic sentence would have been followed with a blow; to prevent which, I drew a pistol from my belt, and, holding it in a careless position, passed close by him, to let him see I was not afraid of him.

I learned soon after from the other Indians, that this was a chief, called by the French the Grand

Sautor, or the great Chipeway Chief, for they denominate the Chipeway, Sautors. They likewise told me that he had been always a steady friend to that people, and when they delivered up Michillimackinac to the English on their evacuation of Canada, the Grand Sautor had sworn that he would ever remain the avowed enemy of its new possessors, as the territories on which the fort is built belonged to him.

Finding him thus disposed, I took care to be constantly on my guard whilst I staid; but that he might not suppose I was driven away by his frowns, I took up my abode there for the night. I pitched my tent at some distance from the Indians, and had no sooner laid myself down to rest, than I was awakened by my French servant. Having been alarmed by the sound of Indian music, he had run to the outside of the tent, where he beheld a party of the young savages dancing towards us in an extraordinary manner, each carrying in his hand a torch fixed on the top of a long pole. But I shall defer any further account of this uncommon entertainment, which at once surprised and alarmed me, till I treat of the Indian dances.

The next morning I continued my voyage, and before night reached La Prairie le Chien; at which place the party of Naudowessies soon overtook me. Not long after the Grand Sautor also arrived, and before the Naudowessies left that place to continue their journey to Michillimackinac, he found means, in conjunction with some French traders from Louisiana, to draw from me about ten of the Naudowessie chiefs, whom he prevailed upon to go towards those parts.

The remainder proceeded, according to my directions, to the English fort; from whence I afterwards heard that they returned to their own country without any unfortunate accident befalling them, and greatly pleased with the reception they had met with; whilst not more than half of those who went to the southward, through the difference of that southern climate from their own, lived to reach their abode. And since I came to England I have been informed, that the Grand Sauter having rendered himself more and more disgusting to the English, by his inveterate enmity towards them, was at length stabbed in his tent, as he encamped near Michillimackinac, by a trader to whom I had related the foregoing story.

I should have remarked, that whatever Indians happen to meet at La Prairie le Chien, the great mart to which all who inhabit the adjacent countries resort, though the nations to which they belong are at war with each other, yet they are obliged to restrain their enmity, and forbear all hostile acts during their stay there. This regulation has been long established among them for their mutual conveniences, as without it no trade could be carried on. The same rule is observed also at the Red Mountain (afterwards described), from whence they get the stone of which they make their pipes; these being indispensable to the accommodation of every neighbouring tribe, a similar restriction becomes needful, and is of public utility.

The river St Pierre, which runs through the territories of the Naudowessies, flows through a most delightful country, abounding with all the necessaries of life, that grow spontaneously; and with a little cultivation, it might be made to produce even the luxuries of life. Wild rice grows here in great

abu  
ing  
gra  
hop  
gro  
spik  
At  
emi  
be e  
have  
grow  
they  
of in

A  
north  
that  
white  
befor  
in th  
that  
The  
and v  
comp  
that,  
grow  
in arc

Ne  
River  
a fort  
of the  
black,  
Naud  
count  
of whi  
ness t  
serves

abundance; and every place is filled with trees bending under their loads of fruits, such as plums, grapes, and apples; the meadows are covered with hops, and many sorts of vegetables; whilst the ground is stored with useful roots, with angelica, spikenard, and ground nuts as large as hens' eggs. At a little distance from the sides of the river are eminences, from whence you have views that cannot be exceeded, even by the most beautiful of those I have already described; amidst these are delightful groves, and such amazing quantities of maples, that they would produce sugar sufficient for any number of inhabitants.

A little way from the mouth of this river, on the north side of it, stands a hill, one part of which, that towards the Mississippi, is composed entirely of white stone, of the same soft nature as that I have before described; for such, indeed, is all the stone in this country. But what appears remarkable, is, that the colour of it is as white as the driven snow. The outward part of it was crumbled by the wind and weather into heaps of sand, of which a beautiful composition might be made; or, I am of opinion that, when properly treated, the stone itself would grow harder by time, and have a very noble effect in architecture.

Near that branch which is termed the Marble River, is a mountain, from whence the Indians get a sort of red stone, out of which they hew the bowls of their pipes. In some of these parts is found a black, hard clay, or rather stone, of which the Naudowessies make their family utensils. This country likewise abounds with a milk-white clay, of which China ware might be made equal in goodness to the Asiatic; and also with a blue clay that serves the Indians for paint; with this last they con-

trive, by mixing it with the red stone powdered, to paint themselves of different colours. Those that can get the blue clay here mentioned, paint themselves very much with it; particularly when they are about to begin their sports and pastimes. It is also esteemed by them a mark of peace, as it has a resemblance of a blue sky, which with them is a symbol of it, and made use of in their speeches as a figurative expression to denote peace. When they wish to shew that their inclinations are pacific towards other tribes, they greatly ornament both themselves and their belts with it.

Having concluded my business at La Prairie le Chien, I proceeded once more up the Mississippi, as far as the place where the Chipeway River enters it a little below Lake Pepin. Here, having engaged an Indian pilot, I directed him to steer towards the Ottawaw Lakes, which lie near the head of this river. This he did, and I arrived at them the beginning of July.

The Chipeway River, at its junction with the Mississippi, is about eighty yards wide, but is much wider as you advance into it. Near thirty miles up it separates into two branches, and I took my course through that which lies to the eastward.

The country adjoining to the river, for about sixty miles, is very level, and on its banks lie fine meadows, where larger droves of buffaloes and elks were feeding, than I observed in any other parts of my travels. The tract between the two branches of this river is termed the Road of War between the Chipeway and Naudowessie Indians.

The country to the Falls is almost without any timber, and above that very uneven and rugged,

and closely wooded with pines, beach, maple, and birch. Here a most remarkable and astonishing sight presented itself to my view. In a wood, on the east of the river, which was about three quarters of a mile in length, and in depth farther than my eye could reach, I observed that every tree, many of which were more than six feet in circumference, was lying flat on the ground, torn up by the roots. This appeared to have been done by some extraordinary hurricane; that came from the west some years ago; but how many I could not learn, as I found no inhabitants near it, of whom I could gain information. The country on the west side of the river, from being less woody, had escaped in a great measure this havock, as only a few trees were blown down.

Near the heads of this river, is a town of the Chipeways, from whence it takes its name. It is situated on each side of the river (which at this place is of no considerable breadth) and lies adjacent to the banks of a small lake. This town contains about forty houses, and can send out upwards of one hundred warriors, many of whom were fine stout young men. The houses of it are built after the Indian manner, and have neat plantations behind them; but the inhabitants, in general, seemed to be the nastiest people I had ever been among. I observed that the women and children indulged themselves in a custom, which, though common, in some degree, throughout every Indian nation, appears to be, according to our ideas, of the most nauseous and indelicate nature; that of searching each other's heads, and eating the prey caught therein.

In July I left this town, and having crossed a number of small lakes and carrying places that inter-

vened, I came to a head branch of the river St Croix. This branch I descended, to a fork, and then ascended another to its source. On both these rivers I discovered several mines of virgin copper, which was as pure as that found in any other country.

Here I came to a small brook, which my guide thought might be joined at some distance by streams that would at length render it navigable. The water at first was so scanty, that my canoe would by no means swim in it; but having stopped up several old beaver dams, which had been broken down by the hunters, I was enabled to proceed for some miles, till by the junction of a few brooks, these aids became no longer necessary. In a short time the water increased to a most rapid river, which we descended till it entered into Lake Superior. This river I named after a gentleman that desired to accompany me from the town of the Ottagau-mies to the carrying place on Lake Superior, Goddard's River.

To the west of this is another small river, which also empties itself into the Lake. This I termed Strawberry River, from the great number of strawberries of a good size and flavour that grew on its banks.

The country from the Ottowaw Lakes, to Lake Superior, is in general very uneven and thickly covered with woods. The soil in some places is tolerably good, in others but indifferent. In the heads of the St Croix and the Chipeway Rivers, are exceeding fine sturgeon. All the wilderness between the Mississippi and Lake Superior is called by the Indians, the Moschettoe Country, and I thought it most justly named; for, it being then



the river. St  
a fork, and  
On both these  
virgin cop-  
in any other

ch my guide  
ce by streams  
igable. The  
canoe would  
g stopped up  
been broken  
o proceed for  
few brooks,  
. In a short  
d river, which  
ake Superior.  
that desired  
the Ottagau-  
superior, God-

river, which  
his I termed  
nber of straw-  
grew on its

kes, to Lake  
and, thickly  
ome places is  
rent. In the  
ay Rivers, are  
wilderness be-  
rior is called  
ntry, and I  
it being then

their season, I never saw or felt so many of those insects in my life.

The latter end of July I arrived, after having coasted through West Bay, at the Grand Portage, which lies on the north-west borders of Lake Superior. Here those who go to the north-west trade, to the Lakes De Pluye, Dubois, &c. carry over their canoes and baggage about nine miles, till they come to a number of small lakes, the waters of some of which descend into Lake Superior, and others into the river Bourbon. Lake Superior from West Bay to this place is bounded by rocks, except towards the south-west part of the Bay where I first entered it, where it was tolerably level.

At the grand Portage is a small bay, before the entrance of which lies an island, that intercepts the dreary and uninterrupted view over the Lake, which otherwise would have presented itself, and makes the bay serene and pleasant. Here I met a large party of the Killistinoé and Assinipoil Indians, with their respective kings and their families. They were come to this place in order to meet the traders from Michillimackinac, who make this their road to the north-west. From them I received the following account of the lakes that lie to the north-west of Lake Superior.

Lake Bourbon, the most northern of those yet discovered, received its name from the French traders who accompanied a party of Indians to Hudson's Bay some years ago; and was thus denominated by them in honour of the royal family of France. It is composed of the waters of the Bourbon river, which, as I have before observed, rises a great way



to the southward, not far from the northern heads of the Mississippi.

This lake is about eighty miles in length, north and south, and is nearly circular. It has no very large islands on it. The land on the eastern side is very good; and to the south-west there are some mountains; in many other parts there are barren plains, bogs, and morasses. Its latitude is between fifty-two and fifty-four degrees north, and it lies nearly south-west from Hudson's Bay. As through its northern situation the weather there is extremely cold, only a few animals are to be found in the country that borders upon it. They gave me but an indifferent account either of the beasts, birds, or fishes. There are indeed some buffaloes of a small size, which are fat and good about the latter end of summer, with a few moose and cariboo deer: however, this deficiency is made up by the furs of every sort that are to be met with in great plenty around the lake. The timber growing here is chiefly fir, cedar, spruce, and some maple.

Lake Winnepeek, or, as the French write it, Lac Quinipique, which lies nearest to the foregoing, is composed of the same waters. It is in length about two hundred miles north and south; its breadth has never been properly ascertained, but is supposed to be about one hundred miles in its widest part. This lake is very full of islands; these are, however, of no great magnitude. Many considerable rivers empty themselves into it, which as yet are not distinguished by any names. The waters are stored with fish, such as trout and sturgeon, and also with others of a smaller kind peculiar to these lakes.

The land on the south-west part of it is very good, especially at the entrance of a large branch of the river Bourbon, which flows from the south-

we  
by  
tra  
the  
Ma  
fif  
and  
cha  
Th  
bra

I  
mor  
map  
ther  
rice  
nor  
carn  
part  
thof  
the  
catt  
from

O  
bour  
Som  
men  
situa  
but t  
for  
usua  
me,  
good  
any  
other  
Bay,  
ing t

west. On this river there is a factory that was built by the French, called Fort la Reine, to which the traders from Michillimackinac resort to trade with the Assinipoils and Killistinoes. To this place the Mahahs, who inhabit a country two hundred and fifty miles south-west, come also to trade with them; and bring great quantities of Indian corn, to exchange for knives, tomahawks, and other articles. Those people are supposed to dwell on some of the branches of the river of the West.

Lake Winnepeek has on the north-east some mountains, and on the east many barren plains. The maple or sugar tree grows here in great plenty, and there is likewise gathered an amazing quantity of rice, which proves that grain will flourish in these northern climates as well as in warmer. Buffaloes, cariboo, and moose deer, are numerous in these parts. The buffaloes of this country differ from those that are found more to the south only in size; the former being much smaller; just as the black cattle of the northern parts of Great Britain differ from English oxen.

On the waters that fall into this lake, the neighbouring nations take great numbers of excellent furs. Some of these they carry to the factories and settlements belonging to the Hudson's Bay Company, situated above the entrance of the Bourbon River; but this they do with reluctance, on several accounts; for some of the Assinipoils and Killistinoes, who usually traded with the Company's servants, told me, that if they could be sure of a constant supply of goods from Michillimackinac, they would not trade any where else. They shewed me some cloth and other articles that they had purchased at Hudson's Bay, with which they were much dissatisfied, thinking they had been greatly imposed upon in the barter.

Allowing that their accounts were true, I could not help joining in their opinion. But this dissatisfaction might probably proceed, in a great measure, from the intrigues of the Canadian traders: for whilst the French were in possession of Michillimackinac, having acquired a thorough knowledge of the trade of the north-west countries, they were employed on that account, after the reduction of Canada, by the English traders there, in the establishment of this trade, with which they were themselves quite unacquainted. One of the methods they took to withdraw those Indians from their attachment to the Hudson's Bay Company, and to engage their good opinion in behalf of their new employers, was by depreciating on all occasions the Company's goods, and magnifying the advantages that would arise to them from trafficking entirely with the Canadian traders. In this they too well succeeded, and from this, doubtless, did the dissatisfaction the Assinipoils and Killistinoes expressed to me, partly proceed. But another reason augmented it; and this was the length of their journey to the Hudson's Bay factories, which, they informed me, took them up three months, during the summer heats, to go and return, and, from the smallness of their canoes, they could not carry more than a third of the beavers they killed. So that it is not to be wondered at, that these Indians should wish to have traders come to reside among them. It is true that the parts they inhabit are within the limits of the Hudson's Bay territories; but the Company must be under the necessity of winking at an encroachment of this kind, as the Indians would without doubt protect the traders when among them. Besides, the passports granted to the traders that go from Michillimackinac, give them liberty to trade to the north-west about Lake Superior; by which is meant Fort La Reine, Lake Winnepeek, or any other parts of the waters of the

Bourbon River, where the *Couriers de Bois*, or *Traders*, may make it most convenient to reside.

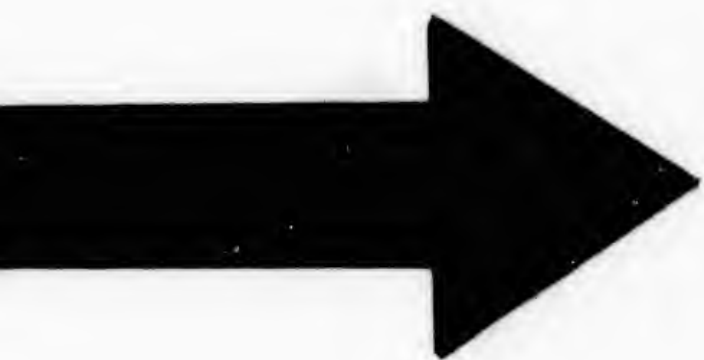
Lac du Bois, as commonly termed by the French in their maps, or in English the Lake of the Wood, is so called from the multiplicity of wood growing on its banks; such as oaks, pines, firs, spruce, &c. This lake lies still higher upon a branch of the river Bourbon, and nearly east from the south end of Lake Winnepeek. It is of great depth in some places. Its length from east to west about seventy miles, and its greatest breadth about forty miles. It has but few islands, and these of no great magnitude. The fishes, fowls, and quadrupeds that are found near it, vary but little from those of the other two lakes. A few of the Killistnoe Indians sometimes encamp on the borders of it to fish and hunt.

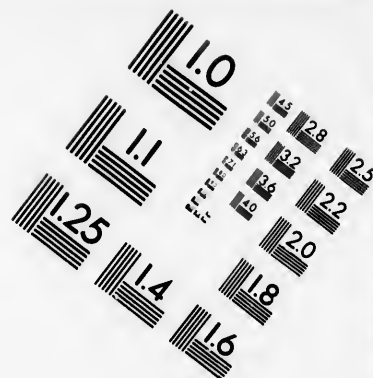
This lake lies in the communication between Lake Superior, and the Lakes Winnepeek and Bourbon. Its waters are not esteemed quite so pure as those of the other lakes, it having, in many places, a muddy bottom.

Lac-la Pluye, so called by the French, in English the Rainy Lake, is supposed to have acquired this name from the first travellers that passed over it meeting with an uncommon deal of rain; or, as some have affirmed, from a mist like rain, occasioned by a perpendicular water-fall that empties itself into a river which lies to the south-west.

This lake appears to be divided by an isthmus, near the middle, into two parts: the west part is called the Great Rainy Lake, the east, the Little Rainy Lake, as being the least division. It lies a few miles further to the eastward, on the same branch of the





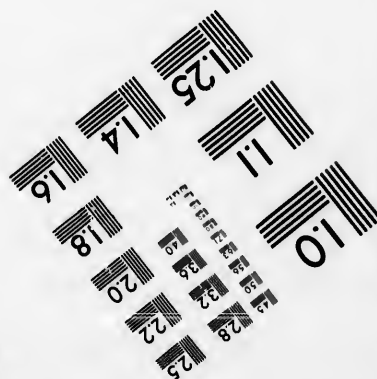


6"



# Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503**



0  
11  
F6 F5 F4 F3 F2 F1  
18 20 22 25

11  
01  
02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99



Bourbon, than the last mentioned Lake. It is in general very shallow in its depth. The broadest part of it is no more than twenty miles; its length including both about three hundred miles. In the west part the water is very clear and good; and some excellent fish are taken in it. A great many fowl resort here in the fall of the year. Moose deer are to be found in great plenty, and likewise the cariboo, whose skin for breeches or gloves exceeds by far any other to be met with in North America. The land on the borders of this lake is esteemed, in some places, very good, but rather too thickly covered with wood. Here reside a considerable band of the Chipeways.

Eastward from this lake lie several small ones, which extend in a string to the great carrying place, and from thence into Lake Superior. Between these little lakes are several carrying places, which render the trade to the north-west difficult to accomplish, and exceeding tedious, as it takes two years to make one voyage from Michillimackinac to these parts.

Red Lake is a comparatively small lake, at the head of a branch of the Bourbon River, which is called by some Red River. Its form is nearly round, and about sixty miles in circumference. On one side of it is a tolerable large island, close by which a small river enters. It bears almost south-east both from Lake Winnepeek and from Lake du Bois. The parts adjacent are very little known or frequented, even by the savages themselves.

Not far from this lake, a little to the south-west, is another, called White Bear Lake, which is nearly about the size of the last mentioned. The waters that compose this lake are the most northern of any

lake. It is in  
The broadest  
es; its length  
miles. In the  
ood; and some  
eat many fowl  
oose deer are  
ewise the car-  
es exceeds by  
orth America.  
e is esteemed,  
er too thickly  
a considerable

that supply the Mississippi, and may be called, with propriety its most remote source. It is fed by two or three small rivers, or rather large brooks.

A few miles from it, to the south-east, are a great number of small lakes, none of which are more than ten miles in circumference, that are called the Thousand Lakes. In the adjacent country is reckoned the finest hunting for furs of any, on this continent; the Indians who hunt here seldom returning without having their canoes loaded as deep as they can swim.

al small ones,  
arrying place,  
Between these  
s, which ren-  
ult to accom-  
s two years to  
kinac to these

Having just before observed that this lake is the utmost northern source of the Mississippi, I shall here further remark, that before this river enters the Gulf of Mexico, it has not run less, through all its meanderings, than three thousand miles; or, in a straight line from north to south, about twenty degrees, which is nearly fourteen hundred English miles.

l lake, at the  
ver, which is  
nearly round,  
ce. On one  
se by which a  
uth-east both  
ke du Bois.  
nown or fre-  
s.

These Indians informed me, that to the north-west of Lake Winnepeck lies another, whose circumference vastly exceeded any they had given me an account of. They describe it as much larger than Lake Superior. But as it appears to be so far to the north-west, I should imagine that it was not a lake, but rather the Archipelago, or broken waters, that form the communication between Hudson's Bay and the northern parts of the Pacific Ocean.

south-west, is  
ich is nearly  
The waters  
rthern of any

There are an infinite number of small lakes on the more western parts of the western head-branches of the Mississippi, as well as between these and Lake Winnepeck, but none of them are large enough to

suppose either of them to be the lake or waters meant by the Indians.

They likewise informed me, that some of the northern branches of the Messorie and the southern branches of the St. Pierre have a communication with each other, except for a mile, over which they carry their canoes. And by what I could learn from them, this is the road they take when their war parties make their excursions upon the Pawnees and Pawannees, nations inhabiting some branches of the Messorie river. In the country belonging to these people, it is said, that mandrakes are frequently found, a species of root resembling human beings of both sexes; and that these are more perfect than such as are discovered about the Nile in Nether Ethiopia.

A little to the north-west of the heads of the Messorie and St. Pierre, the Indians further told me, that there was a nation rather smaller and whiter than the neighbouring tribes, who cultivate the ground, and (as far as I could gather from their expressions) in some measure, the arts. To this account they added, that some of the nation who inhabit those parts that lie to the west of the Shining Mountains, have gold so plenty among them, that they make their most common utensils of it. These mountains (which I shall describe more particularly hereafter) divide the waters that fall into the South Sea, from those that run into the Atlantic.

The people dwelling near them are supposed to be some of the different tribes that were tributary to the Mexican Kings, and who fled from their native country, to seek an asylum in these parts, about

L.S.  
lake or waters:

some of the  
d the southern  
communication  
, over which  
what I could  
they take when  
sions upon the  
habiting some  
n the country  
hat mandrakes  
not resembling  
these are more  
bout the Nile

ds of the Mes-  
riher told me,  
r and whiter  
cultivate the  
ther from their  
rts. This  
e nation who  
of the Shining  
ng them, that  
s of it. These  
more particu-  
hat fall into  
into the At-

re supposed to  
were tributary  
from their na-  
e parts, about

the time of the conquest of Mexico by the Spaniards more than two centuries ago.

As some confirmation of this supposition, it is remarked, that they have chosen the most interior parts for their retreat, being still prepossessed with a notion that the sea-coasts have been infested ever since with monsters vomiting fire, and hurling about thunder and lightning; from whose bowels issued men, who, with unseen instruments, or by the power of magic, killed the harmless Indians at an astonishing distance. From such as these, their fore-fathers (according to a tradition among them that still remains unimpaired) fled to the retired abodes they now inhabit. For as they found that the floating monsters, which had thus terrified them, could not approach the land, and that those who had descended from their sides did not care to make excursions to any considerable distance from them, they formed a resolution to betake themselves to some country, that lay far from the sea-coasts, where only they could be secure from such diabolical enemies. They accordingly set out with their families, and, after a long peregrination, settled themselves near these mountains, where they concluded they had found a place of perfect security.

The Winnebagoes, dwelling on the Fox River (whom I have already treated of,) are likewise supposed to be some strolling band from the Mexican countries. But they are able to give only an imperfect account of their original residence. They say they formerly came a great way from the westward, and were driven by wars to take refuge among the Naudowessies; but as they are entirely ignorant of the arts, or of the value of gold, it is rather to be supposed, that they were driven from their ancient settlements by the above mentioned

emigrants, as they passed on towards their present habitation.

These suppositions, however, may want confirmation; for the smaller tribes of Indians are subject to such various alterations in their places of abode, from the wars they are continually engaged in, that it is almost impossible to ascertain, after half a century, the original situation of any of them.

That range of mountains, of which the Shining Mountains are a part, begins at Mexico, and continuing northward, on the back or to the east of California, separate the waters of those numerous rivers that fall either into the Gulf of Mexico, or the Gulf of California. From thence continuing their course still northward, between the sources of the Mississippi and the rivers that run into the South Sea, they appear to end in about forty-seven or forty-eight degrees of north latitude; where a number of rivers arise, and empty themselves either into the South Sea, into Hudson's Bay, or into the waters that communicate between these two seas.

Among these mountains, those that lie to the west of the river St Pierre, are called the Shining Mountains, from an infinite number of chrystal stones, of an amazing size, with which they are covered, and which, when the sun shines full upon them, sparkle so as to be seen at a very great distance.

This extraordinary range of mountains is calculated to be more than three thousand miles in length, without any very considerable intervals, which I believe surpasses any thing of the kind in the other quarters of the globe. Probably in future ages, they may be found to contain more riches in their bowels,

than those of Indostan and Malabar, or that are produced on the golden coast of Guinea; nor will I except even the Peruvian mines. To the west of these mountains, when explored by future Columbus or Raleighs, may be found other lakes, rivers, and countries, fraught with all the necessities or luxuries of life; and where future generations may find an asylum, whether driven from their country by the ravages of lawless tyrants, or by religious persecutions, or reluctantly leaving it to remedy the inconveniencies arising from a superabundant increase of inhabitants; whether, I say, impelled by these, or allured by hopes of commercial advantages, there is little doubt but their expectations will be fully gratified in these rich and unexhausted climes.

But to return to the Assinipoils and Killistinoes, whom I left at the Grand Portage, and from whom I received the foregoing account of the lakes that lie to the north-west of this place.

The traders we expected being later this season than usual, and our numbers very considerable, for there were more than three hundred of us, the stock of provisions we had brought with us was nearly exhausted, and we waited with impatience for their arrival.

One day, whilst we were expressing our wishes for this desirable event, and looking from an eminence in hopes of seeing them come over the lake, the chief priest belonging to the band of the Killistinoes, told us, that he would endeavour to obtain a conference with the Great Spirit, and know from him when the traders would arrive. I paid little attention to this declaration, supposing that it would be productive of some juggling trick, just

sufficiently covered to deceive the ignorant Indians. But the king of that tribe telling me that this was undertaken by the priest chiefly to alleviate my anxiety, and at the same time to convince me how much interest he had with the Great Spirit, I thought it necessary to restrain my animadversions on his design.

The following evening was fixed upon for this spiritual conference. When every thing had been properly prepared, the king came to me and led me to a capacious tent, the covering of which was drawn up, so as to render what was transacting within, visible to those who stood without. We found the tent surrounded by a great number of the Indians, but we readily gained admission, and seated ourselves on skins laid on the ground for that purpose.

In the center I observed that there was a place of an oblong shape, which was composed of stakes stuck in the ground, with intervals between, so as to form a kind of chest or coffin, large enough to contain the body of a man. These were of a middle size, and placed at such a distance from each other, that whatever lay between them was readily to be discerned. The tent was perfectly illuminated by a great number of torches made of splinters cut from the pine or birch tree, which the Indians held in their hands.

In a few minutes the priest entered; when an amazing large elk's skin being spread on the ground just at my feet, he laid himself down upon it, after having stripped himself of every garment, except that which he wore close about the middle. Being now prostrate on his back, he first laid hold of one side of the skin and folded it over him, and then the other;

leav  
foon  
by,  
also  
bod  
skin  
my,  
the  
encl  
as I  
my  
I m  
fuch

T  
a fe  
cont  
grew  
artic  
a m  
Killi  
very  
a cor  
its ut  
pray  
tation

AA  
hour  
with  
haust  
he sp  
he w  
move  
cover  
been  
drefs  
voice.



leaving only his head uncovered. This was no sooner done, than one of the young men who stood by, took about forty yards of strong cord, made also of an elk's hide, and rolled it tight round his body, so that he was completely swathed within the skin. Being thus bound up like an Egyptian mummy, one took him by the heels, and the other by the head, and lifted him over the pales into the enclosure. I could also now behold him as plain as I had hitherto done, and I took care not to turn my eyes a moment from the object before me, that I might the more readily detect the artifice; for such I doubted not it would turn out to be.

The priest had not lain in this situation more than a few seconds, when he began to mutter. This he continued to do for some time, and then by degrees grew louder and louder, till at length he spoke articulately; however, what he uttered was in such a mixed jargon of the Chipeway, Ottawaw, and Killistnoe languages, that I could understand but very little of it. Having continued in this tone for a considerable while, he at last exerted his voice to its utmost pitch, sometimes raving, and sometimes praying, till he had worked himself into such an agitation, that he foamed at the mouth.

After having remained near three quarters of an hour in the place, and continued his vociferation with unabated vigour, he seemed to be quite exhausted, and remained speechless. But in an instant he sprung upon his feet, notwithstanding at the time he was put in, it appeared impossible for him to move either his legs or arms, and shaking off his covering, as quick as if the bands with which it had been bound were burned asunder, he began to address those who stood around, in a firm and audible voice. "My brothers," said he, "the Great

" Spirit has deigned to hold a Talk with his servant, at my earnest request. He has not, indeed, told me when the persons we expect will be here; but to-morrow, soon after the sun has reached his highest point in the heavens, a canoe will arrive, whose people will inform us when the traders will come."

Having said this, he stepped out of the inclosure, and, after he had put on his robes, dismissed the assembly. I own I was greatly astonished at what I had seen; but as I observed that every eye in the company was fixed on me with a view to discover my sentiments, I carefully concealed every emotion.

The next day the sun shone bright, and long before noon all the Indians were gathered together on the eminence that overlooked the lake. The old king came to me, and asked me whether I had so much confidence in what the priest had foretold, as to join his people on the hill, and wait for the completion of it? I told him, I was at a loss what opinion to form of the prediction, but that I would readily attend him. On this we walked together to the place where the others were assembled. Every eye was again fixed by turns on me and on the lake; when just as the sun had reached his zenith, agreeable to what the priest had foretold, a canoe came round a point of land about a league distant. The Indians no sooner beheld it, than they set up an universal shout, and by their looks seemed to triumph in the interest their priest thus evidently had with the Great Spirit.

In less than an hour the canoe reached the shore, when I attended the king and chiefs to receive those who were on board. As soon as the men were landed, we walked all together to the king's tent;

when  
to sm  
patien  
asking  
deliber  
some t  
whethe  
The m  
few da  
the sec  
ly arriv  
but mo  
found  
priest a  
sight of

This  
marks o  
is less.  
The cir  
ordinary  
being fr  
tation, b  
of them  
the publ  
lead the  
superstit  
them to

I have  
a party o  
the Nau  
imagined  
very tena  
selves fro  
dom at th  
they now

when according to their invariable custom, we began to smoke; and this we did, notwithstanding our impatience to know the tidings they brought, without asking any questions; for the Indians are the most deliberate people in the world. However, after some trivial conversation, the king enquired of them, whether they had seen any thing of the traders? The men replied, that they had parted from them a few days before, and that they proposed being here the second day from the present. They accordingly arrived at that time, greatly to our satisfaction, but more particularly so to that of the Indians, who found by this event the importance both of their priest and of their nation greatly augmented in the sight of a stranger.

This story I acknowledge appears to carry with it marks of great credulity in the relater. But no one is less tinctured with that weakness than myself. The circumstances of it, I own, are of a very extraordinary nature; however, as I can vouch for their being free from either exaggeration or misrepresentation, being myself a cool and dispassionate observer of them all, I thought it necessary to give them to the public. And this I do without wishing to mislead the judgment of my readers, or to make any superstitious impressions on their minds, but leaving them to draw from it what conclusions they please.

I have already observed that the Assinipons, with a party of whom I met here, are a revolted band of the Naudowessies; who on account of some real or imagined grievances, for the Indians in general are very tenacious of their liberty, had separated themselves from their countrymen, and sought for freedom at the expence of their ease. For the country they now inhabit about the borders of Lake Winne-

peek, being much farther north, is not near so fertile or agreeable as that they have relinquished. They still retain the language and manners of their former associates.

The Killistnoes, now the neighbours and allies of the Assinipoils, for they also dwell near the same lake, and on the waters of the river Bourbon, appear to have been originally a tribe of the Chipeways, as they speak their language, though in a different dialect. Their nation consists of about three or four hundred warriors, and they seem to be a hardy, brave people. I have already given an account of their country when I treated of Lake Winnepeek. As they reside within the limits of Hudson's Bay, they generally trade at the factories which belong to that company, but, for the reasons mentioned before, they frequently come to the place where I happened to join them, in order to meet the traders from Michillimackinac.

The anxiety I had felt on account of the traders' delay, was not much alleviated by their arrival. I again found my expectations disappointed, for I was not able to procure the goods I wanted from any of them. I was therefore obliged to give over my designs, and return to the place from whence I first began my extensive circuit. I accordingly took leave of the old king of the Killistnoes, with the chiefs of both bands, and departed. This prince was upwards of sixty years of age, tall and slightly made, but he carried himself very erect. He was of a courteous, affable disposition, and treated me, as did all the chiefs, with great civility.

I observed that this people still continued a custom, that appeared to have been universal before any of them became acquainted with the manners of the Europeans, that of complimenting strangers

with t  
only p  
themse  
courte

The  
round  
I arriv  
of St  
corner

Lak  
from is  
of its t  
Lakes  
termed  
be the  
circum  
about  
if it wa  
every l

After  
west Ba  
north a  
greatest  
rocks an  
appeare  
calm, a  
canoe, v  
and plain  
different  
were he  
transpare  
hung su  
to look a  
the rock  
nutes w  
longer a

with the company of their wives; and this is not only practised by the lower ranks, but the chiefs themselves, who esteem it the greatest proof of courtesy they can give a stranger.

The beginning of October, after having coasted round the north and east borders of Lake Superior, I arrived at Cadot's Fort, which adjoins to the Falls of St Marie, and is situated near the south-west corner of it.

Lake Superior, formerly termed the Upper Lake, from its northern situation, is so called on account of its being superior in magnitude to any of the Lakes on that vast continent. It might justly be termed the Caspian of America, and is supposed to be the largest body of fresh water on the globe. Its circumference, according to the French charts, is about fifteen hundred miles; but I believe, that if it was coasted round, and the utmost extent of every bay taken, it would exceed sixteen hundred.

After I first entered it from Goddard's River on the west Bay, I coasted near twelve hundred miles of the north and east shores of it, and observed that the greatest part of that extensive tract was bounded by rocks and uneven ground. The water in general appeared to lie on a bed of rocks. When it was calm, and the sun shone bright, I could sit in my canoe, where the depth was upwards of six fathoms, and plainly see huge piles of stone at the bottom, of different shapes, some of which appeared as if they were hewn. The water at this time was as pure and transparent as air; and my canoe seemed as if it hung suspended in that element. It was impossible to look attentively through this limpid medium at the rocks below, without finding, before many minutes were elapsed, my head swim, and my eyes no longer able to behold the dazzling scene.

I discovered also by accident another extraordinary property in the waters of this lake. Though it was in the month of July that I passed over it, and the surface of the water, from the heat of the superambient air, impregnated with no small degree of warmth, yet on letting down a cup to the depth of about a fathom, the water drawn from thence was so excessively cold, that it had the same effect when received into the mouth as ice.

The situation of this lake is variously laid down; but from the most exact observations I could make, it lies between forty-six and fifty degrees of north latitude, and between eighty-four and ninety-three degrees of west longitude, from the meridian of London.

There are many islands in this lake, two of which are very large; and if the land of them is proper for cultivation, there appears to be sufficient to form on each a considerable province; especially on Isle Royal, which cannot be less than an hundred miles long, and in many places forty broad. But there is no way at present of ascertaining the exact length or breadth of either. Even the French, who always kept a small schooner on this lake, whilst they were in possession of Canada, by which they could have made this discovery, have only acquired a slight knowledge of the external parts of these islands; at least they have never published any account of the internal parts of them, that I could get intelligence of.

Nor was I able to discover from any of the conversations which I held with the neighbouring Indians, that they had ever made any settlements on them, or even landed there in their hunting excursions. From what I could gather by their discourse, they suppose them to have been, from the first formation, the

refic-  
culor-  
that  
thro

Q  
their  
repa  
foun  
low  
been  
pear-  
their  
but a  
coun  
ter  
what  
statu  
they  
whic  
mole  
ever  
coast  
other

Th  
Super  
weath  
sun h  
tion  
fruit,  
duces  
berrie  
on th  
tities  
same

Bu  
berry

residence of the Great Spirit: and relate many ridiculous stories of enchantment and magical tricks, that had been experienced by such as were obliged through stress of weather to take shelter on them.

One of the Chipeway chiefs told me, that some of their people being once driven on the island of Mau-repas, which lies to the north-east part of the lake, found on it large quantities of heavy, shining, yellow sand, that from their description must have been gold dust. Being struck with the beautiful appearance of it, in the morning, when they re-entered their canoe, they attempted to bring some away; but a spirit of amazing size, according to their account, sixty feet in height, strode in the water after them, and commanded them to deliver back what they had taken away. Terrified at his gigantic stature, and seeing that he had nearly overtaken them, they were glad to restore their shining treasure; on which they were suffered to depart without further molestation. Since this incident, no Indian that has ever heard of it, will venture near the same haunted coast. Besides this, they recounted to me many other stories of these islands, equally fabulous.

The country on the north and east parts of Lake Superior is very mountainous and barren. The weather being intensely cold in the winter, and the sun having but little power in the summer, vegetation there is very slow; and consequently but little fruit is to be found on its shore. It however produces some few species in great abundance. Whortleberries of an uncommon size and fine flavour, grow on the mountains near the lake in amazing quantities; as do black currants and gooseberries in the same luxuriant manner.

But the fruit which exceeds all the others, is a berry resembling a raspberry in its manner of growth,



but of a lighter red, and much larger; its taste is far more delicious than the fruit I have compared it to, notwithstanding that it is so highly esteemed in Europe: it grows on a shrub of the nature of a vine, with leaves similar to those of the grape; and I am persuaded that was it transplanted into a warmer and more kindly climate, it would prove a most rare and delicious fruit.

Two very large rivers empty themselves into this lake, on the north and north-east side; one is called the Nipegon River, or, as the French pronounce it, Allanipegon, which leads to a band of the Chipeways, inhabiting a lake of the same name, and the other is termed the Michipicooton River, the source of which is situated towards James's Bay, from whence there is but a short carriage to another river, which empties itself into that bay, at a fort belonging to the Company. It was by this passage that a party of French from Michillimackinac invaded the settlements of that society in the reign of Queen Anne. Having taken and destroyed their forts, they brought the cannon which they found in them to the fortresses from whence they had issued; these were small brass pieces, and remain there to the present time; having, through the usual revolutions of fortune, returned to the possession of their former masters.

Not far from the Nipegon is a small river, that, just before it enters the lake, has a perpendicular fall from the top of a mountain, of more than six hundred feet. Being very narrow, it appears at a distance like a white garter suspended in the air.

A few Indians inhabit round the eastern borders of this lake, supposed to be the remains of the Algonkins, who formerly possessed this country, but who have been nearly extirpated by the Iroquois of

Canada. Lake Superior has near forty rivers that fall into it, some of which are of considerable size. On the south side of it is a remarkable point or cape, of about sixty miles in length, called Point Chegomagan. It might as properly be termed a peninsula, as it is nearly separated from the continent, on the east side, by a narrow bay that extends from east to west. Canoes have but a short portage across the isthmus, whereas, if they coast it round, the voyage is more than an hundred miles.

About that distance to the west of the cape just described, a considerable river falls into the lake, the head of which is composed of a great assemblage of small streams. This river is remarkable for the abundance of virgin copper that is found on and near its banks: A metal which is met with also in several other places on this coast. I observed that many of the small islands, particularly those on the eastern shores, were covered with copper ore. They appeared like beds of copperas, of which many tons lay in a small place.

A company of adventurers from England began, soon after the conquest of Canada, to bring away some of this metal, but the distracted situation of affairs in America, has obliged them to relinquish their scheme. It might in future times be made a very advantageous trade, as the metal, which costs nothing on the spot, and requires but little expence to get it on board, could be conveyed in boats or canoes through the Falls of St. Marie, to the Isle of St. Joseph, which lies at the bottom of the Straits near the entrance into Lake Huron; from thence it might be put on board larger vessels, and in them transported across that lake to the Falls of Niagara; then being carried by land across the Portage, it might be conveyed without much more obstruction

to Quebec. The cheapness and ease with which any quantity of it may be procured, will make up for the length of way that is necessary to transport it before it reaches the sea coast, and enable the proprietors to send it to foreign markets on as good terms as it can be exported from other countries.

Lake Superior abounds with a variety of fish, the principal and best are the trout and sturgeon, which may be caught at almost any season in the greatest abundance. The trouts in general weigh about twelve pounds, but some are caught that exceed fifty. Besides these, a species of white fish is taken in great quantities here, that resemble a shad in their shape, but they are rather thicker, and less bony; they weigh about four pounds each, and are of a delicious taste. The best way of catching these fish is with a net; but the trout might be taken at all times with the hook. There are likewise many sorts of smaller fish in great plenty here, and which may be taken with ease; among these is a sort resembling a herring, that are generally made use of as a bait for the trout. Very small crabs, not larger than a half crown piece, are found both in this and Lake Michigan.

This lake is as much affected by storms as the Atlantic Ocean; the waves run as high, and are equally as dangerous to ships. It discharges its waters from the south-east corner, through the Straits of St. Marie. At the upper end of these Straits stands a fort that receives its name from them, commanded by Mons. Cadot, a French Canadian, who being proprietor of the soil, is still permitted to keep possession of it. Near this fort is a very strong rapid river, against which, though it is impossible for canoes to ascend, yet when conducted by careful pilots, they may pass down without danger.

TH  
is sup  
confli  
ienth  
by th  
How  
fed o  
other,  
would  
does  
suppo  
petual  
tain;  
more  
it pass  
lake;  
be abs  
find a  
deep,

The  
cularly  
constit  
ters, of  
pass.

At t  
a most  
which  
Persons  
may tak  
Septem  
tioned;  
species,  
shoals,  
properly  
the year

h which  
make up  
transport it  
the pro-  
as good  
ntries.

fish, the  
n, which  
greatest  
n about  
ed fifty.  
in great  
ir shape,  
y; they  
delicious  
s with a  
es with  
smaller  
e taken  
herring,  
et trout.  
crown  
igan.

s as the  
and are  
its wa-  
Straits  
Straits  
n, com-  
n, who  
tted to  
strong  
possible  
careful

Though Lake Superior, as I have before observed, is supplied by near forty rivers, many of which are considerable ones; yet it does not appear that one tenth part of the waters which are conveyed into it by these rivers, are carried off at this evacuation. How such a superabundance of waters can be disposed of, as it must certainly be by some means or other, without which the circumference of the lake would be continually enlarging, I know not: that it does not empty itself, as the Mediterranean sea is supposed to do, by an under current, which perpetually counteracts that near the surface, is certain; for the stream that passes over the rock is not more than five or six feet in depth, and the whole of it passes on through the straits into the adjacent lake; nor is it probable that so great a quantity can be absorbed by exhalations; consequently they must find a passage through some subterranean cavities, deep, unfathomable, and never to be explored.

The Falls of St. Marie do not descend perpendicularly, as those of Niagara or St. Anthony do, but consist of a rapid which continues near three quarters of a mile, over which canoes well piloted might pass.

At the bottom of these Falls, Nature has formed a most commodious station for catching the fish which are to be found there in immense quantities. Persons standing on the rocks that lie adjacent to it may take, with dipping nets, about the months of September and October, the white fish before mentioned; at that season, together with several other species, they crowd up to this spot in such amazing shoals, that enough may be taken to supply, when properly cured, thousands of inhabitants throughout the year.

The Straits of St Marie are about forty miles long, bearing south-east, but varying much in their breadth. The current between the Falls and Lake Huron is not so rapid as might be expected, nor do they prevent the navigation of ships of burden as far up as the island of St Joseph.

It has been observed by travellers that the entrance into Lake Suprior, from these Straits, affords one of the most pleasing prospects in the world. The place in which this might be viewed to the greatest advantage, is just at the opening of the lake, from whence may be seen on the left, many beautiful little islands, that extend a considerable way before you; and on the right, an agreeable succession of small points of land, that project a little way into the water, and contribute, with the small islands, to render this delightful basin (as it might be termed) calm and secure from the ravages of those tempestuous winds by which the adjoining lake is frequently troubled.

Lake Huron, into which you now enter from the Straits of St Marie, is the next in magnitude to Lake Superior. It lies between forty-two and forty-six degrees of north latitude, and seventy-nine and eighty-five degrees of west longitude. Its shape is nearly triangular, and its circumference about one thousand miles.

On the north side of it lies an island, that is remarkable for being near an hundred miles in length, and no more than eight miles broad. This island is known by the name of Manataulin, which signifies a Place of Spirits, and is considered by the Indians as sacred as those already mentioned in Lake Superior.

Ab  
lake i  
this b  
from e  
space t  
litate  
afford  
would  
sea; a  
voyage  
miles i  
twenty

Nea  
north-  
is term  
frequen  
every  
have u  
account  
observe  
and the  
it, whi  
thunder  
the tim

Ther  
that I  
subject  
not of  
parts o  
substanc  
from so  
of the b  
pregnat  
matter,  
tract in  
are hou

About the middle of the south-west side of this lake is Saganaum Bay. The capes that separate this bay from the lake are eighteen miles distant from each other; near the middle of the intermediate space stands two islands, which greatly tend to facilitate the passage of canoes and small vessels, by affording them shelter, as without this security it would not be prudent to venture across so wide a sea; and the coasting round the bay would make the voyage long and tedious. This bay is about eighty miles in length, and in general about eighteen or twenty miles broad.

Nearly half way between Saganaum Bay and the north-west corner of the lake, lies another, which is termed Thunder Bay. The Indians, who have frequented these parts from time immemorial, and every European traveller that had passed through it, have unanimously agreed to call it by this name, on account of the continual thunder they have always observed here. The bay is about nine miles broad, and the same in length; and whilst I was passing over it, which took me up near twenty-four hours, it thundered and lightened during the greatest part of the time to an excessive degree.

There appeared to be no visible reason for this, that I could discover, nor is the country in general subject to thunder; the hills that stood around were not of a remarkable height, neither did the external parts of them seem to be covered with any sulphurous substance. But as this phenomenon must originate from some natural cause, I conjecture that the shores of the bay, or the adjacent mountains, are either impregnated with an uncommon quantity of sulphurous matter, or contain some metal or mineral apt to attract in a great degree the electrical particles that are hourly borne over them by the passing clouds.

But the solution of this, and those other philosophical remarks which casually occur throughout these pages, I leave to the discussion of abler heads.

The fish in Lake Huron are much the same as those in Lake Superior. Some of the land on its banks is very fertile, and proper for cultivation, but in other parts it is sandy and barren. The promontory that separates this lake from Lake Michigan, is composed of a vast plain, upwards of one hundred miles long, but varying in its breadth, being from ten to fifteen miles broad. This tract, as I have before observed, is divided into almost an equal portion between the Ottawaw and Chipeway Indians. At the north-east corner this lake has a communication with Lake Michigan, by the Straits of Michilimackinac already described.

I had like to have omitted a very extraordinary circumstance, relative to these Straits. According to observation made by the French, whilst they were in possession of the fort, although there is no diurnal flood or ebb to be perceived in these waters, yet, from an exact attention to their state, a periodical alteration in them has been discovered. It was observed that they rose by gradual, but almost imperceptible degrees, till they had reached the height of about three feet. This was accomplished in seven years and a half, and in the same space they as gently decreased, till they had reached their former situation; so that in fifteen years they had completed this inexplicable revolution.

At the time I was there, the truth of these observations could not be confirmed by the English, as they had then been only a few years in possession of the fort, but they all agreed that some alteration in the limits of the Straits was apparent. All these

lakes  
have  
happ  
partia

A  
scatfe  
naum  
quant  
count  
about

Fro  
back  
begin  
month  
thousa  
dians,  
The  
oblige  
gation  
ing o  
Meeti  
month  
hours

On  
for tro  
ice, w  
letting  
to whi  
the fir  
two at  
comm  
are me  
them  
lasts, i

lakes are so affected by the winds, as sometimes to have the appearance of a tide, according as they happen to blow; but this is only temporary and partial.

A great number of the Chipeway Indians live scattered around this lake, particularly near Saganaum Bay. On its banks are found an amazing quantity of the sand cherries, and in the adjacent country nearly the same fruit, as those that grow about the other lakes.

From the Falls of St Marie I leisurely proceeded back to Michillimackinac, and arrived there the beginning of November 1767, having been fourteen months on this extensive tour, travelling near four thousand miles, and visited twelve nations of Indians, lying to the west and north of this place. The winter setting in soon after my arrival, I was obliged to tarry there till June following, the navigation over Lake Huron for large vessels not being open, on account of the ice, till that time. Meeting here with sociable company, I passed these months very agreeably, and without finding the hours tedious.

One of my chief amusements was that of fishing for trouts. Though the Straits were covered with ice, we found means to make holes through it, and letting down strong lines of fifteen yards in length, to which were fixed three or four hooks baited with the small fish before described, we frequently caught two at a time of forty pounds weight each; but the common size is from ten to twenty pounds. These are most delicious food. The method of preserving them during the three months the winter generally lasts, is by hanging them up in the air; and in one



night they will be frozen so hard that they will keep as well as if they were cured with salt.

I have only pointed out in the plan of my travels the circuit I made from my leaving Michillimackinac till I arrived again at that fort. Those countries that lie nearer to the colonies have been so often and so minutely described, that any further account of them would be useless. I shall therefore only give my readers, in the remainder of my journal, as I at first proposed, a description of the other great lakes of Canada, many of which I have navigated over, and relate at the same time a few particular incidents, that I trust will not be found inapplicable or unentertaining.

In June 1768 I left Michillimackinac, and returned in the Gladwyn Schooner, a vessel of about eighty tons burthen, over Lake Huron to Lake St Clair, where we left the ship, and proceeded in boats to Detroit. This lake is about ninety miles in circumference, and by the way of Huron River, which runs from the south corner of Lake Huron, receives the waters of the three great lakes, Superior, Michigan, and Huron. Its form is rather round, and in some places it is deep enough for the navigation of large vessels, but towards the middle of it there is a bar of sand, which prevents those that are loaded from passing over it. Such as are in ballast only may find water sufficient to carry them quite through; the cargoes, however, of such as are freighted must be taken out, and after being transported across the bar in boats, re-shipped again.

The river that runs from Lake St Clair to Lake Erie (or rather the Strait, for thus it might be termed from its name) is called Detroit, which is in French, the Strait. It runs nearly south, has a gen-

tle c  
of c  
situa  
nine

A  
lage  
have  
herin  
of or  
or in  
I sha  
missi  
perm  
them

TH  
below  
that  
being  
vatio  
has a  
inhab  
to th  
these  
to the  
cultiv

Th  
hund  
and h  
barrac  
On th  
to the  
kept i  
confis  
fixed  
fades.

the current, and depth of water sufficient for ships of considerable burthen. The town of Detroit is situated on the western banks of this river, about nine miles below Lake St. Clair.

Almost opposite, on the eastern shore, is the village of the ancient Hurons: a tribe of Indians which have been treated of by so many writers, that adhering to the restrictions I have laid myself under of only describing places and people little known, or incidents that have passed unnoticed by others, I shall omit giving a description of them. A missionary of the order of Carthusian Friars, by permission of the Bishop of Canada, resides among them.

The banks of the river Detroit, both above and below these towns, are covered with settlements that extend more than twenty miles; the country being exceedingly fruitful, and proper for the cultivation of wheat, Indian corn, oats, and pease. It has also many spots of fine pasturage; but as the inhabitants, who are chiefly French that submitted to the English government, after the conquest of these parts by General Amherst, are more attentive to the Indian trade than to farming, it is but badly cultivated.

The town of Detroit contains upwards of one hundred houses. The streets are somewhat regular, and have a range of very convenient and handsome barracks, with a spacious parade at the south end. On the west side lies the king's garden, belonging to the governor, which is very well laid out, and kept in good order. The fortifications of the town consist of a strong stockade, made of round piles fixed firmly in the ground, and lined with palisades. These are defended by some small bastions,

on which are mounted a few indifferent cannon of an inconsiderable size, just sufficient for its defence against the Indians, or an enemy not provided with artillery.

The garrison, in time of peace, consists of two hundred men, commanded by a field officer, who acts as chief magistrate under the governor of Canada. Mr Turnbull, captain of the 60th regiment, or Royal Americans, was commandant when I happened to be there. This gentleman was deservedly esteemed and respected, both by the inhabitants and traders, for the propriety of his conduct; and I am happy to have an opportunity of thus publicly making my acknowledgments to him for the civilities I received from him during my stay.

In the year 1762, in the month of July, it rained on this town and the parts adjacent, a sulphureous water of the colour and consistence of ink; some of which being collected into bottles and wrote with, appeared perfectly intelligible on the paper, and answered every purpose of that useful liquid. Soon after, the Indian wars already spoken of, broke out in these parts. I mean not to say that this incident was ominous of them, notwithstanding it is well known that innumerable well attested instances of extraordinary phænomena happening before extraordinary events, have been recorded in almost every age by historians of veracity; I only relate the circumstance as a fact, of which I was informed by many persons of undoubted probity, and leave my readers, as I have hitherto done, to draw their own conclusions from it.

Pontiac, under whom the party that surprised Fort Michillimackinac, as related in the former part of this work, acted, was an enterprising chief or

head, v  
betwe  
a stea  
teracy  
conclu  
to put  
long e  
rate I  
merate  
ever, i  
ments,  
forts o  
posseff

How  
Michill  
knows.  
greater  
quired  
art. H  
expedit  
princip  
prevent  
by an a  
On such  
depend

The  
plan, w  
commar  
As at th  
end, and  
ing, Po  
any susp  
inhabita  
it, and  
come to

head warrior of the Miamies. During the late war between the English and the French, he had been a steady friend to the latter, and continued his inveteracy to the former even after peace had been concluded between those two nations. Unwilling to put an end to the depredations he had been so long engaged in, he collected an army of confederate Indians, consisting of the nations before enumerated, with an intention to renew the war. However, instead of openly attacking the English settlements, he laid a scheme for taking by surprise those forts on the extremities which they had lately gained possession of.

How well the party he detached to take Fort Michillimackinac succeeded, the reader already knows. To get into his hands Detroit, a place of greater consequence, and much better guarded, required greater resolution, and more consummate art. He of course took the management of this expedition on himself, and drew near it with the principal body of his troops. He was, however, prevented from carrying his designs into execution, by an apparently trivial and unforeseen circumstance. On such does the fate of mighty empires frequently depend!

The town of Detroit, when Pontiac formed his plan, was garrisoned by about three hundred men, commanded by Major Gladwyn, a gallant officer. As at that time every appearance of war was at an end, and the Indians seemed to be on a friendly footing, Pontiac approached the fort, without exciting any suspicions in the breast of the governor or the inhabitants. He encamped at a little distance from it, and sent to let the commandant know that he was come to trade; and being desirous of brightening

the chain of peace between the English and his nation, desired that he and his chiefs might be admitted to hold a council with him. The governor still unsuspicious, and not in the least doubting the sincerity of the Indians, granted their general's request, and fixed on the next morning for their reception.

The evening of that day, an Indian woman, who had been employed by Major Gladwyn, to make him a pair of Indian shoes, out of a curious elk-skin, brought them home. The major was so pleased with them, that, intending these as a present for a friend, he ordered her to take the remainder back, and make it into others for himself. He then directed his servant to pay her for those she had done, and dismissed her. The woman went to the door that led to the street, but no further; she there loitered about, as if she had not finished the business on which she came. A servant at length observed her, and asked her why she staid there; she gave him, however, no answer.

Some short time after, the governor himself saw her, and enquired of his servant what occasioned her stay. Not being able to get a satisfactory answer, he ordered the woman to be called in. When she came into his presence, he desired to know what was the reason of her loitering about, and not hastening home before the gates were shut, that she might complete in due time the work he had given her to do. She told him, after much hesitation, that as he had always behaved with great goodness towards her, she was unwilling to take away the remainder of the skin, because he put so great a value upon it; and yet had not been able to prevail upon herself to tell him so. He then asked her, why she was more reluctant to do so now, than she had been when she made the former pair. With increased reluctance

she a  
then

H  
her  
strug  
recei  
about  
and  
rewa  
to b  
Pont  
after  
to pl  
chief  
had  
them  
given  
were  
his a  
imme  
find t  
warri  
of th  
vately  
from  
to the  
quired  
injunc  
his p  
enter

Th  
gave  
sulted  
on the  
inform  
poses,

she answered, that she never would be able to bring them back.

His curiosity being now excited, he insisted on her disclosing to him the secret that seemed to be struggling in her bosom for utterance. At last, on receiving a promise that the intelligence she was about to give him should not turn to her prejudice, and that if it appeared to be beneficial, she should be rewarded for it, she informed him, that at the council to be held with the Indians the following day, Pontiac and his chiefs intended to murder him; and, after having massacred the garrison and inhabitants, to plunder the town. That for this purpose all the chiefs who were to be admitted into the council-room had cut their guns short, so that they could conceal them under their blankets; with which, at a signal given by their general, on delivering the belt, they were all to rise up, and instantly to fire on him and his attendants. Having effected this, they were immediately to rush into the town, where they would find themselves supported by a great number of their warriors, that were to come into it during the sitting of the council, under pretence of trading, but privately armed in the same manner. Having gained from the woman every necessary particular relative to the plot, and also of the means by which she acquired a knowledge of them, he dismissed her with injunctions of secrecy, and a promise of fulfilling on his part with punctuality the engagements he had entered into.

The intelligence the governor had just received gave him great uneasiness; and he immediately consulted the officer who was next to him in command, on the subject. But that gentleman considering the information as a story invented for some artful purposes, advised him to pay no attention to it. This

conclusion, however, had happily no weight with him. He thought it prudent to conclude it to be true, till he was convinced that it was not so; and therefore, without revealing his suspicions to any other person, he took every needful precaution that the time would admit of. He walked round the fort during the whole night, and saw himself that every centinel was on duty, and every weapon of defence in proper order.

As he traversed the ramparts, which lay nearest to the Indian camp, he heard them in high festivity, and, little imagining that their plot was discovered, probably pleasing themselves with the anticipation of their success. As soon as the morning dawned, he ordered all the garrison under arms; and then imparting his apprehensions to a few of the principal officers, gave them such directions as he thought necessary. At the same time he sent round to all the traders, to inform them, that as it was expected a great number of Indians would enter the town that day, who might be inclined to plunder, he desired they would have their arms ready, and repel every attempt of that kind.

About ten o'clock, Pontiac and his chiefs arrived, and were conducted to the council chamber, where the governor and his principal officers, each with pistols in their belts, awaited his arrival. As the Indians passed on, they could not help observing that a greater number of troops than usual were drawn up on the parade, or marching about. No sooner were they entered, and seated on the skins prepared for them, than Pontiac asked the governor on what occasion his young men, meaning the soldiers, were thus drawn up and parading the streets. He received for answer, that it was only intended to keep them perfect in their exercise.



The Indian chief warrior now began his speech, which contained the strongest professions of friendship and good-will towards the English; and when he came to the delivery of the belt of wampum, the particular mode of which, according to the woman's information, was to be the signal for his chiefs to fire, the governor and all his attendants drew their swords halfway out of their scabbards; and the soldiers at the same instant made a clattering with their arms before the doors, which had been purposely left open. Pontiac, though one of the boldest of men, immediately turned pale and trembled; and, instead of giving the belt in the manner proposed, delivered it according to the usual way. His chiefs, who had impatiently expected the signal, looked at each other with astonishment, but continued quiet, waiting the result.

The governor in his turn made a speech; but instead of thanking the great warrior for the professions of friendship he had just uttered, he accused him of being a traitor. He told him that the English, who knew every thing, were convinced of his treachery and villainous designs; and as a proof that they were well acquainted with his most secret thoughts and intentions, he stepped towards the Indian chief that sat nearest to him, and drawing aside his blanket, discovered the shortened firelock. This entirely disconcerted the Indians, and frustrated their design.

He then continued to tell them, that as he had given his word at the time they desired an audience, that their persons should be safe, he would hold his promise inviolable, though they so little deserved it. However, he advised them to make the best of their way out of the fort, lest his young men, on being



acquainted with his treacherous purposes, should cut every one of them to pieces.

Pontiac endeavoured to contradict the accusation, and to make excuses for his suspicious conduct; but the governor, satisfied of the falsity of his protestations, would not listen to him. The Indians immediately left the fort, but instead of being sensible of the governor's generous behaviour, they threw off the mask, and the next day made a regular attack upon it.

Major Gladwyn has not escaped censure for this mistaken lenity; for probably, had he kept a few of the principal chiefs prisoners, whilst he had them in his power, he might have been able to have brought the whole confederacy to terms, and have prevented a war. But he atoned for this oversight, by the gallant defence he made for more than a year, amidst a variety of discouragements.

During that period some very smart skirmishes happened between the besiegers and the garrison, of which the following was the principal and most bloody: Captain Dalzell, a brave officer, prevailed on the governor to give him the command of about two hundred men, and to permit him to attack the enemy's camp. This being complied with, he sallied from the town before day-break; but Pontiac, receiving from some of his swift-footed warriors, who were constantly employed in watching the motions of the garrison, timely intelligence of their design, he collected together the choicest of his troops, and met the detachment at some distance from his camp, near a place since called Bloody-Bridge.

As the Indians were vastly superior in numbers to Captain Dalzell's party, he was soon overpowered

and d  
made  
just c  
but in  
men f  
cond  
found  
little a

Th  
the m  
ing w  
he wa  
attack  
ade it

Th  
wards  
Detro  
crew,  
comm  
take i  
near t  
suppli  
place  
tacked  
Indian  
great

At  
confid  
the fa  
every  
terwar  
termin  
my's h  
ed the  
blow u

and driven back. Being now nearly surrounded, he made a vigorous effort to regain the bridge he had just crossed, by which alone he could find a retreat; but in doing this he lost his life, and many of his men fell with him. However, Major Rogers, the second in command, assisted by Lieutenant Braham, found means to draw off the shattered remains of their little army, and conducted them into the fort.

Thus considerably reduced, it was with difficulty the major could defend the town; notwithstanding which, he held out against the Indians till he was relieved, as after this they made but few attacks on the place, and only continued to blockade it.

The Gladwyn schooner (that in which I afterwards took my passage from Michillimackinac to Detroit, and which I since learn was lost with all her crew, on Lake Erie, through the obstinacy of the commander, who could not be prevailed upon to take in sufficient ballast) arrived about this time, near the town, with a reinforcement, and necessary supplies. But before this vessel could reach the place of its destination, it was most vigorously attacked by a detachment from Pontiac's army. The Indians surrounded it in their canoes, and made great havock among the crew.

At length the captain of the schooner, with a considerable number of his men, being killed, and the savages beginning to climb up the sides from every quarter, the lieutenant (M. Jacobs, who afterwards commanded, and was lost in it) being determined that the stores should not fall into the enemy's hands, and seeing no other alternative, ordered the gunner to set fire to the powder-room, and blow up the ship. This order was on the point of

being executed, when a chief of the Hurons, who understood the English language, gave out to his friends the intention of the commander. On receiving this intelligence, the Indians hurried down the side of the ship with the greatest precipitation, and got as far from it as possible; whilst the commander immediately took advantage of their consternation, and arrived without any further obstruction at the town.

This seasonable supply gave the garrison fresh spirits; and Pontiac being now convinced that it would not be in his power to reduce the place, proposed an accommodation; the governor wished as much to get rid of such troublesome enemies, who obstructed the intercourse of the traders with the neighbouring nations, listened to his proposals, and having procured advantageous terms, agreed to a peace. The Indians soon after separated, and returned to their different provinces; nor have they since thought proper to disturb, at least in any great degree, the tranquillity of these parts.

Pontiac henceforward seemed to have laid aside the animosity he had hitherto borne towards the English, and apparently became their zealous friend. To reward this new attachment, and to insure a continuance of it, government allowed him a handsome pension. But his restless and intriguing spirit would not suffer him to be grateful for this allowance, and his conduct at length grew suspicious; so that going, in the year 1767, to hold a council in the country of the Illinois, a faithful Indian, who was either commissioned by one of the English governors, or instigated by the love he bore the English nation, attended him as a spy; and being convinced from the speech Pontiac made in the council, that he still retained his former prejudices against those for whom he now professed a friendship, he plunged his knife

into his  
laid hi  
digress

Lake  
plied fr  
of Det  
lake is  
degrees  
and ei  
near th  
about f  
long na  
for seve

Then  
infested  
to land  
can pro  
reptiles  
snake.  
islands  
lie on t  
entirely  
lay, wh  
basking

The  
infest th  
small sp  
When  
momen  
become  
time it  
subtile  
smell;  
traveller

into his heart, as soon as he had done speaking, and laid him dead on the spot. But to return from this digression.

Lake Erie receives the waters by which it is supplied from the three great lakes, through the Straits of Detroit, that lie at its north-west corner. This lake is situated between forty-one and forty-three degrees of north latitude, and between seventy-eight and eighty-three degrees of west longitude. It is near three hundred miles long from east to west, and about forty in its broadest part: and a remarkable long narrow point lies on its north side, that projects for several miles into the lake towards the south-east.

There are several islands on the west end of it so infested with rattle-snakes, that it is very dangerous to land on them. It is impossible that any place can produce a greater number of all kinds of these reptiles than this does, particularly of the water-snake. The lake is covered near the banks of the islands with the large pond-lily; the leaves of which lie on the surface of the water so thick, as to cover it entirely for many acres together; and on each of these lay, when I passed over it, wreaths of water-snakes basking in the sun, which amounted to myriads.

The most remarkable of the different species, that infest this lake, is the hissing-snake, which is of the small speckled kind, and about eight inches long. When any thing approaches, it flattens itself in a moment, and its spots, which are of various dyes, become visibly brighter through rage; at the same time it blows from its mouth, with great force, a subtle wind, that is reported to be of a nauseous smell; and if drawn in by the breath of the unwary traveller, will infallibly bring on a decline, that in

a few months must prove mortal, there being no remedy yet discovered which can counteract its baneful influence.

The stones and pebbles on the shores of this lake are most of them tinged, in a greater or less degree, with spots that resemble brass in their colour, but which are of a more sulphureous nature. Small pieces, about the size of hazle-nuts, of the same kinds of ore, are found on the sands that lie on its banks, and under the water.

The navigation of this lake is esteemed more dangerous than any of the others, on account of many high lands that lie on the borders of it, and project into the water, in a perpendicular direction, for many miles together; so that whenever sudden storms arise, canoes and boats are frequently lost, as there is no place for them to find a shelter.

This lake discharges its waters at the north-east ends into the River Niagara, which runs north and south, and is about thirty-six miles in length, from whence it falls into lake Ontario. At the entrance of this river, on its eastern shore, lies Fort Niagara; and, about eighteen miles farther up, those remarkable Falls, which are esteemed one of the most extraordinary productions of nature at present known.

As these have been visited by so many travellers, and so frequently described, I shall omit giving a particular description of them, and only observe, that the waters by which they are supplied, after taking their rise near two thousand miles to the north-west, and passing through the Lakes Superior, Michigan, Huron, and Erie, during which they have been receiving constant accumulations, at length rush down a stupendous precipice of one hundred and

forty  
exten  
fall  
empti

Th  
ing w  
morn  
said, t  
fair, t

Th  
uneve  
River  
pastur

For  
west e  
the Str  
in the  
of Sir  
by a co

Lak  
great l  
three  
tween  
longitu  
length  
circum  
south-e  
river, a  
River C  
issues,  
taken fr  
year 17  
Colonel

forty feet perpendicular; and in a strong rapid, that extends to the distance of eight or nine miles below, fall nearly as much more; this river soon after empties itself into Lake Ontario.

The noise of these Falls may be heard an amazing way. I could plainly distinguish them in a calm morning more than twenty miles. Others have said, that at particular times, and when the wind sits fair, the sound of them reaches fifteen leagues.

The land about the Fall is exceedingly hilly and uneven, but the greatest part of that on the Niagara River is very good, especially for grass and pasturage.

Fort Niagara stands nearly at the entrance of the west end of Lake Ontario, and on the east part of the Straits of Niagara. It was taken from the French in the year 1759, by the forces under the command of Sir William Johnson, and at present is defended by a considerable garrison.

Lake Ontario is the next and least of the five great lakes of Canada. Its situation is between forty-three and forty-five degrees of latitude, and between seventy-six and seventy-nine degrees of west longitude. The form of it is nearly oval, its greatest length being from north-east to south-west, and in circumference, about six hundred miles. Near the south-east part it receives the waters of the Oswego river, and on the north-east discharges itself into the River Cataraqui. Not far from the place where it issues, Fort Frontenac formerly stood, which was taken from the French during the last war, in the year 1758, by a small army of Provincials under Colonel Bradstreet.

At the entrance of Oswego River stands a fort of the same name, garrisoned at present only by an inconsiderable party. The fort was taken in the year 1756, by the French, when a great part of the garrison, which consisted of the late Shirley's and Pepperill's regiments, were massacred in cold blood by the savages.

In Lake Ontario are taken many sorts of fish, among which is the Oswego Bass, of an excellent flavour, and weighing about three or four pounds. There is also a fort called the Cat-head or Pout, which are in general very large, some of them weighing eight or ten pounds, and they are esteemed a rare dish when properly dressed.

On the north-west part of this Lake, and to the south-east of Lake Huron, is a tribe of Indians called Mississaugas, whose town is denominated Toronto, from the lake on which it lies; but they are not very numerous. The country about Lake Ontario, especially the more north and eastern parts, is composed of good land, and in time may make very flourishing settlements.

The Onaida Lake, situated near the head of the River Oswego, receives the waters of Wood-Creek, which takes its rise not far from the Mohawks River. These two lie so adjacent to each other, that a junction is effected by sluices at Fort Stanwix, about twelve miles from the mouth of the former. This lake is about thirty miles long from east to west, and near fifteen broad. The country around it belongs to the Onaida Indians.

Lake Champlain, the next in size to Lake Ontario, and which lies nearly east from it, is about eighty miles in length, north and south, and in its

broad  
and th  
about

Lake  
Lake  
last m  
long f  
bread  
ous, l

W  
were  
quois  
of the  
also th  
know  
and th  
forme  
Onaid  
docks  
which  
Indian

A v  
ment  
year  
paten  
Sir Fe  
son, th  
from  
Conn  
are fa  
rivers  
Georg  
these  
dle of  
by the



broadest part fourteen. It is well stored with fish, and the lands that lie on all the borders of it, and about its rivers, very good.

Lake George, formerly called by the French Lake St Sacrament, lies to the south-west of the last mentioned lake, and is about thirty-five miles long from north-east to south-west, but of no great breadth. The country around it is very mountainous, but in the vallies the land is tolerably good.

When these two lakes were first discovered, they were known by no other name than that of the Iroquois Lakes; and I believe in the first plan taken of those parts, were so denominated. The Indians also that were then called the Iroquois, are since known by the name of the Five Mowhawk nations, and the Mowhawks of Canada. In the late war, the former, which consisted of the Onondagoes, the Onaidas, the Senecas, the Tuscarories, and Iroondocks, fought on the side of the English: The latter, which are called the Cohnawaghans, and St Francis Indians, joined the French.

A vast tract of land that lies between the two last mentioned lakes and Ontario, was granted in the year 1629, by the Plymouth Company, under a patent they had received from King James I. to Sir Ferdinando Gorges, and to Captain John Mason, the head of that family, afterwards distinguished from others of the same name, by the Masons of Connecticut. The countries specified in this grant are said to begin ten miles from the heads of the rivers that run from the east and south into Lake George and Lake Champlain; and continuing from these in a direct line westward, extend to the middle of Lake Ontario: from thence, being bounded by the Cataraqui, or river of the Iroquois, they take

their course to Montreal, as far as Fort Sorrel, which lies at the junction of this river with the Richelieu; and from that point are enclosed by the last mentioned river till it returns back to the two lakes.

This immense space was granted by the name of the Province of Laconia, to the afore-said gentleman, on specified conditions, and under certain penalties; but none of these amounted, in case of omission in the fulfilment of any part of them, to forfeiture; a fine only could be exacted.

On account of the continual wars to which these parts have been subject, from their situation between the settlements of the English, the French, and the Indians, this grant has been suffered to lie dormant by the real proprietors. Notwithstanding which, several towns have been settled since the late war, on the borders of Lake Champlain, and grants made to different people by the governor of New-York, of part of these territories, which are now become annexed to that province.

There are a great number of lakes on the north of Canada, between Labrador, Lake Superior, and Hudson's Bay, but these are comparatively small. As they lie out of the tract that I pursued, I shall only give a summary account of them. The most westerly of these are the Lakes Nipissing and Tamiscaming. The first lies at the head of the French River, and runs into Lake Huron; the other on the Ottawa River, which empties itself into the Cataragui at Montreal. These lakes are each about one hundred miles in circumference.

The next is Lake Mistassin, on the head of Rupert's River, that falls into James's Bay. This lake is so irregular from the large points of land by

which  
cult  
ize  
than

La  
rout  
River  
St L  
Lake  
River  
the  
coast  
cumf  
Etche  
ber o  
Busta

Ma  
culari  
Huro

The  
ing to  
Canad  
that t  
these  
tity of

In C  
absent  
month  
thousa  
perly  
Engla  
and to  
the pro

which it is intersected on every side, that it is difficult either to describe its shape, or to ascertain its size. It however appears on the whole to be more than two hundred miles in circumference.

Lake St John, which is about eighty miles round, and of a circular form, lies on the Saguenay River, directly north of Quebec, and falls into the St Lawrence, somewhat north-east of that city. Lake Manikouagone lies near the head of the Black River, which empties itself into the St Lawrence to the eastward of the last mentioned river, near the coast of Labrador, and is about sixty miles in circumference. Lake Pertibi, Lake Wincktagan, Lake Etchelaugon, and Lake Papenouagane, with a number of other small lakes, lie near the heads of the Bustard River to the north of the St Lawrence.

Many others, which it is unnecessary to particularize here, are also found between the Lakes Huron and Ontario.

The whole of those I have enumerated, amounting to upwards of twenty, are within the limits of Canada; and from this account it might be deduced, that the northern parts of North America, through these numerous inland seas, contain a greater quantity of water than any other quarter of the globe.

In October 1768 I arrived at Boston, having been absent from it on this expedition two years and five months, and during that time travelled near seven thousand miles. From thence, as soon as I had properly digested my Journal and Charts, I set out for England to communicate the discoveries I had made, and to render them beneficial to the kingdom. But the prosecution of my plans for reaping these advan-

tages has hitherto been obstructed by the unhappy divisions that have been fomented between Great Britain and her Colonies by their mutual enemies. Should peace once more be restored, I doubt not but that the countries I have described will prove a more abundant source of riches to this nation, than either its East or West Indian settlements; and I shall not only pride myself, but sincerely rejoice in being the means of pointing out to it so valuable an acquisition.

I cannot conclude the account of my extensive travels, without expressing my gratitude to that beneficent Being, who invisibly protected me through those perils which unavoidably attend so long a tour among fierce and untutored savages.

At the same time, let me not be accused of vanity or presumption, if I declare that the motives alledged in the introduction of this work, were not the only ones that induced me to engage in this arduous undertaking. My views were not solely confined to the advantages that might accrue either to myself, or the community to which I belonged; but nobler purposes contributed principally to urge me on.

The confined state, both with regard to civil and religious improvements, in which so many of my fellow creatures remained, aroused within my bosom an irresistible inclination to explore the almost unknown regions which they inhabited; and as a preparatory step towards the introduction of more polished manners, and more humane sentiments; to gain a knowledge of their language, customs, and principles.

I confess that the little benefit too many of the Indian nations have hitherto received from their in-

tercou  
Christ  
purpo  
might  
among  
peans,  
from t  
are un  
perfeve

Non  
to acco  
was w  
toward  
one do  
share t  
be com

It is  
fense o  
ship th  
known  
of imp  
far fro  
writer,  
that gr  
that co  
tianity  
rainted  
stitutor  
supersti  
nality  
mild an  
to soft  
their fa  
happy

tercourse with those who denominate themselves Christians, did not tend to encourage my charitable purposes; yet as many, though not the generality, might receive some benefit from the introduction among them of the polity and religion of the Europeans, without retaining only the errors or vices that from the depravity and perversion of their professors are unhappily attendant on these, I determined to persevere.

Nor could I flatter myself that I should be able to accomplish alone this great design; however, I was willing to contribute as much as lay in my power towards it. In all public undertakings would every one do this, and furnish with alacrity his particular share towards it, what stupendous works might not be completed.

It is true that the Indians are not without some sense of religion, and such as proves that they worship the Great Creator with a degree of purity unknown to nations who have greater opportunities of improvement; but their religious principles are far from being so faultless as described by a learned writer, or unmixed with opinions and ceremonies that greatly lessen their excellency in this point. So that could the doctrines of genuine and vital Christianity be introduced among them, pure and untainted, as it flowed from the mouth of its Divine Institutor, it would certainly tend to clear away that superstitious or idolatrous dross by which the rationality of their religious tenets are obscured. Its mild and beneficent precepts would likewise conduce to soften their implacable dispositions, and to refine their savage manners; an event most desirable; and happy shall I esteem myself, if this publication shall

prove the means of pointing out the path by which salutary instructions may be conveyed to them, and the conversion, though but of a few, be the consequence.

#### CONCLUSION OF THE JOURNAL, &c.

OR  
R

I

its first  
covery  
berless  
the diff  
writers  
their co  
ceed th  
lige me  
ment.

From  
loped, t  
nation  
the unc  
many a  
investig  
any gre  
sion wil

y which  
em, and  
he con-

---

OF THE  
ORIGIN, MANNERS, CUSTOMS,  
RELIGION, AND LANGUAGE

OF THE  
I N D I A N S.

---

CHAPTER I.

*Of their Origin.*

THE means by which America received its first inhabitants, have, since the time of its discovery by the Europeans, been the subject of numberless disquisitions. Was I to endeavour to collect the different opinions and reasonings of the various writers that have taken up the pen in defence of their conjectures, the enumeration would much exceed the bounds I have prescribed to myself, and oblige me to be less explicit on points of greater moment.

From the obscurity in which this debate is enveloped, through the total disuse of letters among every nation of Indians on this extensive continent, and the uncertainty of oral tradition at the distance of so many ages, I fear, that even after the most minute investigation, we shall not be able to settle it with any great degree of certainty. And this apprehension will receive additional force, when it is confi-



dered that the diversity of language, which is apparently distinct between most of the Indians, tends to ascertain that this population was not effected from one particular country, but from several neighbouring ones, and completed at different periods.

Most of the historians or travellers that have treated on the American Aborigines, disagree in their sentiments relative to them. Many of the ancients are supposed to have known that this quarter of the globe not only existed, but also that it was inhabited. Plato in his *Timæus* has asserted, that beyond the island which he calls *Atalantis*, and which, according to his description, was situated in the Western Ocean, there were a great number of other islands, and behind those a vast continent.

Oviedo, a celebrated Spanish author of a much later date, has made no scruple to affirm that the Antilles are the famous *Hesperides* so often mentioned by the poets; which are at length restored to the kings of Spain, the descendants of king *Hesperus*, who lived upwards of three thousand years ago, and from whom these islands received their names.

Two other Spaniards, the one, Father Gregorio Garcia, a Dominican, the other, Father Joseph De Acosta, a Jesuit, have written on the origin of the Americans.

The former who had been employed in the missions of Mexico and Peru, endeavoured to prove from the traditions of the Mexicans, Peruvians, and others, which he received on the spot, and from the variety of characters, customs, languages, and religion observable in the different countries of the New World, that different nations had contributed to the peopling of it.

The latter, Father De Acoſta, in his examination of the means by which the firſt Indians of America might have found a paſſage to that continent, diſcredits the concluſions of thoſe who have ſuppoſed it to be by-ſea, becauſe no ancient author has made mention of the compaſs : and concludes, that it muſt be either by the north of Aſia and Europe, which adjoin to each other, or by thoſe regions that lie to the ſouthward of the ſtraits of Magellan. He alſo rejects the aſſertion of ſuch as have advanced that it was peopled by the Hebrews.

John de Laet, a Flemiſh writer, has contraverted the opinion of theſe Spaniſh fathers, and of many others who have written on the ſame ſubject. The hypotheſis he endeavours to eſtabliſh, is, that America was certainly peopled by the Scythians or Tartars : and that the tranſmigration of theſe people happened ſome after the diſperſion of Noah's grandſons. He undertakes to ſhow, that the moſt northern Americans have a greater reſemblance, not only in the features of their countenances, but alſo in their complexion and manner of living, to the Scythians, Tartars, and Samœides, than to any other nations.

In anſwer to Grotius, who had aſſerted that ſome of the Norwegians paſſed into America by the way of Greenland, and over a vaſt continent, he ſays, that it is well known that Greenland was not diſcovered till the year 964 ; and both Gomera and Herrera informs us, that the Chichimiques were ſettled on the Lake of Mexico in 721. He adds, that theſe ſavages, according to the uniform tradition of the Mexicans who diſpoſſeſſed them, came from the country ſince called New Mexico, and from the neighbourhood of California ; conſequently North-America muſt have been inhabited many ages before

it could receive any inhabitants from Norway by way of Greenland.

It is no less certain, he observes, that the real Mexicans founded their empire in 902, after having subdued the Chichimeques, the Otomias, and other barbarous nations, who had taken possession of the country around the Lake of Mexico, and each of whom spoke a language peculiar to themselves. The real Mexicans are likewise supposed to come from some of the countries that lie near California, and that they performed their journey for the most part by land; of course they could not come from Norway.

De Laet further adds, that though some of the inhabitants of North-America, may have entered it from the north-west, yet, as it is related by Pliny, and some other writers, that on many of the islands near the western coast of Africa, particularly on the Canaries, some ancient edifices were seen, it is highly probable, from their being now deserted, that the inhabitants may have passed over to America; the passage being neither long nor difficult. This migration, according to the calculation of those authors, must have happened more than two thousand years ago, at a time when the Spaniards were much troubled by the Carthaginians; from whom having obtained a knowledge of navigation, and the construction of ships, they might have retired to the Antilles, by the way of the western isles, which were exactly half way on their voyage.

He thinks also that Great-Britain, Ireland, and the Orcades were extremely proper to admit of a similar conjecture. As a proof, he asserts the following passage from the history of Wales, written by Dr David Powel, in the year 1170.

T  
of P  
civil  
after  
fels,  
neces  
lands  
vered  
tants  
to B  
ward

Th  
betw  
rall  
the  
life;  
toms,  
stanc  
the  
the  
count  
by th  
what

He  
betwe  
des w  
count  
natur  
their  
the ic  
to tra  
them.

Th  
equall

This historian says, that Madoc, one of the sons of Prince Owen Gwynnith, being disgusted at the civil wars which broke out between his brothers, after the death of their father, fitted out several vessels, and having provided them with every thing necessary for a long voyage, went in quest of new lands to the westward of Ireland; there he discovered very fertile countries, but destitute of inhabitants; when landing part of his people, he returned to Britaia, where he raised new levies, and afterwards transported them to his colony.

The Flemish author then returns to the Scythians, between whom and the Americans he draws a parallel. He observes, that several nations of them to the north of the Caspian Sea, led a wandering life; which, as well as many other of their customs, and way of living, agrees in many circumstances with the Indians of America. And though the resemblances are not absolutely perfect, yet the emigrants, even before they left their own country, differed from each other, and went not by the same name. Their change of abode effected what remained.

He further says, that a similar likeness exists between several American nations, and the Samœides who are settled, according to the Russian accounts, on the great River Oby. And it is more natural, continues he, to suppose that colonies of their nations passed over to America by crossing the icy sea on their sledges, than for the Norwegians to travel all the way Grotius has marked out for them.

This writer makes many other remarks that are equally sensible, and which appeared to be just; but

he intermixes with these, some that are not so well founded.

Emanuel de Moraze, a Portuguese, in this history of Brazil, asserts, that America has been wholly peopled by the Carthaginians and Israelites. He brings as a proof of this assertion, the discoveries the former are known to have made at a great distance beyond the coast of Africa. The progress of which being put a stop to by the senate of Carthage, those who happened to be them in the newly discovered countries, being cut off from all communication with their countrymen, and destitute of many necessaries of life, fell into a state of barbarism. As to the Israelites, this author thinks that nothing but circumcision is wanted in order to constitute a perfect resemblance between them and the Brazilians.

George De Huron, a learned Dutchman, has likewise written on the subject. He sets out with declaring, that he does not believe it possible America could have been peopled before the flood, considering the short space of time which elapsed between the creation of the world and that memorable event. In the next place, he lays it down as a principle, that after the deluge, men, and other terrestrial animals, penetrated into that country both by the sea and by land; some through accident, and some from a formed design. That birds got thither by flight; which they were enabled to do by resting on the rocks and islands that are scattered about in the Ocean.

He further observes, that wild beasts may have found a free passage by land; and that if we do not meet with horses or cattle (to which he might have added elephants, camels, rhinoceros, and beasts of many other kinds) it is because those nations that

passed t  
use, or

Having  
have ad  
rica, for  
poses th  
maintain  
selves by  
the who

He b  
Colonies  
and Car  
across th  
of the P  
time to  
these wa  
the coast  
tent of  
southern  
mixture  
come fro  
and Chri  
like even  
time whe  
peopled.

After  
attend th  
he says, a  
perfect k  
globe, to  
the next  
the first c  
its most  
double r  
taking fo

passed thither, were either not acquainted with their use, or had no convenience to support them.

Having totally excluded many nations that others have admitted as the probable first settlers of America, for which he gives substantial reasons, he supposes that it began to be peopled in the north; and maintains, that the primitive colonies spread themselves by the means of the isthmus of Panama through the whole extent of the continent.

He believes that the first founders of the Indian Colonies were Scythians: That the Phœnicians and Carthaginians afterwards got footing in America across the Atlantic Ocean, and the Chinese by way of the Pacific: And that other nations might from time to time have landed there by one or other of these ways, or might possibly have been thrown on the coast by tempests; since, through the whole extent of that Continent, both in its northern and southern parts, we meet with undoubted marks of a mixture of the northern nations with those who have come from other places. And lastly, that some Jews and Christians might have been carried there by such like events, but that this must have happened at a time when the whole of the New World was already peopled.

After all, he acknowledges that great difficulties attend the determination of the question. These, he says, are occasioned in the first place by the imperfect knowledge we have of the extremities of the globe, towards the north and south pole; and in the next place to the havock which the Spaniards, the first discoverers of the New World, made among its most ancient monuments; as witness the great double road betwixt Quito and Cuzco, an undertaking so stupendous, that even the most magnifi-

cent of those executed by the Romans cannot be compared to it.

He supposes also another migration of the Phœnicians, than those already mentioned, to have taken place; and this was during a three years voyage made by the Tyrian fleet in the service of King Solomon. He asserts on the authority of Josephus, that the port at which this embarkation was made, lay in the Mediterranean. The fleet, he adds, went in quest of elephants' teeth and peacocks, to the western coast of Africa, which is Tarsish; then to Ophir for gold, which is Haite, or the island of Hispaniola; and in the latter opinion he is supported by Columbus, who, when he discovered that island, thought he could trace the furnaces in which the gold was refined.

To these migrations which preceded the Christian æra, he adds many others of a later date, from different nations, but these I have not time to enumerate. For the same reason I am obliged to pass over numberless writers on this subject; and shall content myself with only giving the sentiments of two or three more.

The first of these is Pierre De Charlevoix, a Frenchman, who, in his journal of a voyage to North-America, made so lately as the year 1720, has recapitulated the opinion of a variety of authors on this head, to which he has subjoined his own conjectures. But the latter cannot without some difficulty be extracted, as they are so interwoven with the passages he has quoted, that it requires much attention to discriminate them.

He seems to allow that America might have received its first inhabitants from Tartary and Hyrcania.

nia. T  
and tyg  
have co  
serve fo  
the nor  
boration  
has offer  
Jesuit, a

This  
the miss  
China.  
he met  
know a  
ture the  
from her  
taken in  
to nation  
then was

Monfi  
been affi  
in his r  
another  
She also  
given to  
these ag  
successive  
velled th  
found he  
Tartar, w  
where she

He ack  
of these  
to the ea  
Jesso or K



nia. This he confirms, by observing that the lions and tygers, which are found in the former, must have come from those countries, and whose passages serve for a proof that the two hemispheres join to the northward of Asia. He then draws a corroboration of this argument, from a story he says he has often heard related by Father Grollon, a French Jesuit, as an undoubted matter of fact.

This father, after having laboured some time in the missions of New France, passed over to those of China. One day as he was travelling in Tartary, he met a Huron woman whom he had formerly known in Canada. He asked her by what adventure she had been carried into a country so distant from her own. She made answer, that having been taken in war, she had been conducted from nation to nation, till she had reached the place at which she then was.

Monsieur Charlevoix says further, that he had been assured another Jesuit, passing through Nantz, in his return from China, had related much such another affair of a Spanish woman from Florida. She also had been taken by certain Indians, and given to those of a more distant country; and by these again to another nation, till having thus been successively passed from country to country, and travelled through regions extremely cold, she at last found herself in Tartary. Here she had married a Tartar, who had attended the conquerors in China, where she was then settled.

He acknowledges, as an ally to the probability of these stories, that those who had sailed farthest to the eastward of Asia, by pursuing the coast of Jesso or Kamschatka, have pretended that they had

perceived the extremity of this continent; and from thence have concluded that there could not possibly be any communication by land. But he adds, that Francis Guella, a Spaniard, is said to have asserted, that this separation is no more than a strait, about one hundred miles over, and that some late voyages of the Japanese give ground to think that this strait is only a bay, above which there is a passage over land.

He goes on to observe, that though there are few wild beasts to be met with in North-America, except a kind of tygers without spots, which are found in the country of the Iroquoise, yet towards the tropics there are lions and real tygers, which, notwithstanding, might have come from Hyrcania and Tartary; for as by advancing gradually southward they met with climates more agreeable to their natures, they have in time abandoned the northern countries.

He quotes both Solinus and Pliny to prove that the Scythian Anthropophagi once depopulated a great extent of country, as far as the promontory Tabin; and also an author of later date, Mark Pol, a Venetian, who, he says, tells us, that to the north-east of China and Tartary there are vast uninhabited countries, which might be sufficient to confirm any conjectures concerning the retreat of a great number of Scythians into America.

To this he adds, that we find in the ancients the names of some of these nations. Pliny speaks of the Tabians; Solinus mentions the Apuleans, who had for neighbours the Massagetes, whom Pliny since assures us to have entirely disappeared. Ammianus Marcellinus expressly tells us, that the fear of the Anthropophagi obliged several of the inhabi-

tants  
From  
clude  
more  
or T

He  
quote  
me th  
follow  
have  
by w

No  
than  
as th  
Many  
which  
far fr  
phere  
ther  
expre  
world

To  
all di  
got o  
spect  
Euro  
which  
nents

Na  
fectio  
possib  
than  
his in  
we de

ants of those countries to take refuge elsewhere. From all these authorities, Monsieur Charlevoix concludes, that there is at least room to conjecture that more than one nation in America had the Scythian or Tartarian original.

He finishes his remarks on the authors he has quoted, by the following observations: It appears to me that this controversy may be reduced to the two following articles; first, how the new world might have been peopled; and secondly, by whom, and by what means it has been peopled.

Nothing, he asserts, may be more easily answered than the first. America might have been peopled as the three other parts of the world have been. Many difficulties have been formed on this subject, which have been deemed insolvable, but which are far from being so. The inhabitants of both hemispheres are certainly the descendants of the same father; the common parent of mankind received an express command from heaven, to people the whole world, and accordingly it has been peopled.

To bring this about, it was necessary to overcome all difficulties that lay in the way, and they have been got over. Were these difficulties greater with respect to peopling the extremities of Asia, Africa, and Europe, or the transporting men into the islands which lie at considerable distance from those continents, than to pass over into America? certainly not.

Navigation, which has arrived at so great perfection within these three or four centuries, might possibly have been more perfect in those early ages than at this day. Who can believe that Noah and his immediate descendants knew less of that art than we do? That the builder and pilot of the largest ship

that ever was, a ship that was formed to traverse an unbounded ocean, and had so many shoals and quicksands to guard against, should be ignorant of, or should not have communicated to those of his descendants who survived him, and by whose means he was to execute the order of the Great Creator; I say, who can believe he should not have communicated to them the art of sailing upon an ocean, which was not only more calm and pacific, but at the same time confined within its ancient limits?

Admitting this, how easy is it to pass, exclusive of the passage already described, by land from the coast of Africa to Brazil; from the Canaries to the Western Islands, and from them to the Antilles? From the British Isles or the coast of France, to Newfoundland, the passage is neither long nor difficult; I might say as much of that from China to Japan; from Japan, or the Philippines, to the isles of Mariannes; and from thence to Mexico.

There are islands at a considerable distance from the continent of Asia, where we have not been surprised to find inhabitants; why then should we wonder to meet with people in America! Nor can it be imagined that the grandsons of Noah, when they were obliged to separate, and spread themselves in conformity to the designs of God over the whole earth, should find it absolutely impossible to people almost one half of it.

I have been more copious in my extracts from this author than I intended, as his reasons appear to be solid, and many of his observations just. From this encomium, however, I must exclude the stories he has introduced of the Huron and Floridan women, which I think I might venture to pronounce fabulous.

I shall only add, to give my readers a more comprehensive view of Monsieur Charlevoix's dissertation, the method he proposes, to come at the truth of what we are now in search of.

The only means by which this can be done, he says, is by comparing the language of the Americans with the different nations, from whence we might suppose they have peregrinated. If we compare the former with those words that are considered as primitives, it might possibly set us upon some happy discovery. And this way of ascending to the original of nations, which is by far the least equivocal, is not so difficult as might be imagined. We have had, and still have, travellers and missionaries who have attained the languages that are spoken in all the provinces of the new world; it would only be necessary to make a collection of their grammars and vocabularies, and to collate them with the dead and living languages of the old world, that pass for originals, and the similarity might easily be traced. Even the different dialects, in spite of the alterations they have undergone, still retain enough of the mother tongue to furnish considerable lights.

Any enquiry into the manners, customs, religion, or traditions of the Americans, in order to discover by that means their origin, he thinks would prove fallacious. A disquisition of that kind, he observes, is only capable of producing a false light, more likely to dazzle, and to make us wander from the right path, than to lead us with certainty to the point proposed.

Ancient traditions are effaced from the minds of such as either have not, or for several ages have been without those helps that are necessary to preserve them. And in this situation is full one half of

the world. New events, and a new arrangement of things, give rise to new traditions, which efface the former, and are themselves effaced in turn. After one or two centuries have passed, there no longer remain any traces of the first traditions; and thus we are involved in a state of uncertainty.

He concludes with the following remarks, among many others. Unforeseen accidents, tempests, and shipwrecks, have certainly contributed to people every habitable part of the world; and ought we to wonder after this, at perceiving certain resemblances, both of persons and manners, between nations that are most remote from each other, when we find such a difference between those that border on one another? As we are destitute of historical monuments, there is nothing, I repeat it, but a knowledge of the primitive languages that is capable of throwing any light upon these clouds of impenetrable darkness.

By this enquiry we should at least be satisfied, among that prodigious number of various nations inhabiting America, and differing so much in languages from each other, which are those who make use of words totally and entirely different from those of the old world, and who consequently must be reckoned to have passed over to America in the earliest ages, and those who from the analogy of their language with such as are at present used in the three other parts of the globe, leave room to judge that their migration has been more recent, and which ought to be attributed to shipwrecks, or some accident similar to those which have been spoken of in the course of this treatise.

I shall only add the opinion of one author more, before I give my own sentiments on the subject, and that is of James Adair, Esq; who resided forty years

amo  
ther  
tica  
part  
nies  
ces  
from  
ruin  
vity

T  
relig  
mar  
lang  
part  
this  
indis  
I ha  
only  
he b  
he is

H  
supp  
Chin  
toms  
whic  
line.  
a year  
recol  
acros  
north  
Ocea  
or fr  
shoul  
their  
and i

among the Indians, and published the history of them in the year 1772. In his learned and systematical history of those nations, inhabiting the western parts of the most southern of the American colonies, this gentleman without hesitation pronounces that the American Aborigines are descended from the Israelites, either whilst they were a maritime power, or soon after their general captivity.

This descent he endeavours to prove from their religious rites, their civil and martial customs, their marriages, their funeral ceremonies, their manners, language, traditions, and from a variety of other particulars. And so complete is his conviction on this head, that he fancies he finds a perfect and indisputable similitude in each. Through all these I have not time to follow him, and shall therefore only give a few extracts to show on what foundation he builds his conjectures, and what degree of credit he is entitled to on this point.

He begins with observing, that though some have supposed the Americans to be descended from the Chinese, yet neither their religion, laws, nor customs agree in the least with those of the Chinese; which sufficiently proves that they are not of this line. Besides, as our best ships are now almost half a year in sailing for China (our author does not here recollect that this is from a high northern latitude, across the Line, and then back again greatly to the northward of it, and not directly athwart the Pacific Ocean, for only one hundred and eleven degrees) or from thence to Europe, it is very unlikely they should attempt such dangerous discoveries, with their supposed small vessels, against rapid currents, and in dark and sickly Monsoons.

He further remarks, that this is more particularly improbable, as there is reason to believe that this nation was unacquainted with the use of the loadstone to direct their course.

China, he says, is about eight thousand miles distant from the American continent, which is twice as far as across the Atlantic Ocean. And we are not informed, by any ancient writer of their maritime skill, or so much as any inclination that way, besides small coasting voyages. The winds blow likewise, with little variation, from east to west within the latitudes thirty and odd, north and south, and therefore these could not drive them on the American coast, it lying directly contrary to such a course.

Neither could persons, according to this writer's account, sail to America from the north by the way of Tartary or ancient Scythia: that, from its situation, never having been, or can be a maritime power; and it is utterly impracticable, he says, for any to come to America by sea from that quarter. Besides, the remaining traces of their religious ceremonies, and civil and martial customs, are quite opposite to the like vestiges of the old Scythians.

Even in the moderate northern climates there is not to be seen the least trace of any ancient stately buildings, or of any thick settlements, as are said to remain in the less healthy regions of Peru and Mexico. And several of the Indian nations assure us, that they crossed the Mississippi before they made their present northern settlements: which, connected with the former arguments, he concludes will sufficiently explode that weak opinion of the American Aborigines being lineally descended from the Tartars or ancient Scythians.



Mr Adair's reasons for supposing that the Americans derive their origin from the Jews are,

First, because they are divided into tribes, and chiefs over them, as the Israelites had.

Secondly, because, as by a strict, permanent, divine precept, the Hebrew nation were ordered to worship, at Jerusalem, Jehovah the true and living God, so do the Indians, styling him Yohewah. The ancient Heathens, he adds, it is well known, worshipped a plurality of gods; but the Indians pay their religious devotions to the great, beneficent, supreme, holy Spirit of Fire, who resides, as they think, above the clouds, and on earth also with unpolluted people. They pay no adoration to images, or to dead persons, neither to the celestial luminaries, to evil spirits, nor to any created beings whatever.

Thirdly, because, agreeable to the theocracy or divine government of Israel, the Indians think the Deity to be the immediate head of their state.

Fourthly, because, as the Jews believe in the ministrations of angels, the Indians also believe that the higher regions are inhabited by good spirits.

Fifthly, because, the Indian language and dialects appear to have the very idioms and genius of the Hebrew. Their words and sentences being expressive, concise, emphatical, sonorous, and bold; and often, both in letters and significations, are synonymous with the Hebrew language.

Sixthly, because they count their time after the manner of the Hebrews.

Seventhly, because, in conformity to, or after the manner of the Jews, they have their prophets, high-priests, and other religious orders.

Eighthly, because their festivals, fasts, and religious rites have a great resemblance to those of the Hebrews.

Ninthly, because the Indians, before they go to war, have many preparatory ceremonies of purification and fasting, like what is recorded of the Israelites.

Tenthly, because the same taste for ornaments, and the same kind, are made use of by the Indians, as by the Hebrews.

These, and many other arguments of a similar nature, Mr Adair brings in support of his favourite system; but I should imagine, that if the Indians are really derived from the Hebrews, among their religious ceremonies, on which he seems chiefly to build his hypothesis, the principal, that of circumcision, would never have been laid aside, and its very remembrance obliterated.

Thus numerous and diverse are the opinions of those who have hitherto written on the subject! I shall not, however, either endeavour to reconcile them, or to point out the errors of each, but proceed to give my own sentiments on the origin of the Americans; which are founded on conclusions drawn from the most rational arguments of the writers I have mentioned, and from my own observations; the consistency of these I shall leave to the judgment of my readers.

Th  
head,  
betwe  
globe

Th  
from  
poles,  
other  
which  
land,  
tude,  
the co  
ders o  
neare  
hundr  
The  
the K  
east th  
beria,  
wards  
Califo  
north-  
same l

Wh  
farther  
tern p  
ed by  
the lan  
diate p  
ing to  
tained.

It b  
confide  
of Asia  
Gama'

The better to introduce my conjectures on this head, it is necessary first to ascertain the distances between America and those parts of the habitable globe that approach nearest to it.

The Continent of America, as far as we can judge from all the researches that have been made near the poles, appears to be entirely separated from the other quarters of the world. That part of Europe which approaches nearest to it, is the coast of Greenland, lying in about seventy degrees of north latitude, and which reaches within twelve degrees of the coast of Labrador, situated on the north-east borders of this continent. The coast of Guinea is the nearest part of Africa, which lies about eighteen hundred and sixty miles north-east from the Brazils. The most eastern coast of Asia, which extends to the Korean Sea on the north of China, projects north-east through eastern Tartary and Kamtschatka to Siberia, in about sixty degrees of north latitude. Towards which, the western coasts of America, from California to the Straits of Annian, extend nearly north-west, and lie in about forty-six degrees of the same latitude.

Whether the Continent of America stretches any farther north than these straits, and joins to the eastern parts of Asia, agreeable to what has been asserted by some of the writers I have quoted, or whether the lands that have been discovered in the intermediate parts are only an archipelago of islands, verging towards the opposite continent, is not yet ascertained.

It being, however, certain that there are many considerable islands which lie between the extremities of Asia and America, viz. Japan, Jessō, or Jedso, Gama's Land, Behring's Isle, with many others dis-

covered by Tschirikow, and besides these, from fifty degrees north there appearing to be a cluster of islands that reach as far as Siberia, it is probable, from their proximity to America, that it received its first inhabitants from them.

This conclusion is the most rational I am able to draw, supposing that since the Aborigines got footing on this continent, no extraordinary or sudden change in the position or surface of it has taken place, from inundations, earthquakes, or any revolutions of the earth that we are at present unacquainted with.

To me it appears highly improbable that it should have been peopled from different quarters, across the Ocean, as others have asserted. From the size of the ships made use of in those early ages, and the want of the compass, it cannot be supposed that any maritime nation would by choice venture over the unfathomable ocean, in search of distant continents. Had this however been attempted, or had America been first accidentally peopled from ships freighted with passengers of both sexes, which were driven by a strong easterly wind across the Atlantic, these settlers must have retained some traces of the language of the country from whence they migrated; and since the discovery of it by the Europeans must have been made out. It also appears extraordinary that several of these accidental migrations, as allowed by some, and these from different parts, should have taken place.

Upon the whole, after the most critical enquiries, and the maturest deliberation, I am of opinion, that America received its first inhabitants from the north-east by the way of the great archipelago just mentioned, and from these alone. But this might

have b  
rious p  
chatka  
each o  
before  
arts an  
each o  
language

The  
and the  
one, an  
former  
dwell in  
the latte  
ferent h  
the long  
been en  
itude.  
is of Ta  
sible of  
merous  
dominic

It is v  
customs  
the Tart  
future a  
be reduc  
wars bet  
the inha  
en from  
some of  
found th  
each nati  
ed by tu  
hence mi

have been effected at different times, and from various parts : from Tartary, China, Japan, or Kamfchatka, the inhabitants of these places resembling each other in colour, features, and shape, and who, before some of them acquired a knowledge of the arts and sciences, might have likewise resembled each other in their manners, customs, religion, and language.

The only difference between the Chinese nation and the Tartars, lies in the cultivated state of the one, and the unpolished situation of the other. The former have become a commercial people, and dwell in houses formed into regular towns and cities ; the latter live chiefly in tents, and rove about in different hordes, without any fixed abode. Nor can the long and bloody wars these two nations have been engaged in, exterminate their hereditary similitude. The present family of the Chinese emperors is of Tartarian extraction ; and if they were not sensible of some claim besides that of conquest, so numerous a people would scarcely sit quiet under the dominion of strangers.

It is very evident, that some of the manners and customs of the American Indians resemble those of the Tartars ; and I make no doubt but that in some future æra, and that not a very distant one, it will be reduced to a certainty, that during some of the wars between the Tartars and the Chinese, a part of the inhabitants of the northern provinces were driven from their native country, and took refuge in some of the isles before-mentioned, and from thence found their way into America. At different periods each nation might prove victorious, and the conquered by turns fly before their conquerors ; and from hence might rise the similitude of the Indians to all

these people, and that animosity which exists between so many of their tribes.

It appears plain to me, that a great similarity between the Indians and Chinese is conspicuous in that particular custom of shaving or plucking off the hair, and leaving only a small tuft on the crown of the head. This mode is said to have been enjoined by the Tartarian emperors on their accession to the throne of China, and consequently as a farther proof that this custom was in use among the Tartars; to whom, as well as the Chinese, the Americans might be indebted for it.

Many words also are used both by the Chinese and Indians, which have a resemblance to each other, not only in their sound, but their signification. The Chinese call a slave, *shungo*; and the Naudowessie Indians, whose language, from their little intercourse with the Europeans, is the least corrupted, term a dog, *shungush*. The former denominate one species of their tea, *shoufong*; the latter call their tobacco, *shoufassaü*. Many other of the words used by the Indians contain the syllables *che*, *enaw*, and *chu*, after the dialect of the Chinese.

There might possibly be found a similar connection between the language of the Tartars and the American Aborigines, were we as well acquainted with it as we are, from a commercial intercourse, with that of the Chinese.

I am confirmed in these conjectures, by the accounts of *Kamschatka*, published a few years ago by order of the Empress of Russia. The author of which says, that the sea which divides that peninsula from America is full of islands, and that the distance between *Tschukotskoi-Nofs*, a promontory which

lies at  
coast  
a half  
is the  
rica c  
contin  
and b  
ally a  
ble ea  
and f  
does n  
bitant  
guage  
spoken  
to whi  
inhabi  
tives o  
wine a  
that th  
natives  
a demo  
part of

The  
permit  
enumer  
thesis.  
of the  
obtain  
support  
ciety of  
searcher  
timents  
ney, or  
through  
the inte  
England

lies at the eastern extremities of that country, and the coast of America, is not more than two degrees and a half of a great circle. He further says, that there is the greatest reason to suppose that Asia and America once joined at this place, as the coasts of both continents appear to have been broken into capes and bays, which answer each other, more especially as the inhabitants of this part of both resemble each other in their persons, habits, customs, and food. Their language, indeed, he observes, does not appear to be the same, but then the inhabitants of each district in Kamschatka speak a language as different from each other, as from that spoken on the opposite coast. These observations, to which he adds the similarity of the boats of the inhabitants of each coast, and a remark that the natives of this part of America are wholly strangers to wine and tobacco, which he looks upon as a proof that they have as yet no communication with the natives of Europe, he says, amount to little less than a demonstration that America was peopled from this part of Asia.

The limits of my present undertaking will not permit me to dwell any longer on this subject, or to enumerate any other proofs in favour of my hypothesis. I am, however, so thoroughly convinced of the certainty of it, and so desirous have I been to obtain every testimony which can be procured in its support, that I once made an offer to a private society of gentlemen, who were curious in such researches, and to whom I had communicated my sentiments on this point, that I would undertake a journey, on receiving such supplies as were needful, through the north-east part of Europe and Asia to the interior parts of America, and from thence to England; making, as I proceeded, such observa-

tions both on the languages and manners of the people with whom I should be conversant, as might tend to illustrate the doctrine I have here laid down, and to satisfy the curiosity of the learned or inquisitive; but as this proposal was judged rather to require a national than a private support, it was not carried into execution.

I am happy to find, since I formed the foregoing conclusions, that they correspond with the sentiments of that great and learned historian, Dr Robertson; and though with him, I acknowledge that the investigation, from its nature, is so obscure and intricate, that the conjectures I have made can only be considered as conjectures, and not indisputable conclusions, yet they carry with them a greater degree of probability than the suppositions of those who assert that this continent was peopled from another quarter.

One of the Doctor's quotations from the Journals of Behring and Tschirikow, who sailed from Kamtschatka, about the year 1741, in quest of the New World, appears to carry great weight with it, and to afford our conclusions firm support: "These commanders having shaped their course towards the east, discovered land, which to them appeared to be part of the American continent; and according to their observations, it seems to be situated within a few degrees of the North-west coast of California. They had there some intercourse with the inhabitants, who seemed to them to resemble the North-Americans; as they represented to the Russians the Calumet or Pipe of Peace, which is a symbol of friendship universal among the people of North-America, and an usage of arbitrary institution peculiar to them."

One  
in supp  
judgm  
says, "  
" in t  
" pled  
" had  
" The  
" state  
" acqu  
" says  
" impr  
" of A  
" ple i  
" societ  
" know  
" this i  
" emigr  
" which  
" poster  
" cover  
" iron  
" or to  
" a plo  
" inven  
" impos  
" or for



One of this incomparable writer's own arguments in support of his hypothesis, is also urged with great judgment, and appears to be nearly conclusive. He says, "We may lay it down as a certain principle in this enquiry, that America was not peopled by any nation of the ancient continent, which had made considerable progress in civilization. The inhabitants of the New World were in a state of society so extremely rude, as to be unacquainted with those arts which are the first essays of human ingenuity in its advance towards improvement. Even the most cultivated nations of America were strangers to many of these simple inventions, which were almost coeval with society in other parts of the world, and were known in the earliest periods of human life. From this it is manifest that the tribes which originally emigrated to America, came off from nations which must have been no less barbarous than their posterity, at the time when they were first discovered by the Europeans. If ever the use of iron had been known to the savages of America, or to their progenitors, if ever they had employed a plough, a loom, or a forge, the utility of these inventions would have preserved them, and it is impossible that they should have been abandoned or forgotten."

---

## CHAPTER II.

*Of their Persons, Drefs, &c.*

FROM the first settlement of the French in Canada, to the conquest of it by the English in 1760, several of that nation, who had travelled into the interior parts of North-America, either to trade with the Indians, or to endeavour to make converts of them, have published accounts of their customs, manners, &c.

The principal of these are Father Louis Hennipin, Monf. Charlevoix, and the baron Le Honton. The first, many years ago, published some very judicious remarks, which he was the better enabled to do by the assistance he received from the maps and diaries of the unfortunate M. de la Salle, who was assassinated, whilst he was on his travels, by some of his own party. That gentleman's journals falling into Father Hennipin's hands, he was enabled by them to publish many interesting particulars relative to the Indians. But in some respects he fell very short of that knowledge which it was in his power to have attained from his long residence among them. Nor was he always (as has already been observed) exact in his calculations, or just in the intelligence he has given us.

The accounts published by the other two, particularly those of Charlevoix, are very erroneous in

the geographical parts, and many of the stories told by the Baron are mere delusions.

Some of the Jesuits, who heretofore travelled into these parts, have also written on this subject: but as few, if any, of their works have been translated into the English language, the generality of readers are not benefited by them; and, indeed, had this been done, they would have reaped but few advantages from them, as they have chiefly confined their observations to the religious principles of the savages, and the steps taken for their conversion.

Since the conquest of Canada, some of our own countrymen, who have lived among the Indians, and learned their language, have published their observations; however, as their travels have not extended to any of the interior parts I treat of, but have only been made among the nations that border on our settlements, a knowledge of the genuine and uncontaminated customs and manners of the Indians could not have been acquired by them.

The southern tribes, and those that have held a constant intercourse with the French or English, cannot have preserved their manners or their customs in their original purity. They could not avoid acquiring the vices with the language of those they conversed with; and the frequent intoxications they experienced through the baneful juices introduced among them by the Europeans, have completed a total alteration in their characters.

In such as these, a confused medley of principles or usages are only to be observed; their real and unpolluted customs could be seen among those nations alone that have held but little communication

with the provinces. These I found in the north-west parts, and therefore flatter myself that I am able to give a more just account of the customs and manners of the Indians, in their ancient purity, than any that has been hitherto published. I have made observations on thirty nations, and though most of these have differed in their languages, there has appeared a great similarity in their manners, and from these have I endeavoured to extract the following remarks.

As I do not propose to give a regular and connected system of Indian concerns, but only to relate such particulars of their manners, customs, &c. as I thought most worthy of notice, and which interfere as little as possible with the accounts given by other writers, I must beg my readers to excuse their not being arranged systematically, or treated of in a more copious manner.

The Indian nations do not appear to me to differ so widely in their make, colour, or constitution from each other, as represented by some writers. They are in general slight made, rather tall and straight, and you seldom see any among them deformed; their skin is of a reddish or copper colour; their eyes are large and black, and their hair of the same hue, but very rarely is it curled; they have good teeth, and their breath is as sweet as the air they draw in; their cheek-bones rather raised, but more so in the women than the men; and the former are not quite so tall as the European women; however you frequently meet with good faces and agreeable persons among them, although they are more inclined to be fat than the other sex.

I shall not enter into a particular enquiry whether the Indians are indebted to nature, art, or the tem-

pera  
nor  
have  
pear  
nall  
peri  
in th  
place  
jetty  
Ame  
color  
migh  
tend

M  
even  
only  
now  
is co  
of oth  
cences  
Robe  
contr  
the r  
clusio  
ture  
lid.  
specti  
I may  
point.  
ceede  
the c

Af  
natur  
those  
a bear  
get ric

perature of the climate for the colour of their skin, nor shall I quote any of the contradictory accounts I have read on this subject; I shall only say that it appears to me to be the tincture they received originally from the hands of their creator; but at what period the variation which is at present visible, both in the complexion and features of many nations took place, at what time the European whiteness, the jetty hue of the African, or the copper cast of the American were given them; which was the original colour of the first inhabitants of the earth, or which might be esteemed the most perfect, I will not pretend to determine.

Many writers have asserted, that the Indians, even at the maturest period of their existence, are only furnished with hair on their heads; and that notwithstanding the profusion with which that part is covered, these parts which among the inhabitants of other climates are usually the seat of this excrescence, remain entirely free from it. Even Doctor Robertson, through their misrepresentations, has contributed to propagate the error; and supposing the remark justly founded, has drawn several conclusions from it relative to the habit and temperature of their bodies, which are consequently invalid. But from minute enquiries, and a curious inspection, I am able to declare (however respectable I may hold the authority of these historians in other points) that their assertions are erroneous, and proceeded from the want of a thorough knowledge of the customs of the Indians.

After the age of puberty, their bodies, in their natural state, are covered in the same manner as those of the Europeans. The men, indeed, esteem a beard very unbecoming, and take great pains to get rid of it; nor is there any ever to be perceived

on their faces, except when they grow old, and become inattentive to their appearance. Every crinose efflorescence on the other parts of the body is held unseemly by them, and both sexes employ much time in their extirpation.

The Naudowessies, and the remote nations, pluck them out with bent pieces of hard wood, formed into a kind of nippers; whilst those who have communication with Europeans procure from them wire, which they twist into a screw or worm; applying this to the part, they press the rings together, and with a sudden twitch draw out all the hairs that are inclosed between them.

The men of every nation differ in their dress very little from each other, except those who trade with the Europeans; these exchange their furs for blankets, shirts, and other apparel, which they wear as much for ornament as necessity. The latter fasten by a girdle around their waists about half a yard of broad cloth, which covers the middle parts of their bodies. Those who wear shirts never make them fast either at the wrist or collar; this would be a most insufferable confinement to them. They throw their blanket loose upon their shoulders, and holding the upper side of it by the two corners, with a knife in one hand, and a tobacco pouch, pipe, &c. in the other; thus accoutred, they walk about in their villages or camps; but in their dances they seldom wear this covering.

Those among the men who wish to appear gayer than the rest, pluck from their heads all the hair, except from a spot on the top of it, about the size of a crown piece, where it is permitted to grow to a considerable length; on this are fastened plumes of feathers of various colours, with silver or ivory

quills.  
this pa  
from e

The  
esteem  
themse  
they m  
wherei

The  
their c  
of both  
care ne  
flesh th  
around  
lower p  
draws t  
inches  
shoulder  
sively g

It is  
their no  
forts. I  
those of  
mental;  
learn; p  
nearer th

They  
cept tha  
reaches  
for their  
cloth; th  
as possib  
The edge

quills. The manner of cutting and ornamenting this part of the head distinguishes different nations from each other.

They paint their faces red and black, which they esteem as greatly ornamental. They also paint themselves when they go to war; but the method they make use of on this occasion differs from that wherein they use it merely as a decoration.

The young Indians, who are desirous of excelling their companions in finery, slit the outward rim of both their ears; at the same time they take care not to separate them entirely, but leave the flesh thus cut still untouched at both extremities; around this spongy substance, from the upper to the lower part, they twist brass wire, till the weight draws the amputated rim into a bow of five or six inches diameter, and drags it almost down to the shoulder. This decoration is esteemed to be exceedingly gay and becoming.

It is also a common custom among them to bore their noses, and wear in them pendants of different sorts. I observed that sea shells were much worn by those of the interior parts, and reckoned very ornamental; but how they procure them I could not learn; probably by their traffic with other nations nearer the sea.

They go without any covering for the thigh, except that before spoken of, round the middle, which reaches down half way the thighs; but they make for their legs a sort of stocking, either of skins or cloth; these are sewed as near to the shape of the leg as possible, so as to admit of being drawn on and off. The edges of the stuff of which they are composed

are left annexed to the seam, and hang loose for about the breadth of a hand; and this part, which is placed on the outside of the leg, is generally ornamented by those who have any communication with Europeans, if of cloth with ribband or lace, if of leather, with embroidery and porcupine quills, curiously coloured. Strangers who hunt among the Indians, in the parts where there is a great deal of snow, find these stockings much more convenient than any others.

Their shoes are made of the skin of the deer, elk, or buffalo: these, after being sometimes dressed according to the European manner, at others with the hair remaining on them, are cut into shoes, and fashioned so as to be easy to the feet, and convenient for walking. The edges round the ankle are decorated with pieces of brass or tin fixed around leather strings, about an inch long, which being placed very thick, make a cheerful tinkling noise either when they walk or dance.

The women wear a covering of some kind or other from the neck to the knees. Those who trade with the Europeans wear a linen garment, the same as that used by the men; the flaps of which hang over their petticoat. Such as dress after their ancient manner, make a kind of shift with leather, which covers the body but not the arms. Their petticoats are made either of leather or cloth, and reach from the waist to the knee. On their legs they wear stockings and shoes, made and ornamented as those of the men.

They differ from each other in the mode of dressing their heads, each following the custom of the nation or band to which they belong, and adhering

to the  
innu

I  
on a  
head  
plate  
high  
they  
of ab  
confi  
lead  
and n  
and i  
gradu  
of the  
prove

But  
sippi,  
vide t  
it into  
are ab  
wrists.  
the fro  
part of

The  
of pai  
each ea  
sometin

The  
their d  
decorat  
of their  
the foll



to the form made use of by their ancestors from time immemorial.

I remarked that most of the females, who dwell on the east side of the Mississippi, decorate their heads by inclosing their hair either in ribbands, or in plates of silver; the latter is only made use of by the higher ranks, as it is a costly ornament. The silver they use on this occasion, is formed into thin plates of about four inches broad, in several of which they confine their hair. The plate which is nearest the head is of a considerable width; the next narrower, and made so as to pass a little way under the other, and in this manner they fasten into each other, and gradually tapering, descend to the waist. The hair of the Indian women being in general very long, this proves an expensive method.

But the women that live to the west of the Mississippi, viz. the Naudowessies, the Assinipoils, &c. divide their hair in the middle of their head, and form it into two rolls, one against each ear. These rolls are about three inches long, and as large as their wrists. They hang in a perpendicular attitude at the front of each ear, and descend as far as the lower part of it.

The women of every nation generally place a spot of paint, about the size of a crown-piece, against each ear; some of them put paint on their hair, and sometimes a small spot in the middle of the forehead.

The Indians, in general, pay a greater attention to their dress, and to the ornaments with which they decorate their persons, than to the accommodation of their huts or tents. They construct the latter in the following simple and expeditious manner:

Being provided with poles of a proper length, they fasten two of them across, near their ends, with bands made of bark. Having done this, they raise them up, and extend the bottom of each as wide as they propose to make the area of the tent: they then erect others of an equal height, and fix them so as to support the two principal ones. On the whole they lay skins of the elk or deer, sewed together, in quantity sufficient to cover the poles, and by lapping over to form the door. A great number of skins are sometimes required for this purpose, as some of their tents are very capacious. That of the chief warrior of the Naudowessies was at least forty feet in circumference, and very commodious.

They observe no regularity in fixing their tents when they encamp, but place them as it suits their convenience.

The hut also, which those who use not tents erect when they travel, for very few tribes have fixed abodes, or regular towns, or villages, are equally simple, and almost as soon constructed.

They fix small pliable poles in the ground, and bending them till they meet at the top and form a semi-circle, then lash them together. These they cover with mats made of rushes plaited, or with birch bark, which they carry with them in their canoes for that purpose.

These cabins have neither chimnies nor windows; there is only a small aperture left in the middle of the roof, through which the smoke is discharged, but as this is obliged to be stopped up when it rains or snows violently, the smoke then proves exceedingly troublesome.

Th  
whic  
floor  
for th  
is ere  
whic

As  
their  
in the  
them  
impo  
or ele  
is fo  
the n  
fary.

Th  
boil t  
ed in  
nearl  
large  
fix it  
and p  
then  
befor  
positi  
frequ  
ficient

Th  
their  
knott  
wood  
degre  
than  
Amer  
box-w

They lie on skins, generally those of the bear, which are placed in rows on the ground; and if the floor is not large enough to contain beds sufficient for the accommodation of the whole family, a frame is erected about four or five feet from the ground, in which the younger part of it sleep.

As the habitations of the Indians are thus rude, their domestic utensils are few in number, and plain in their formation. The tools wherewith they fashion them are so awkward and defective, that it is not only impossible to form them with any degree of neatness or elegance, but the time required in the execution is so considerable, as to deter them from engaging in the manufacture of such as are not absolutely necessary.

The Naudowessies make the pots in which they boil their victuals of the black clay or stone mentioned in my journal: which resists the effects of fire, nearly as well as iron. When they roast, if it is a large joint, or a whole animal, such as a beaver, they fix it as Europeans do, on a spit made of hard wood, and placing the ends on two forked props, now and then turn it. If the piece is smaller, they split it as before, and fixing the spit in an erect but slanting position, with the meat inclining towards the fire, frequently change the sides, till every part is sufficiently roasted.

They make their dishes in which they serve up their meat, and their bowls and pans, out of the knotty excrescences of the maple-tree, or any other wood. They fashion their spoons with a tolerable degree of neatness (as these require much less trouble than large utensils) from a wood that is termed in America Spoon Wood, and which greatly resembles box-wood.

Every tribe are now possessed of knives and steels to strike fire with. These being so essentially needful for the common uses of life, those who have not an immediate communication with the European traders, purchase them of such of their neighbours as are situated nearer the settlements, and generally give in exchange for them slaves.

W  
themselves  
close to  
posture

They  
mate, c  
tions, r  
On the  
from th  
ly very  
indolen  
even in  
deign to  
for it, t

The  
are born  
found in  
on its b  
ing wra  
secured

To th  
they ha  
find no  
stone, v

## CHAPTER III.

*Of their Manners, Qualifications, &c.*

WHEN the Indian women sit down, they place themselves in a decent attitude, with their knees close together ; but from being accustomed to this posture, they walk badly, and appear to be lame.

They have no midwives among them; their climate, or some peculiar happiness in their constitutions, rendering assistance at that time unnecessary. On these occasions they are confined but a few hours from their usual employments, which are commonly very laborious, as the men; who are remarkable indolent, leave to them every kind of drudgery; even in their hunting parties the former will not deign to bring home the game, but send their wives for it, though it lies at a very considerable distance.

The women place their children soon after they are born on boards stuffed with soft moss, such as is found in morasses or meadows. The child is laid on its back in one of this kind of cradles, and being wrapped in skins or cloth to keep it warm, is secured in it by small bent pieces of timber.

To these machines they fasten strings, by which they hang them to branches of trees; or if they find not trees at hand, fasten them to a stump or stone, while they transact any needful business. In

this position are the children kept for some months, when they are taken out, the boys are suffered to go naked, and the girls are covered from the neck to the knees with a shift and a short petticoat.

The Indian women are remarkably decent during their menstrual illness. Those nations that are most remote from the European settlements, as the Naudowessies, &c. are more particularly attentive to this point; though they all without exception adhere in some degree to the same custom.

In every camp or town there is an apartment appropriated for their retirement at this time, to which both single and married retreat, and seclude themselves with the utmost strictness during this period from all society. Afterwards they purify themselves in running streams, and return to their different employments.

The men on these occasions most carefully avoid holding any communication with them; and the Naudowessies are so rigid in this observance, that they will not suffer any belonging to them to fetch such things as are necessary, even fire, from these female lunar retreats, though the want is attended with the greatest inconvenience. They are also so superstitious as to think, if a pipe stem cracks, which among them is made of wood, that the possessor has either lighted it at one of these polluted fires, or held some converse with a woman during her retirement, which is esteemed by them most disgraceful and wicked.

The Indians are extremely circumspect and deliberate in every word and action; there is nothing that hurries them into any intemperate warmth, but that inveteracy to their enemies, which is rooted in

every  
In all  
caution  
whate  
vered  
and c  
self o  
and e  
ing th  
him,  
going  
with t  
inform  
probab  
ficient  
much  
enemy

This  
would  
If an I  
friends  
party,  
distance  
ate sens  
of more  
congrat  
ing the  
till he

He th  
as if he  
those of  
do the  
he relat  
him dur  
a father,

every Indian heart, and never can be eradicated. In all other instances they are cool, and remarkably cautious, taking care not to betray, on any account whatever, their emotions. If an Indian has discovered that a friend is in danger of being intercepted and cut off, by one to whom he has rendered himself obnoxious, he does not inform him in plain and explicit terms of the danger he runs by pursuing the tract, near which his enemy lies in wait for him, but he first coolly asks him which way he is going that day; and having received his answer, with the same indifference tells him, that he has been informed that a dog lies near the spot, which might probably do him a mischief. This hint proves sufficient; and his friend avoids the danger with as much caution as if every design and motion of his enemy had been pointed out to him.

This apathy often shews itself on occasions that would call forth all the fervour of a susceptible heart. If an Indian has been absent from his family and friends many months, either on a war or hunting party, when his wife or children meet him at some distance from his habitation, instead of the affectionate sensations that would naturally arise in the breast of more refined beings, and be productive of mutual congratulations, he continues his course without paying the least attention to those who surround him, till he arrives at his home.

He there sits down, and with the same unconcern as if he had not been absent a day, smokes his pipe; those of his acquaintance who have followed him, do the same; and perhaps it is several hours before he relates to them the incidents which have befallen him during his absence, though perhaps he has left a father, brother, or son on the field, whose loss

he ought to have lamented, or has been unsuccessful in the undertaking that called him from his home.

Has an Indian been engaged for several days in the chase, or on any other laborious expedition, and by accident continued thus long without food, when he arrives at the hut or tent of a friend, where he knows his wants may be immediately supplied, he takes care not to show the least symptoms of impatience, or to betray the extreme hunger by which he is tortured; but on being invited in, sits contentedly down, and smokes his pipe with as much composure as if every appetite was allayed, and he was perfectly at ease; he does the same if among strangers. This custom is strictly adhered to by each tribe, as they esteem it a proof of fortitude, and think the reverse would entitle them to the appellation of old women.

If you tell an Indian that his children have greatly signalized themselves against an enemy, have taken many scalps, and brought home many prisoners, he does not appear to feel any extraordinary pleasure on the occasion; his answer generally is, "it is well," and he makes very little further enquiry about it. On the contrary, if you inform him that his children are slain or taken prisoners, he makes no complaints; he only replies, "It does not signify," and probably, for some time at least, asks not how it happened.

This seeming indifference, however, does not proceed from an intire suppression of natural affections; for notwithstanding they are esteemed savages, I never saw among any other people greater proofs of parental or filial tenderness; and although they meet their wives after a long absence with the stoical in-

differen  
void of

Ano  
of payi  
particu  
his visi  
diately  
are car  
them'd  
same m  
spect's t  
careful  
whilst t

The  
quire w  
pends u  
rience a  
perfectio  
instance  
hundred  
actness  
keeping  
line, wit  
will do v  
fair or c

With  
of the h  
ed by cl  
pursue w  
beast, eit  
it is is w  
discovery

They  
ture, but



difference just mentioned, they are not, in general, void of conjugal affection.

Another peculiarity is observable in their manner of paying their visits. If an Indian goes to visit a particular person in a family, he mentions to whom his visit is intended, and the rest of the family immediately retiring to the other end of the hut or tent, are careful not to come near enough to interrupt them during the whole of their conversation. The same method is pursued if a man goes to pay his respects to one of the other sex: but then he must be careful not to let love be the subject of his discourse, whilst the day light remains.

The Indians discover an amazing sagacity, and acquire with the greatest readiness any thing that depends upon the attention of the mind. By experience and an acute observation, they attain many perfections to which Europeans are strangers. For instance, they will cross a forest or a plain which is two hundred miles in breadth, and reach with great exactness the point at which they intended to arrive, keeping during the whole of that space in a direct line, without any material deviations; and this they will do with the same ease, whether the weather be fair or cloudy.

With equal acuteness they will point to that part of the heavens the sun is in, though it be intercepted by clouds or fogs. Besides this, they are able to pursue with incredible facility the traces of man or beast, either on leaves or grass; and on this account it is with great difficulty a flying enemy escapes discovery.

They are indebted for these talents not only to nature, but to an extraordinary command of the intel-

lectual faculties, which can only be acquired by an unremitted attention and by long experience.

They are in general very happy in a retentive memory; they can recapitulate every particular that has been treated of in council, and remember the exact time when these were held. Their belts of wampum preserve the substance of the treaties they have concluded with the neighbouring tribes for ages back, to which they will appeal, and refer with as much perspicuity and readiness as Europeans can to their written records.

Every nation pays great respect to old age. The advice of a father will seldom meet with any extraordinary attention from the young Indians, probably they receive it with only a bare assent; but they will tremble before a grandfather, and submit to his injunctions with the utmost alacrity. The words of the ancient part of the community are esteemed by the young as oracles. If they take during their hunting parties any game that is reckoned by them uncommonly delicious, it is immediately presented to the eldest of their relations.

They never suffer themselves to be overburdened with care, but live in a state of perfect tranquillity and contentment. Being naturally indolent, if provisions just sufficient for their subsistence can be procured with little trouble, and near at hand, they will not go far, or take any extraordinary pains for it, though by so doing they might acquire greater plenty, and of a more estimable kind.

Having much leisure time, they indulge this indolence to which they are so prone, by eating, drinking, or sleeping, and rambling about in their towns or camps. But when necessity obliges them

to tak  
to pr  
indefa  
on the  
their v

The  
to Eu  
pulse,  
every  
howev  
refined  
pine;  
bear t  
posure

The  
savages  
enemi  
at. H  
whom  
table,  
be sai  
and th  
world.

The  
of jeal  
distrus  
idea is  
young  
women  
way of  
neral  
they a  
indulg

to take the field, either to oppose an enemy, or to procure themselves food, they are alert and indefatigable. Many instances of their activity, on these occasions, will be given when I treat of their wars.

The infatuating spirit of gaming is not confined to Europe; the Indians also feel the bewitching impulse, and often lose their arms, their apparel, and every thing they are possessed of. In this case, however, they do not follow the example of more refined gamesters, for they neither murmur nor repine; not a fretful word escapes them, but they bear the frowns of fortune with a philosophic composure.

The greatest blemish in their character is that savage disposition which impels them to treat their enemies with a severity every other nation shudders at. But if they are thus barbarous to those with whom they are at war, they are friendly, hospitable, and humane in peace. It may with truth be said of them, that they are the worst enemies, and the best friends, of any people in the whole world.

The Indians in general are strangers to the passion of jealousy; and brand a man with folly that is distrustful of his wife. Among some bands, the very idea is not known; as the most abandoned of their young men very rarely attempt the virtue of married women, nor do these often put themselves in the way of solicitation. Yet the Indian women in general are of an amorous temperature, and before they are married, are not the less esteemed for the indulgence of their passions.

The Indians in their common state are strangers to all distinction of property, except in the articles of domestic use, which every one considers as his own, and increases as circumstances admit. They are extremely liberal to each other, and supply the deficiency of their friends with any superfluity of their own.

In dangers they readily give assistance to those of their band who stand in need of it, without any expectation of return, except of those just rewards that are always conferred by the Indians on merit. Governed by the plain and equitable laws of nature, every one is rewarded solely according to his deserts; and their equality of condition, manners and privileges, with that constant and sociable familiarity which prevails throughout every Indian nation, animates them with a pure and truly patriotic spirit, that tends to the general good of the society to which they belong.

If any of their neighbours are bereaved by death, or by an enemy, of their children, those who are possessed of the greatest number of slaves, supply the deficiency; and these are adopted by them, and treated in every respect as if they really were the children of the person to whom they are presented.

The Indians, except those who live adjoining to the European colonies, can form to themselves no idea of the value of money; they consider it, when they are made acquainted with the uses to which it is applied by other nations, as the source of innumerable evils. To it they attribute all the mischiefs that are prevalent among Europeans, such as treachery, plundering, devastations, and murder.

The  
possess  
amaze  
possess  
metal  
their l  
tributi  
within  
society  
belief.  
Europ  
the in  
and to  
brutes

The  
for the  
shewn  
at it,"  
of it, r  
its use  
to run  
ing, c  
with e  
under  
situati  
out a  
during  
are in  
the ple  
dations

They esteem it irrational that one man should be possessed of a greater quantity than another, and are amazed that any honour should be annexed to the possession of it. But that the want of this useless metal should be the cause of depriving persons of their liberty, and that on account of this partial distribution of it, great numbers should be immured within the dreary walls of a prison, cut off from that society of which they constitute a part, exceeds their belief. Nor do they fail, on hearing this part of the European system of government related, to charge the institutors of it with a total want of humanity, and to brand them with the names of savages and brutes.

They shew almost an equal degree of indifference for the productions of art. When any of these are shewn them, they say, "It is pretty, I like to look at it," but are not inquisitive about the construction of it, neither can they form proper conceptions of its use. But if you tell them of a person who is able to run with great agility, that is well skilled in hunting, can direct with unerring aim a gun, or bend with ease a bow, that can dextrously work a canoe, understands the art of war, is acquainted with the situation of a country, and can make his way without a guide through an immense forest, subsisting during this on a small quantity of provisions, they are in raptures; they listen with great attention to the pleasing tale, and bestow the highest commendations on the hero of it.

## CHAPTER IV.

*Their Method of Reckoning Time, &c.*

**C**ONSIDERING their ignorance of astronomy, time is very rationally divided by the Indians. Those in the interior parts (and of those I would generally be understood to speak) count their years by winters; or, as they express themselves, by snows.

Some nations among them reckon their years by moons, and make them consist of twelve synodical or lunar months, observing, when thirty moons have waned, to add a supernumerary one, which they term the lost moon; and then begin to count as before. They pay a great regard to the first appearance of every moon, and on the occasion always repeat some joyful sounds, stretching at the same time their hands towards it.

Every month has with them a name expressive of its season; for instance, they call the month of March (in which their year generally begins at the first New-Moon after the vernal equinox) the Worm Month or Moon; because at this time the worms quit their retreats in the bark of the trees; wood, &c. where they have sheltered themselves during the winter.

The month of April is termed by them the month of Plants. May, the month of Flowers. June,

the H  
reason

Aug  
month

Sept  
month

Octo  
this ti  
places v

Nov  
the bea  
having  
winter

Dec  
play thi

Janua  
harder,  
any othe

Febru  
more fr  
any othe

When  
is dead;  
naked d  
its comin

They  
count by  
noon; a

the Hot Moon. July, the Buck Moon. Their reason for thus denominating these is obvious.

August, the Sturgeon Moon; because in this month they catch great numbers of that fish.

September, the Corn Moon; because in that month they gather in their Indian corn.

October, the Travelling Moon; as they leave at this time their villages, and travel towards the places where they intend to hunt during the winter.

November, the Beaver Moon; for in this month the beavers begin to take shelter in their houses, having laid up a sufficient store of provisions for the winter season.

December, the Hunting Moon; because they employ this month in pursuit of their game.

January, the Cold Moon; as it generally freezes harder, and the cold is more intense in this than in any other month.

February, they call the Snow Moon; because more snow commonly falls during this month, than any other in the winter.

When the moon does not shine, they say the moon is dead; and some call the three last days of it the naked days. The moon's first appearance they term its coming to life again.

They make no division of weeks; but days they count by sleeps; half days by pointing to the sun at noon; and quarters by the rising and setting of the

fun : to express which in their traditions they make use of very significant hieroglyphics.

The Indians are totally unskilled in geography as well as all the other sciences, and yet, as I have before hinted, they draw on their birch bark very exact charts or maps of the countries with which they are acquainted. The latitude and longitude is only wanting to make them tolerably complete.

Their sole knowledge in astronomy consists in being able to point out the pole-star, by which they regulate their course when they travel in the night.

They reckon the distance of places, not by miles or leagues, but by a day's journey, which, according to the best calculations I could make, appears to be about twenty English miles. These they also divide into halves and quarters, and will demonstrate them in their maps with great exactness, by the hieroglyphics just mentioned, when they regulate in council their war parties, or their most distant hunting excursions.

They have no idea of arithmetic ; and though they are able to count to any number, figures as well as letters appear mysterious to them, and above their comprehension.

During my abode with the Naudowéssies, some of the chiefs observing one day a draft of an eclipse of the moon, in a book of astronomy which I held in my hand, they desired I would permit them to look at it. Happening to give them the book shut, they began to count the leaves till they came to the place in which the plate was. After they had viewed it, and asked many questions relative to it, I told them

they r  
the lea  
tell in  
leaves.

The  
begge  
fibility  
chief t  
place,  
concea  
be abl

This  
standin  
to his  
counte  
was ex  
Indians  
withou  
ed as  
The onl  
was by  
whisper

This  
those w  
my con  
opinion



they need not to have taken so much pains to find the leaf on which it was drawn, for I could not only tell in an instant the place, without counting the leaves, but also how many preceded it.

They seemed greatly amazed at my assertion, and begged that I would demonstrate to them the possibility of doing it. To this purpose I desired the chief that held the book, to open it at any particular place, and just shewing me the page, carefully to conceal the edges of the leaves, so that I might not be able to count them.

This he did with the greatest caution; notwithstanding which, by looking at the folio, I told him, to his great surprise, the number of leaves. He counted them regularly over, and discovered that I was exact. And when, after repeated trials, the Indians found I could do it with great readiness, and without ever erring in my calculation, they all seemed as much astonished as if I had raised the dead. The only way they could account for my knowledge, was by concluding that the book was a spirit, and whispered me answers to whatever I demanded of it.

This circumstance, trifling as it might appear to those who are less illiterate, contributed to increase my consequence, and to augment the favourable opinion they already entertained of me.

---

## CHAPTER V.

*Of their Government, &c.*

EVERY separate body of Indians is divided into bands or tribes; which band or tribe forms a little community with the nation to which it belongs. As the nation has some particular symbol by which it is distinguished from others, so each tribe has a badge from which it is denominated; as that of the Eagle, the Panther, the Tiger, the Buffalo, &c. &c. One band of the Naudowessies is represented by a Snake, another a Tortoise, a third a Squirrel, a fourth a Wolf, and a fifth a Buffalo. Throughout every nation they particularise themselves in the same manner, and the meanest person among them will remember his lineal descent, and distinguish himself by his respective family.

Did not many circumstances tend to confute the supposition, I should be almost induced to conclude from this distinction of tribes, and the particular attachment of the Indians to them, that they derive their origin as some have asserted from the Israelites.

Besides this, every nation distinguish themselves by the manner of constructing their tents or huts. And so well versed are all the Indians in this distinction, that though there appears to be no difference on the nicest observation made by an European, yet they will immediately discover, from the position

of a  
camp

E  
Chie  
confi  
appr  
and t  
partr  
head  
elect  
ther  
right  
their  
priety  
is nee  
he af

Th  
the b  
king,  
milita  
tains  
treme  
carry  
mand

On  
are fo  
a, pere  
thinks  
arouse  
it is in  
this m  
evaded  
solute

Am  
is esta

of a pole left in the ground, what nation has encamped on the spot many months before.

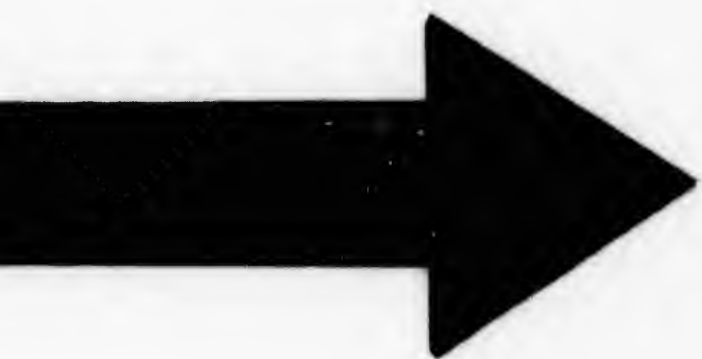
Every band has a chief, who is termed the Great Chief or the Chief Warrior; and who is chosen in consideration of his experience in war, and of his approved valour, to direct their military operations, and to regulate all concerns belonging to that department. But this chief is not considered as the head of the state; besides the great warrior who is elected for his warlike qualifications, there is another who enjoys a pre-eminence as his hereditary right, and has the more immediate management of their civil affairs. This chief might with great propriety be denominated the Sachem; whose assent is necessary in all conveyances and treaties, to which he affixes the mark of the tribe or nation.

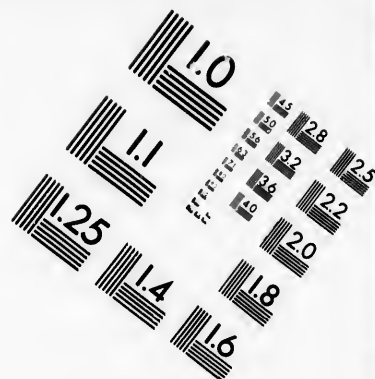
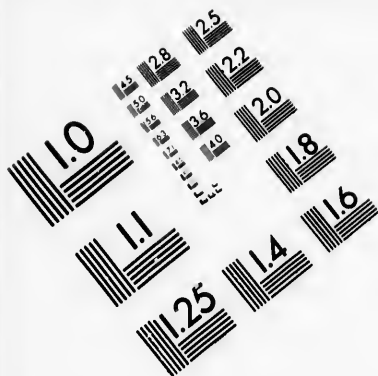
Though these two are considered as the heads of the band, and the latter is usually denominated their king, yet the Indians are sensible of neither civil or military subordination. As every one of them entertains a high opinion of his consequence, and is extremely tenacious of his liberty, all injunctions that carry with them the appearance of a positive command, are instantly rejected with scorn.

On this account, it is seldom that their leaders are so indiscreet as to give out any of their orders in a peremptory stile; a bare hint from a chief that he thinks such a thing necessary to be done, instantly arouses an emulation among the inferior ranks, and it is immediately executed with great alacrity. By this method the disgusting part of the command is evaded, and an authority that falls little short of absolute sway instituted in its room.

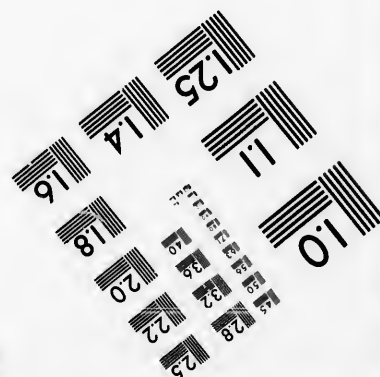
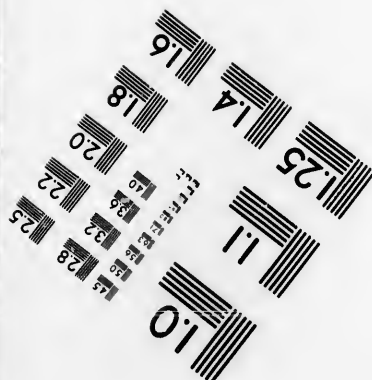
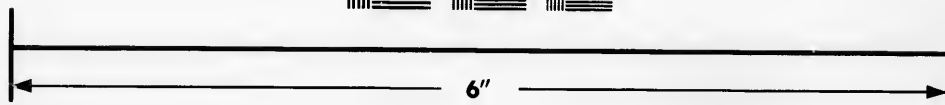
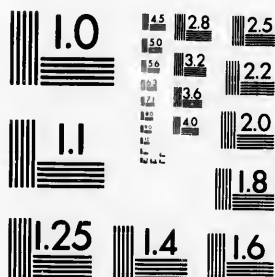
Among the Indians no visible form of government is established; they allow of no such distinction as







# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503



magistrate and subject, every one appearing to enjoy an independence, that cannot be controlled. The object of government among them is rather foreign than domestic, for their attention seems more to be employed in preserving such an union among the members of their tribe as will enable them to watch the motions of their enemies, and to act against them with concert and vigour, than to maintain interior order by any public regulations. If a scheme that appears to be of service to the community is proposed by the chief, every one is at liberty to choose whether he will assist in carrying it on; for they have no compulsory laws that lay them under any restrictions. If violence is committed, or blood is shed, the right of revenging these misdemeanors is left to the family of the injured: The chiefs assume neither the power of inflicting or moderating the punishment.

Some nations, where the dignity is hereditary, limit the succession to the female line. On the death of a chief, his sister's son sometimes succeeds him in preference to his own son; and if he happens to have no sister, the nearest female relation assumes the dignity. This accounts for a woman being at the head of the Winnebago nation, which, before I was acquainted with their laws, appeared strange to me.

Each family has a right to appoint one of its chiefs to be an assistant to the principal chief, who watches over the interest of his family, and without whose consent nothing of a public nature can be carried into execution. These are generally chosen for their ability in speaking; and such only are permitted to make orations in their councils and general assemblies.

In  
the f  
its d  
hun  
their  
the l  
are a  
sion  
if he  
if no

In  
mem  
and  
unle  
of th  
or te  
ed in  
and  
ther  
by tu

On  
their  
is ad  
metap  
of the  
expre  
comm  
speech

Th  
counc  
speech  
ever l  
they l  
taken  
claim,



In this body, with the hereditary chief at its head, the supreme authority appears to be lodged; as by its determination every transaction relative to their hunting, to their making war or peace, and to all their public concerns, is regulated. Next to these, the body of warriors, which comprehends all that are able to bear arms, hold their rank. This division has sometimes at its head the chief of the nation, if he has signalized himself by any renowned action, if not, some chief that has rendered himself famous.

In their councils, which are held by the foregoing members, every affair of consequence is debated; and no enterprise of the least moment undertaken, unless it there meets with the general approbation of the chiefs. They commonly assemble in a hut or tent appropriated to this purpose, and being seated in a circle on the ground, the eldest chief rises and makes a speech; when he has concluded, another gets up; and thus they all speak, if necessary, by turns.

On this occasion their language is nervous, and their manner of expression emphatical. Their style is adorned with images, comparisons, and strong metaphors, and is equal in allegories to that of any of the eastern nations. In all their set speeches they express themselves with much vehemence, but in common discourse according to our usual method of speech.

The young men are suffered to be present at the councils, though they are not allowed to make a speech till they are regularly admitted: they however listen with great attention, and to show that they both understand, and approve of the resolutions taken by the assembled chiefs, they frequently exclaim, "That is right," "That is good."

The customary mode among all the ranks of expressing their assent, and which they repeat at the end of almost every period, is by uttering a kind of forcible aspiration, which sounds like an union of the letters OAH.

use of  
never  
parti  
They  
tities  
boil  
beast  
naced  
it.  
they  
not to  
rally

Ne  
thoug  
buffal  
for th  
their t  
conve  
esteem  
tions,  
and vi

One  
same

## CHAPTER VI.

*Of their Feasts.*

MANY of the Indian nations neither make use of bread, salt, or spices; and some of them have never seen or tasted of either. The Naudowessies in particular have no bread, nor any substitute for it. They eat the wild rice which grows in great quantities in different parts of their territories: but they boil it and eat it alone. They also eat the flesh of the beasts they kill, without having recourse to any farinaceous substance to absorb the grosser particles of it. And even when they consume the sugar which they have extracted from the maple tree, they use it not to render some other food palatable, but generally eat it by itself.

Neither have they any idea of the use of milk, although they might collect great quantities from the buffalo or the elk; they only consider it as proper for the nutriment of the young of these beasts during their tender state. I could not perceive that any inconvenience attended the total disuse of articles esteemed so necessary and nutritious by other nations, on the contrary, they are in general healthy and vigorous.

One, dish however, which answers nearly the same purpose as bread, is in use among the Or-

tagaumies, the Saukies, and the more eastern nations, where Indian corn grows, which is not only much esteemed by them, but it is reckoned extremely palatable by all the Europeans who enter their dominions. This is composed of their unripe corn, as before described, and beans in the same state, boiled together with bear's flesh, the fat of which moistens the pulse, and renders it beyond comparison delicious. They call this food Succatosh.

The Indians are far from being cannibals, as they are said to be. All their victuals are either roasted or boiled; and this in the extreme. Their drink is generally the broth in which it has been boiled.

Their food consists of the flesh of the bear, the buffalo, the elk, the deer, the beaver, and the racoon, which they prepare in the manner just mentioned. They usually eat the flesh of the deer, which is naturally dry, with that of the bear, which is fat and juicy; and though the latter is extremely rich and luscious, it is never known to cloy.

In the spring of the year, the Naudowessies eat the inside bark of a shrub, that they gather in some part of the country; but I could neither learn the name of it, or discover from whence they got it. It was of a brittle nature and easily masticated. The taste of it was very agreeable, and they said it was extremely nourishing. In flavour it was not unlike the turnip, and when received into the mouth, resembled that root both in its pulpy and frangible nature.

The lower ranks of the Indians are exceedingly nasty in dressing their victuals, but some of the chiefs are very neat and cleanly in their apparel, tents and food.

They commonly eat in large parties, so that their meals may properly be termed feasts ; and this they do without being restricted to any fixed or regular hours, but just as their appetites require, and convenience suits.

They usually dance either before or after every meal ; and by this cheerfulness probably render the Great Spirit, to whom they consider themselves as indebted for every good, a more acceptable sacrifice than a formal and unanimated thanksgiving. The men and women feast apart : and each sex invite by turns their companions, to partake with them of the food they happen to have ; but in their domestic way of living the men and women eat together.

No people are more hospitable, kind, and free than the Indians. They will readily share with any of their own tribe the last part of their provisions, and even with those of a different nation, if they chance to come in when they are eating. Though they do not keep one common stock, yet that community of goods which is so prevalent among them, and their generous disposition, render it nearly of the same effect.

When the chiefs are convened on any public business, they always conclude with a feast, at which their festivity and cheerfulness know no limit.

## CHAPTER VII.

*Of their Dances.*

**D**ANCING is a favourite exercise among the Indians; they never meet on any public occasion, but this makes a part of the entertainment. And when they are not engaged in war or hunting, the youth of both sexes amuse themselves in this manner every evening.

They always dance, as I have just observed, at their feasts. In these, as well as all their other dances, every man rises in his turn, and moves about with great freedom and boldness; singing all the while, the exploits of his ancestors. During this the company, who are seated on the ground in a circle around the dancer, join with him in making the cadence, by an odd tone, which they utter all together, and which sounds, "Heh; heh; heh." These notes, if they might be so termed, are articulated with a harsh accent, and strained out with the utmost force of their lungs: so that one would imagine their strength must be soon exhausted by it; instead of which, they repeat it with the same violence during the whole of the entertainment.

The women, particularly those of the western nations, dance very gracefully. They carry themselves erect, and with their arms hanging down close to their sides, move first a few yards to the right, and then back again to the left. This movement they perform without taking any steps as an European would do, but with their feet conjoined, moving by turns their toes and heels. In this manner they glide with great agility to a certain distance, and then return; and let those who join in the dance be ever so numerous, they keep time so exactly with each other that no interruption ensues. During this, at stated periods, they mingle their shrill voices with the hoarser ones of the men, who sit round (for it is to be observed that the sexes never intermingle in the same dance) which, with the music of the drums and chikicoes, make an agreeable harmony.

The Indians have several kinds of dances, which they use on different occasions, as the Pipe or Calumet Dance, the War Dance, the Marriage Dance, and the Dance of the Sacrifice. The movements in every one of these are dissimilar; but it is almost impossible to convey any idea of the points in which they are unlike.

Different nations likewise vary in their manner of dancing. The Chipeways throw themselves into a greater variety of attitudes than any other people; sometimes they hold their heads erect, at others they bend them almost to the ground; then recline on one side, and immediately after on the other. The Naudowessies carry themselves more upright, step firmer, and move more gracefully. But they all accompany their dances with the disagreeable noise just mentioned.

The Pipe Dance is the principal, and the most pleasing to a spectator of any of them, being the least frantic, and the movement of it more graceful. It is but on particular occasions that it is used; as when ambassadors from an enemy arrive to treat of peace, or when strangers of eminence pass through their territories.

The War Dance, which they use both before they set out on their war parties, and on their return from them, strikes terror into strangers. It is performed, as the others, amidst a circle of the warriors: a chief generally begins it, who moves from the right to the left, singing at the same time both his own exploits, and those of his ancestors. When he has concluded his account of any memorable action, he gives a violent blow with his war-club, against a post that is fixed in the ground, near the centre of the assembly, for this purpose:

Every one dances in his turn, and recapitulates the wondrous deeds of his family, till they all at last join in the dance. Then it becomes truly alarming to any stranger that happens to be among them, as they throw themselves in every horrible and terrifying posture that can be imagined, rehearsing at the same time the part they expect to act against their enemies in the field. During this they hold their sharp knives in their hands, with which, as they whirl about, they are every moment in danger of cutting each other's throats; and did they not shun the threatened mischief with inconceivable dexterity, it could not be avoided. By these motions they mean to represent the manner in which they kill, scalp, and take their prisoners. To heighten the scene, they set up the same hideous yells, cries, and war-whoops they use in time of action: so that it is impossible to con-

sider  
dein

I  
but  
coul  
fome  
their

I  
Miss  
cont  
Dan  
ridic  
danc  
in fo  
those  
How  
inter  
Devi  
coul  
or w

W  
which  
the d  
into  
Kitch  
Spirit  
sexes,  
unexc  
proba  
succes  
thing  
and th  
cluded



sider them in any other light than as an assembly of demons.

I have frequently joined in this dance with them, but it soon ceased to be an amusement to me, as I could not lay aside my apprehensions of receiving some dreadful wound, that from the violence of their gestures must have proved mortal.

I found that the nations to the westward of the Mississippi, and on the borders of Lake Superior, still continue to make use of the Pawwaw or Black Dance. The people of the colonies tell a thousand ridiculous stories of the Devil being raised in this dance by the Indians. But they allow that this was in former times, and is now nearly extinct among those who live adjacent to the European settlements. However, I discovered that it was still used in the interior parts; and though I did not actually see the Devil raised by it, I was witness to some scenes, that could only be performed by such as dealt with him, or were very expert and dextrous jugglers.

Whilst I was among the Naudowessies, a dance which they thus termed, was performed. Before the dance began, one of the Indians was admitted into a society which they denominated Wakon-Kitchewah, that is, the Friendly Society of the Spirit. This society is composed of persons of both sexes, but such only can be admitted into it as are of unexceptionable character, and who receive the approbation of the whole body. To this admission succeeded the Pawwaw Dance (in which I saw nothing that could give rise to the reports I had heard) and the whole, according to their usual custom, concluded with a grand feast.

The initiation being attended with some very singular circumstances, which, as I have before observed, must be either the effect of magic, or of amazing dexterity, I shall give a particular account of the whole procedure. It was performed at the time of the new moon, in a place appropriated to the purpose, near the center of their camp, that would contain about two hundred people. Being a stranger, and on all occasions treated by them with great civility, I was invited to see the ceremony, and placed close to the rails of the inclosure.

About twelve o'clock they began to assemble; when the sun shone bright, which they considered as a good omen, for they never by choice hold any of their public meetings unless the sky be clear and unclouded. A great number of chiefs first appeared, who were dressed in their best apparel; and after them came the head-warrior, clad in a long robe of rich furs, that trailed on the ground, attended by a retinue of fifteen or twenty persons, painted and dressed in the gayest manner. Next followed the wives of such as had been already admitted into the society; and in the rear a confused heap of the lower ranks, all contributed as much as lay in their power to make the appearance grand and showy.

When the assembly was seated, and silence proclaimed, one of the principal chiefs arose, and in a short but masterly speech, informed his audience of the occasion of their meeting. He acquainted them that one of their young men wished to be admitted into their society; and taking him by the hand, presented him to their view, asking them, at the same time, whether they had any objection to his becoming one of their community.

No objection being made, the young candidate was placed in the centre, and four of the chiefs took

their  
turns,  
to go  
man,  
him t  
so as t  
four re  
him ex

This  
stood b  
to him  
himself  
he shou  
that it  
stantly  
that th  
necessar  
the com  
being a

As h  
tated, t  
that his  
frame c  
thing th  
small be  
ter his r  
if he ha  
hind him  
assistance  
to all ap

Having  
his limbs  
such blow  
quick, th

their stations close to him; after exhorting him by turns, not to faint under the operation he was about to go through, but to behave like an Indian and a man, two of them took hold of his arms, and caused him to kneel; another placed himself behind him, so as to receive him when he fell, and the last of the four retired to the distance of about twelve feet from him exactly in front.

This disposition being completed, the chief that stood before the kneeling candidate, began to speak to him with an audible voice. He told him that he himself was now agitated by the same spirit which he should in a few moments communicate to him; that it would strike him dead, but that he would instantly be restored again to life; to this he added, that the communication, however terrifying, was a necessary introduction to the advantages enjoyed by the community into which he was on the point of being admitted.

As he spoke thus, he appeared to be greatly agitated, till at last his emotions became so violent, that his countenance was distorted, and his whole frame convulsed. At this juncture he threw something that appeared both in shape and colour like a small bean, at the young man, which seemed to enter his mouth, and he instantly fell as motionless as if he had been shot. The chief that was placed behind him received him in his arms, and, by the assistance of the other two, laid him on the ground to all appearance bereft of life.

Having done this, they immediately began to rub his limbs, and to strike him on the back, giving him such blows, as seemed more calculated to still the quick, than raise the dead. During these extra-

ordinary applications, the speaker continued his harangue, desiring the spectators not to be surprised, or to despair of the young man's recovery, as his present inanimate situation proceeded only from the forcible operation of the spirit; on faculties that had hitherto been unused to inspirations of this kind.

The candidate lay several minutes without sense or motion; but at length after receiving many violent blows, he began to discover some symptoms of returning life. These, however, were attended with strong convulsions, and an apparent obstruction in his throat. But they were soon at an end; for having discharged from his mouth the bean, or whatever it was that the chief had thrown at him, but which on the closest inspection I had not perceived to enter it, he soon after appeared to be tolerably recovered.

This part of the ceremony being happily effected, the officiating chiefs disrobed him of the clothes he had usually worn, and put on him a set of apparel entirely new. When he was dressed, the speaker once more took him by the hand, and presented him to the society as a regular and thoroughly initiated member, exhorting them, at the same time, to give him such necessary assistance, as being a young member, he might stand in need of. He then also charged the newly elected brother to receive with humility, and to follow with punctuality, the advice of his elder brethren.

All those who had been admitted within the rails, now formed a circle around their new brother, and the music striking up, the great chief sung a song, celebrating as usual their martial exploits.

The  
is com  
wroug  
skin;  
a four  
just se  
times  
likewi  
makes

The  
the da  
with th  
rus at  
not un  
of the  
was an

I co  
custom  
and wh  
pearanc  
ried in  
being t  
wind, o  
through  
and fix  
present  
found e  
down to  
both m  
but imm  
again in  
chiefs t  
learned  
hold Go

The only music they make use of is a drum, which is composed of a piece of a hollow tree curiously wrought, and over one end of which is strained a skin; this they beat with a single stick, and it gives a sound that is far from being harmonious, but it just serves to beat time with. To this they sometimes add the chichicoe, and in their war dances they likewise use a kind of fife, formed of a reed, which makes a shrill harsh noise.

The whole assembly were by this time united, and the dance began; several singers assisted the music with their voice, and the women joining in the chorus at certain intervals, they produced together a not unpleasing, but savage harmony. This was one of the most agreeable entertainments I saw whilst I was among them.

I could not help laughing at a singular childish custom I observed they introduced into this dance, and which was the only one that had the least appearance of conjuration. Most of the members carried in their hands an otter or marten's skin, which being taken whole from the body, and filled with wind, on being compressed, made a squeaking noise through a small piece of wood organically formed and fixed in its mouth. When this instrument was presented to the face of any of the company, and the sound emitted, the person receiving it instantly fell down to appearance dead. Sometimes two or three, both men and women, were on the ground together; but immediately recovering, they rose up and joined again in the dance. This seemed to afford even the chiefs themselves infinite diversion. I afterwards learned that these were their Dii Penates or Household Gods.

After some hours spent in this manner, the feast began; the dishes being brought near me, I perceived they consisted of dog's flesh; and I was informed that at all their public grand feasts they never made use of any other kind of food. For this purpose, at the feast I am now speaking of, the new candidate provides fat dogs, if they can be procured at any price.

In this custom of eating dog's flesh on particular occasions, they resemble the inhabitants of some of the countries that lie on the north-east borders of Asia. The author of the account of Kamschatka, published by order of the Empress of Russia, (before referred to) informs us, that the people inhabiting Koreka, a country north of Kamschatka, who wander about in hordes like the Arabs, when they pay their worship to the evil beings, kill a rein-deer or a dog, the flesh of which they eat, and leave the head and tongue sticking on a pole with the front towards the east. Also that when they are afraid of any infectious distemper, they kill a dog, and winding the guts about two poles, pass between them. These customs, in which they are nearly imitated by the Indians, seem to add strength to my supposition, that America was first peopled from this quarter.

I know not under what class of dances to rank that performed by the Indians who came to my tent when I landed near Lake Pepin, on the banks of the Mississippi, as related in my Journal. When I looked out, as I there mentioned, I saw about twenty naked young Indians, the most perfect in their shape, and by far the handsomest of any I had ever seen, coming towards me, and dancing as they approached, to the music of their drums. At every ten or twelve yards they halted, and set up their yells and cries.

W  
in;  
they  
and  
an e  
danc  
I dou  
chief  
termi  
purpo  
my g  
to ke  
their

Th  
dance  
heroic  
every  
thoug  
and su  
firmes  
their  
such v  
have t  
ing ro  
hands  
ed me  
strue  
themse  
own pa  
tumult

Wh  
fented  
not rec  
I woul  
took fro  
I laid b

When they reached my tent, I asked them to come in ; which, without deigning to make me any answer, they did. As I observed that they were painted red and black, as they usually are when they go against an enemy, and perceived that some parts of the war-dance were intermixed with their other movements, I doubted not but they were set on by the inimical chief who had refused my salutation : I therefore determined to sell my life as dear as possible. To this purpose, I received them sitting on my chest, with my gun and pistols beside me, and ordered my men to keep a watchful eye on them, and to be also upon their guard.

The Indians being entered, they continued their dance alternately, singing at the same time of their heroic exploits, and the superiority of their race over every other people. To enforce their language, though it was uncommonly nervous and expressive, and such as would of itself have carried terror to the firmest heart, at the end of every period they struck their war-clubs against the poles of my tent, with such violence, that I expected every moment it would have tumbled upon us. As each of them, in dancing round, passed by me, they placed their right hands over their eyes, and coming close to me, looked me steadily in the face, which I could not construe into a token of friendship. My men gave themselves up for lost, and I acknowledge, for my own part, that I never found my apprehensions more tumultuous on any occasion.

When they had nearly ended their dance, I presented to them the pipe of peace, but they would not receive it. I then, as my last resource, thought I would try what presents would do ; accordingly I took from my chest some ribbands and trinkets, which I laid before them. These seemed to stagger their

resolution, and to avert in some degree their anger ; for after holding a consultation together, they sat down on the ground, which I considered as a favourable omen.

Thus it proved, as in a short time they received the pipe of peace, and lighting it, first presented it to me, and then smoked with it themselves. Soon after they took up the presents, which had hitherto lain neglected, and appearing to be greatly pleased with them, departed in a friendly manner. And never did I receive greater pleasure than at getting rid of such formidable guests.

It was not ever in my power to gain a thorough knowledge of the designs of my visitors. I had sufficient reason to conclude that they were hostile, and that their visit, at so late an hour, was made through the instigation of the Grand Sautor ; but I was afterwards informed that it might be intended as a compliment which they usually pay to the chiefs of every other nation who happen to fall in with them, and that the circumstances in their conduct, which had appeared so suspicious to me, were merely the effects of their vanity, and designed to impress on the minds of those whom they thus visited, an elevated opinion of their valour and prowess. In the morning before I continued my route, several of their wives brought me a present of some sugar, for whom I found a few more ribbands.

The dance of the sacrifice is not so denominated from their offering up at the same time a sacrifice to any good or evil spirit, but is a dance to which the Naudowessies give that title from being used when any public fortunate circumstance befalls them. Whilst I resided among them, a fine large deer accidentally strayed into the middle of their

encar  
happ  
lucky  
one i  
they  
its be  
the fa



encampment, which they soon destroyed. As this happened just at the new moon, they esteemed it a lucky omen; and having roasted it whole, every one in the camp partook of it. After their feast, they all joined in a dance, which they termed, from its being somewhat of a religious nature, a dance of the sacrifice.

## CHAPTER VIII.

*Of their Hunting.*

**H**UNTING is the principal occupation of the Indians; they are trained to it from their earliest youth, and it is an exercise which is esteemed no less honourable than necessary towards their subsistence. A dextrous and resolute hunter is held nearly in as great estimation by them as a distinguished warrior. Scarcely any device which the ingenuity of man has discovered for ensnaring or destroying those animals that supply them with food, or whose skins are valuable to Europeans, is unknown to them.

Whilst they are engaged in this exercise, they shake off the indolence peculiar to their nature, and become active, persevering, and indefatigable. They are equally sagacious in finding their prey, and in the means they use to destroy it. They discern the footsteps of the beasts they are in pursuit of, although they are imperceptible to every other eye, and can follow them with certainty through the pathless forest.

The beasts that the Indians hunt, both for their flesh, on which they subsist, and for their skins, of which they either make their apparel, or barter with the Europeans for necessities, are the buffalo, the elk, the deer, the moose, caribboo, the bear, the beaver, the otter, the marten, &c. I defer giving

a descr  
at pres

The  
parties  
fixed in  
time in  
ensuing  
rior, w  
ings on  
an invi  
for the  
superior  
and eve  
fasting

The I  
from the  
tally ab  
drink; a  
the most  
taste a  
stinance

The re  
enables t  
are infor  
of game;  
evil spirit  
also on th  
bodies th

The fa  
made kn  
gives a gr  
ferent par  
take till th

a description of these creatures here, and shall only at present treat of their manner of hunting them.

The route they shall take for this purpose, and the parties that shall go on the different expeditions, are fixed in their general councils, which are held some time in the summer, when all the operations for the ensuing winter are concluded on. The chief warrior, whose province is to regulate their proceedings on this occasion, with great solemnity issues out an invitation to those who choose to attend him; for the Indians, as before observed, acknowledge no superiority, nor have they any idea of compulsion; and every one that accepts it prepares himself by fasting during several days.

The Indians do not fast, as some other nations do, from the richest and most luxurious food, but they totally abstain from every kind either of victuals or drink; and such is their patience and resolution, that the most extreme thirst could not oblige them to taste a drop of water; yet amidst this severe abstinence they appear cheerful and happy.

The reasons they give for thus fasting are, that it enables them freely to dream, in which dreams they are informed where they shall find the greatest plenty of game; and also, that it averts the displeasure of the evil spirits, and induces them to be propitious. They also on these occasions blacken those parts of their bodies that are uncovered.

The fast being ended, and the place of hunting made known, the chief who is to conduct them, gives a grand feast to those who are to form the different parties; of which none of them dare to partake till they have bathed themselves. At this feast,

notwithstanding they have fasted so long, they eat with great moderation ; and the chief that presides employs himself in rehearsing the feats of those who have been most successful in the business they are about to enter upon. They soon after set out on the march towards the place appointed, painted, or rather bedawbed, with black, amidst the acclamations of all the people.

It is impossible to describe their agility or perseverance, whilst they are in pursuit of their prey ; neither thickets, ditches, torrents, pools, or rivers stop them ; they always go straight forward in the most direct line they possibly can, and there are few of the savage inhabitants of the woods that they cannot overtake.

When they hunt for bears, they endeavour to find out their retreats ; for, during the winter, these animals conceal themselves in the hollow trunks of trees, or make themselves holes in the ground, where they continue without food, whilst the severe weather lasts.

When the Indians think they have arrived at a place where these creatures usually haunt, they form themselves into a circle, according to their number, and moving onward, endeavour, as they advance towards the centre, to discover the retreats of their prey. By this means, if any lie in the intermediate space, they are sure of arousing them, and bringing them down either with their bows or their guns. The bears will take to flight at sight of a man or a dog, and will only make resistance when they are extremely hungry, or after they are wounded.

The Indian method of hunting the buffalo is by forming a circle or a square, nearly in the same

mann  
taken  
at thi  
mals,  
flying  
hemm  
one ef

The  
deer,  
out in  
feverit  
behind  
they ta  
the elk  
melt t  
kind o  
heavy,  
ficulty  
fore he

Som  
animals  
from da  
into tw  
ders of  
their ca  
to a sen  
reach t  
means  
bounds  
to whic  
part of  
who rer

Both t  
are wou  
suers, an

manner as when they search for the bear. Having taken their different stations, they set the traps, which at this time is rank and dry, on fire, and these animals, who are extremely fearful of that element, flying with precipitation before it, great numbers are hemmed in a small compass, and scarcely a single one escapes:

They have different ways of hunting the elk, the deer, and the caribboo. Sometimes they seek them out in the woods, to which they retire during the severity of the cold, where they are easily shot from behind the trees. In the more northern climates they take the advantage of the weather to destroy the elk; when the sun has just strength enough to melt the snow, and the frost in the night forms a kind of crust on the surface, this creature being heavy, breaks it with his forked hoofs, and with difficulty extricates himself from it; at this time therefore he is soon overtaken and destroyed.

Some nations have a method of hunting these animals, which is more easily executed, and free from danger. The hunting party divide themselves into two bands, and choosing a spot near the borders of the same river, one party embarks on board their canoes, whilst the others forming themselves into a semi-circle on the land, the flanks of which reach the shore, let loose their dogs, and by this means rouse all the game that lies within these bounds; they then drive them towards the river, into which they no sooner enter, than the greatest part of them are immediately dispatched by those who remain in the canoes.

Both the elk and buffalo are very furious when they are wounded, and will turn fiercely on their pursuers, and trample them under their feet, if the hun-

ter finds no means to complete their destruction, or does not seek for security in flight to some adjacent tree; by this method they are frequently avoided, and so tired with the pursuit, that they voluntarily give it over.

But the hunting in which the Indians, particularly those who inhabit the northern parts, chiefly employ themselves, and from which they reap the greatest advantage, is the beaver hunting. The season for this is throughout the whole of the winter, from November to April; during which time the fur of these creatures is in the greatest perfection. A description of this extraordinary animal, the construction of their huts, and the regulations of their almost rational community, I shall give in another place.

The hunters make use of several methods to destroy them. Those generally practised, are either that of taking them in snares, cutting through the ice, or opening their causeways.

As the eyes of these animals are very quick, and their hearing exceedingly acute, great precaution is necessary in approaching their abodes; for as they seldom go far from the water, and their houses are always built close to the side of some large river or lake, or dams of their own constructing, upon the least alarm they hasten to the deepest part of the water, and dive immediately to the bottom; as they do this, they make a great noise by beating the water with their tails, on purpose to put the whole fraternity on their guard.

They take them with snares in the following manner: though the beavers usually lay up a sufficient store of provision to serve for their subsistence during the winter, they make from time to time excursions

fions to  
supply  
their h  
small p  
the be  
log of  
enemie  
instant

At  
lakes i  
ing th  
beaver  
houses  
occasio  
hunter  
metho  
head t

Wh  
a rivul  
ters th  
break  
fail to  
are en  
fered t  
tricate  
known

The  
from t  
fons th  
the bo  
teeth  
appreh  
the be  
hunting

sions to the neighbouring woods to procure further supplies of food. The hunters having found out their haunts, place a trap in their way, baited with small pieces of bark, or young shoots of trees, which the beaver has no sooner laid hold of, than a large log of wood falls upon him and breaks his back; his enemies, who are upon the watch, soon appear and instantly dispatch the helpless animal.

At other times, when the ice on the rivers and lakes is about half a foot thick, they make an opening through it with their hatchets, to which the beaver will soon hasten, on being disturbed at their houses, for a supply of fresh air. As their breath occasions a considerable motion in the water, the hunter has sufficient notice of their approach, and methods are easily taken for knocking them on the head the moment they appear above the surface.

When the house of the beaver happens to be near a rivulet, they are more easily destroyed: the hunters then cut the ice, and spreading a net under it, break down the cabins of the beavers, who never fail to make towards the deepest part, where they are entangled and taken. But they must not be suffered to remain there long, as they would soon extricate themselves with their teeth, which are well known to be excessively sharp and strong.

The Indians take great care to hinder their dogs from touching the bones of the beavers. The reasons they give for these precautions, are, first, that the bones are so excessively hard, that they spoil the teeth of their dogs: and, secondly, that they are apprehensive they shall so exasperate the spirits of the beavers by this permission, as to render the next hunting season unsuccessful.

The skins of these animals, the hunters exchange with the Europeans for necessities, and as they are more valued by the latter than any other kind of furs, they pay the greatest attention to this species of hunting.

When the Indians destroy buffaloes, elks, deer, &c. they generally divide the flesh of such as they have taken among the tribe to which they belong. But in hunting the beaver, a few families usually unite and divide the spoil between them. Indeed, in the first instance they generally pay some attention in the division to their own families: but no jealousies or murmurings are ever known to arise on account of any apparent partiality.

Among the Nadowessies, if a person shoots a deer, buffalo, &c. and it runs to a considerable distance before it drops, where a person belonging to another tribe being nearer, first sticks a knife into it, the game is considered as the property of the latter, notwithstanding it had been mortally wounded by the former. Though this custom appears to be arbitrary and unjust, yet that people cheerfully submit to it. This decision is, however, very different from that practised by the Indians on the back of the colonies, where the first person that hits it is entitled to the best share.

of fiste  
the ag  
have b  
exerci

In e  
who a  
dy to a  
require  
pons c  
cording  
have a  
tomaha  
dwelling  
pi, and  
these k  
also the

The  
ward, a  
in fight  
Having  
their en  
with no  
curious  
about a  
little ab



## CHAPTER IX.

*Of their manner of making War, &c.*

THE Indians begin to bear arms at the age of fifteen, and lay them aside when they arrive at the age of sixty. Some nations to the southward, I have been informed, do not continue their military exercises after they are fifty.

In every band or nation there is a select number who are styled the warriors, and who are always ready to act either offensively or defensively, as occasion requires. These are well armed, bearing the weapons commonly in use among them, which vary according to the situation of their countries. Such as have an intercourse with the Europeans make use of tomahawks, knives, and fire-arms; but those whose dwellings are situated to the westward of the Mississippi, and who have not an opportunity of purchasing these kinds of weapons, use bows and arrows, and also the Caffe Tete or War-Club.

The Indians that inhabit still further to the westward, a country which extends to the South Sea, use in fight, a warlike instrument that is very uncommon. Having great plenty of horses, they always attack their enemies on horseback, and encumber themselves with no other weapon, than a stone of a middle size, curiously wrought, which they fasten by a string, about a yard and a half long, to their right arms, a little above the elbow. These stones they conveni-

ently carry in their hands, till they reach their enemies, and then swinging them with great dexterity, as they ride full speed, never fail of doing execution. The country which these tribes possess, abounding with large extensive plains, those who attack them seldom return; as the swiftness of the horses, on which they are mounted, enables them to overtake even the fleetest of their invaders.

The Naudowessies, who had been at war with this people, informed me, that unless they found morasses or thickets to which they could retire, they were sure of being cut off: to prevent this, they always took care, whenever they made an onset, to do it near such retreats as were impassable to cavalry; they then having a great advantage over their enemies, whose weapons could not there reach them.

Some nations make use of a javelin, pointed with bone, worked into different forms; but their Indian weapons in general are bows and arrows, and the short club already mentioned. The latter is made of a very hard wood, and the head of it fashioned round like a ball, about three inches and a half diameter; in this rotund part is fixed an edge resembling that of a tomahawk, either of steel or flint, whichever they can procure.

The dagger is peculiar to the Naudowessie nation, and of ancient construction, but they can give no account how long it has been in use among them. It was originally made of flint or bone, but since they have had communication with the European traders, they have formed it of steel. The length of it is about ten inches, and that part close to the handle nearly three inches broad. Its edges are keen, and it gradually tapers towards a point. They wear it in a sheath made of deer's leather, neatly ornamented

with p  
stings,  
as low  
worn  
confide  
namen

I ob  
or shiel  
of those  
of these  
ligence  
among  
from fa

The  
against  
urged b  
tranquil  
former  
just, tha  
dication

The  
these pe  
on the t  
them.  
ticular  
through  
lands wh  
own, ag  
of those  
the India  
much an

Thoug  
yet the r

with porcupine quills; and it is usually hung by a string, decorated in the same manner, which reaches as low only as the breast. This curious weapon is worn by a few of the principal chiefs alone, and considered both as an useful instrument, and an ornamental badge of superiority.

I observed among the Naudowessies a few targets or shields made of raw buffalo hides, and in the form of those used by the ancients. But as the number of these was small, and as I could not gain any intelligence of the æra in which they were first introduced among them, I suppose those I saw had descended from father to son for many generations.

The reasons the Indians give for making war against one another, are much the same as those urged by more civilized nations, for disturbing the tranquillity of their neighbours. The pleas of the former are however in general more rational and just, than such as are brought by Europeans in vindication of their proceedings.

The extension of empire is seldom a motive with these people to invade, and to commit depredations on the territories of those who happen to dwell near them. To secure the rights of hunting within particular limits, to maintain the liberty of passing through their accustomed tracks, and to guard those lands which they consider from a long tenure as their own, against any infringement, are the general causes of those dissensions that so often break out between the Indian nations, and which are carried on with so much animosity.

Though strangers to the idea of separate property, yet the most uncultivated among them are well ac-

quainted with the rights of their community to the domains they possess, and oppose with vigour every encroachment on them.

Notwithstanding it is generally supposed that from their territories being so extensive, the boundaries of them cannot be ascertained, yet I am well assured that the limits of each nation in the interior parts are laid down in their rude plans with great precision. By theirs, as I have before observed, was I enabled to regulate my own; and after the most exact observations and enquiries found very few instances in which they erred.

But interest is not either the most frequent or most powerful incentive to their making war on each other. The passion of revenge, which is the distinguishing characteristic of these people, is the most general motive. Injuries are felt by them with exquisite sensibility, and vengeance pursued with unremitted ardour. To this may be added, that natural excitation which every Indian becomes sensible of as soon as he approaches the age of manhood to give proofs of his valour and prowess.

As they are early possessed with a notion that war ought to be the chief business of their lives, that there is nothing more desirous than the reputation of being a great warrior, and that the scalps of their enemies, or a number of prisoners are alone to be esteemed valuable, it is not to be wondered at that the younger Indians are continually restless and uneasy if their ardour is repressed, and they are kept in a state of inactivity. Either of these propensities, the desire of revenge, or the gratification of an impulse, that by degrees becomes habitual to them, is sufficient, frequently, to induce them to commit hostilities on some of the neighbouring nations.

Wh  
war, t  
by tha  
arms.  
tial elo  
never f  
" dece  
" to u  
" tisfy  
" us.  
" are t  
" a rel  
" brot  
" they  
" give  
" anoi  
" vers,  
" cons  
" shall

Anin  
snatch t  
of war,  
hands in

Some  
and mak  
are at w  
warrior,  
his prow  
dred mi

These  
approved  
often ob  
before g  
nations.

When the chiefs find any occasion for making war, they endeavour to arouse these habitudes, and by that means soon excite their warriors to take arms. To this purpose they make use of their martial eloquence, nearly in the following words, which never fails of proving effectual: "The bones of our deceased countrymen lie uncovered, they call out to us to revenge their wrongs, and we must satisfy their request. Their spirits cry out against us. They must be appeased. The genii, who are the guardians of our honour, inspire us with a resolution to seek the enemies of our murdered brothers. Let us go and devour those by whom they were slain. Sit therefore no longer inactive, give way to the impulse of your natural valour, anoint your hair, paint your faces, fill your quivers, cause the forests to resound with your songs, console the spirits of the dead, and tell them they shall be revenged."

Animated by these exhortations, the warriors snatch their arms in a transport of fury, sing the song of war, and burn with impatience to imbrue their hands in the blood of their enemies.

Sometimes private chiefs assemble small parties, and make excursions against those with whom they are at war, or such as have injured them. A single warrior, prompted by revenge, or a desire to show his prowess, will march unattended for several hundred miles, to surprise and cut off a straggling party.

These irregular sallies, however, are not always approved of by the elder chiefs, though they are often obliged to connive at them; as in the instance before given of the Naudowessie and Chipeway nations.

But when a war is national, and undertaken by the community, their deliberations are formal and slow. The elders assemble in council, to which all the head warriors and young men are admitted, where they deliver their opinions in solemn speeches, weighing with maturity the nature of the enterprise they are about to engage in, and balancing with great sagacity the advantages or inconveniences that will arise from it.

Their priests are also consulted on the subject, and even, sometimes, the advice of the most intelligent of their women is asked.

If the determination be for war, they prepare for it with much ceremony.

The chief warrior of a nation does not on all occasions head the war party himself; he frequently deposes a warrior of whose valour and prudence he has a good opinion. The person thus fixed on being first bedawd with black, observes a fast of several days, during which he invokes the Great Spirit, or deprecates the anger of the evil ones, holding whilst it lasts no converse with any of his tribe.

He is particularly careful at the same time to observe his dreams; for on these do they suppose their success will in a great measure depend; and from the firm persuasion every Indian actuated by his own presumptuous thoughts is impressed with, that he shall march forth to certain victory, there are generally favourable to his wishes.

After he has fasted as long as custom prescribes, he assembles the warriors, and holding a belt of wampum in his hand, thus addresses them:

" Brothers ! by the inspiration of the Great Spirit, I now speak unto you, and by him am I prompted to carry into execution the intentions which I am about to disclose to you. The blood of our deceased brothers is not yet wiped away ; their bodies are not yet covered, and I am going to perform this duty to them."

Having then made known to them all the motives that induce him to take up arms against the nation with whom they are to engage, he thus proceeds : " I have therefore resolved to march through the war-path to surprise them. We will eat their flesh, and drink their blood ; we will take scalps, and make prisoners ; and should we perish in this glorious enterprise, we shall not be for ever hid in the dust, for this belt shall be a recompense to him who buries the dead." Having said this, he lays the belt on the ground, and he who takes it up declares himself his lieutenant, and is considered as the second in command ; this, however, is only done by some distinguished warrior who has a right, by the number of his scalps, to the post.

Though the Indians thus assert that they will eat the flesh and drink the blood of their enemies, the threat is only to be considered as a figurative expression. Notwithstanding they sometimes devour the hearts of those they slay, and drink their blood, by way of bravado, or to gratify in a more complete manner their revenge, yet they are not naturally anthropophagi, nor ever feed on the flesh of men.

The chief is now washed from his sable covering, anointed with bear's fat, and painted with their red paint, in such figures as will make him appear most terrible to his enemies. He then sings the war song, and enumerates his warlike actions. Having done



this, he fixes his eyes on the sun, and pays his adorations to the Great Spirit, in which he is accompanied by all the warriors.

This ceremony is followed with dances, such as I have before described ; and the whole concludes with a feast, which usually consists of dog's flesh.

This feast is held in the hut or tent of the chief warrior, to which all those who intend to accompany him in his expedition send their dishes to be filled ; and during the feast, notwithstanding he has fasted so long, he sits composedly with his pipe in his mouth, and recounts the valorous deeds of his family.

As the hopes of having their wounds, should they receive any, properly treated, and expeditiously cured, must be some additional inducement to the warriors to expose themselves more freely to danger, the priests, who are also their doctors, prepare such medicines as will prove efficacious. With great ceremony they carry various roots and plants, and pretend that they impart to them the power of healing.

Notwithstanding this superstitious method of proceeding, it is very certain they have acquired a knowledge of many plants and herbs that are of a medicinal quality, and which they know how to use with great skill.

From the time the resolution of engaging in a war is taken, to the departure of the warriors, the nights are spent in festivity, and their days in making the needful preparations.

If it is thought necessary by the nation going to war, to solicit the alliance of any neighbouring

tribe,  
the la  
orato  
on w  
figure  
At th  
paint

As  
he is  
with  
media  
fador  
the gr  
more  
In his  
and a  
belt.

If  
his na  
hatch  
the ca  
if on  
accept  
whose  
to an  
turns  
succes

The  
again  
chet,  
tion w  
fenger  
expos  
sets at  
fidelity



tribe, they fix upon one of their chiefs who speaks the language of that people well, and who is a good orator, and send to them by him a belt of wampum, on which is specified the purport of the embassy, in figures that every nation is well acquainted with. At the same time he carries with him a hatchet painted red.

As soon as he reaches the camp or village to which he is destined, he acquaints the chief of the tribe with the general tenor of his commission, who immediately assembles a council, to which the ambassador is invited. There having laid the hatchet on the ground, he holds the belt in his hand, and enters more minutely into the occasion of his embassy. In his speech he invites them to take up the hatchet, and as soon as he has finished speaking delivers the belt.

If his hearers are inclined to become auxiliaries to his nation, a chief steps forward, and takes up the hatchet, and they immediately espouse with spirit the cause they have thus engaged to support. But if on this application neither the belt or hatchet are accepted, the emissary concludes that the people whose assistance he solicits, have already entered into an alliance with the foes of his nation, and returns with speed to inform his countrymen of his ill success.

The manner in which the Indians declare war against each other, is by sending a slave with a hatchet, the handle of which is painted red, to the nation which they intend to break with; and the messenger, notwithstanding the danger to which he is exposed from the sudden fury of those whom he thus sets at defiance, executes his commission with great fidelity.

Sometimes this token of defiance has such an instantaneous effect on those to whom it is presented, that in the first transport of their fury, a small party will issue forth, without waiting for the permission of the elder chiefs, and slaying the first of the offending nation they meet, cut open the body, and stick a hatchet of the same kind as that they have just received, into the heart of their slaughtered foe. Among the more remote tribes, this is done with an arrow or spear, the end of which is painted red. And the more to exasperate, they dismember the body, to show that they esteem them not as men but as old women.

The Indians seldom take the field in large bodies, as such numbers would require a greater degree of industry to provide for their subsistence, during their tedious marches through dreary forests, or long voyages over lakes and rivers, than they would care to bestow.

Their armies are never encumbered with baggage or military stores. Each warrior, besides his weapons, carries with him only a mat, and whilst at a distance from the frontiers of the enemy, supports himself with the game he kills or the fish he catches.

When they pass through a country where they have no apprehensions of meeting with an enemy, they use very little precaution: Sometimes there are scarcely a dozen warriors left together, the rest being dispersed in pursuit of their game; but though they should have roved to a very considerable distance from the war-path, they are sure to arrive at the place of rendezvous by the hour appointed.

They always pitch their tents long before sun-set; and being naturally presumptuous, take very little

care  
confi  
which  
suade  
tinels  
tion.

Th  
tions,  
by the  
ter an  
which

Aft  
no pe  
fires  
heard,  
are no  
what  
and m

The  
buscad  
send to  
ately h  
to cont  
were f

The  
break,  
in their  
the pre  
faces,  
in the f  
feet, til  
have d  
by the c

care to guard against a surprise. They place great confidence in their Manitous, or household gods, which they always carry with them; and being persuaded that they take upon them the office of centinels, they sleep very securely under their protection.

These Manitous, as they are called by some nations, but which are termed Wakons, that is spirits, by the Naudowessies, are nothing more than the otter and marten skins I have already described, for which, however, they have a great veneration.

After they have entered the enemy's country, no people can be more cautious and circumspect; fires are no longer lighted, no more shouting is heard, nor the game any longer pursued. They are not even permitted to speak; but must convey whatever they have to impart to each other by signs and motions.

They now proceed wholly by stratagem and ambuscade. Having discovered their enemies, they send to reconnoitre them; and a council is immediately held, during which they speak only in whispers, to consider of the intelligence imparted by those who were sent out.

The attack is generally made just before day-break, at which period they suppose their foes to be in their soundest sleep. Throughout the whole of the preceding night they will lie flat upon their faces, without stirring; and make their approaches in the same posture, creeping upon their hands and feet, till they are got within bowshot of those they have destined to destruction. On a signal given by the chief warrior, to which the whole body makes

answer by the most hideous yells, they all start up, and discharging their arrows in the same instant, without giving their adversaries time to recover from the confusion into which they are thrown, pour in upon them with their war-clubs or tomahawks.

The Indians think there is little glory to be acquired from attacking their enemies openly in the field; their greatest pride is to surprise and destroy. They seldom engage without a manifest appearance of advantage. If they find the enemy on their guard, too strongly entrenched, or superior in numbers, they retire, provided there is an opportunity of doing so. And they esteem it the greatest qualification of a chief warrior, to be able to manage an attack, so as to destroy as many of the enemy as possible, at the expence of a few men.

Sometimes they secure themselves behind trees, hillocks, or stones, and having given one or two rounds, retire before they are discovered. Europeans, who are unacquainted with this method of fighting, too often find to their cost the destructive efficacy of it.

General Braddock was one of this unhappy number. Marching, in the year 1755, to attack Fort Duquesne, he was intercepted by a party of French and confederate Indians in their interest, who by this insidious method of engaging, found means to defeat his army, which consisted of about two thousand brave and well disciplined troops. So securely were the Indians posted, that the English scarcely knew from whence or by whom they were thus annoyed. During the whole of the engagement, the latter had scarcely a sight of an enemy; and were obliged to retreat, without the satisfaction of being able to take the least degree of revenge for the havoc made

among  
with h  
great m  
enemic  
wound

Wh  
proach  
attack,  
ensues.  
and th  
know  
alive in  
most e  
figure  
and rec  
flair,  
not to  
the Atl

I hav  
once bo  
ded to  
folation  
Every  
my rem  
greater  
dians, w  
enemy.

As a c  
in the y  
not appe  
but will  
ferocity  
fert it, a  
the digre  
renders

among them. The General paid for his temerity with his life, and was accompanied in his fall by a great number of brave fellows; whilst his invincible enemies had only two or three of their number wounded.

When the Indians succeed in their silent approaches, and are able to force the camp which they attack, a scene of horror that exceeds description, ensues. The savage fierceness of the conquerors, and the desperation of the conquered, who well know what they have to expect should they fall alive into the hands of the assailants, occasion the most extraordinary exertions on both sides. The figure of the combatants, all besmeared with black and red paint, and covered with the blood of the slain, their horrid yells, and ungovernable fury, are not to be conceived by those who have never crossed the Atlantic.

I have frequently been a spectator of them, and once bore a part in a similar scene. But what added to the horror of it was, that I had not the consolation of being able to oppose their savage attacks. Every circumstance of the adventure still dwells on my remembrance, and enables me to describe with greater perspicuity the brutal fierceness of the Indians, when they have surprised or overpowered an enemy.

As a detail of the massacre at Fort William Henry in the year 1757, the scene to which I refer, cannot appear foreign to the design of this publication, but will serve to give my readers a just idea of the ferocity of this people, I shall take the liberty to insert it, apologizing at the same time for the length of the digression, and those egotisms which the relation renders unavoidable.

General Webb, who commanded the English army in North-America, which was then encamped at Fort Edward, having intelligence that the French troops under Monsi. Montcalm were making some movements towards Fort William Henry, he detached a corps of about fifteen hundred men, consisting of English and Provincials, to strengthen the garrison. In this party I went as a volunteer among the latter.

The apprehensions of the English General were not without foundation; for the day after our arrival we saw Lake George (formerly Lake Sacrament) to which it lies contiguous, covered with an immense number of boats; and in a few hours we found our lines attacked by the French General, who had just landed with eleven thousand Regulars and Canadians, and two thousand Indians. Colonel Monro, a brave officer, commanded in the Fort, and had no more than two thousand three hundred men with him, our detachment included.

With these he made a gallant defence, and probably would have been able at last to preserve the Fort, had he been properly supported, and permitted to continue his efforts. On every summons to surrender sent by the French General, who offered the most honourable terms, his answer repeatedly was, that he yet found himself in a condition to repel the most vigorous attacks his besiegers were able to make; and if he thought his present force insufficient, he could soon be supplied with a greater number from the adjacent army.

But the Colonel having acquainted General Webb with his situation, and desired he would send him some fresh troops, the General dispatched a messenger to him with a letter, wherein he informed him

that i  
fore  
the b  
into  
diatel  
the g

The  
guard  
Mont  
perfor  
ed to  
that h  
surren  
send i

The  
delive  
" this  
brave  
it, an  
the co  
than h  
tered

In  
son ha  
out w  
vered  
Edwar  
of the

The  
as loo  
sisting  
and cl  
on the  
of the

that it was not in his power to assist him, and therefore gave him orders to surrender up the Fort on the best terms he could procure. This packet fell into the hands of the French General, who immediately sent a flag of truce, desiring a conference with the governor.

They accordingly met, attended only by a small guard, in the centre between the lines; when Mons. Montcalm told the Colonel, that he was come in person to demand possession of the Fort, as it belonged to the king his master. The Colonel replied, that he knew not how that could be, nor should he surrender it up whilst it was in his power to defend it.

The French General rejoined, at the same time delivering the packet into the Colonel's hand, "By this authority do I make the requisition." The brave Governor had no sooner read the contents of it, and was convinced that such was the orders of the commander in chief, and not to be disobeyed, than he hung his head in silence, and reluctantly entered into a negociation.

In consideration of the gallant defence the garrison had made, they were to be permitted to march out with all the honours of war, to be allowed covered waggons to transport their baggage to Fort Edward, and a guard to protect them from the fury of the savages.

The morning after the capitulation was signed, as soon as day broke, the whole garrison, now consisting of about two thousand men, besides women and children, were drawn up within the lines, and on the point of marching off, when great numbers of the Indians gathered about, and began to plunder,



We were at first in hopes that this was their only view, and suffered them to proceed without opposition. Indeed it was not in our power to make any, had we been so inclined; for though we were permitted to carry off our arms, yet we were not allowed a single round of ammunition. In these hopes however we were disappointed: for presently some of them began to attack the sick and wounded, when such as were not able to crawl into the ranks, notwithstanding they endeavoured to avert the fury of their enemies by their shrieks or groans, were soon dispatched.

Here we were fully in expectation that the disturbance would have concluded; and our little army began to move; but in a short time we saw the front division driven back, and discovered that we were entirely encircled with the savages. We expected every moment that the guard, which the French, by the articles of capitulation, had agreed to allow us, would have arrived, and put an end to our apprehensions; but none appeared. The Indians now began to strip every one without exception of their arms and clothes, and those who made the least resistance felt the weight of their tomahawks.

I happened to be in the rear division, but it was not long before I shared the fate of my companions. Three or four of the savages laid hold of me, and whilst some held their weapons over my head, the others soon disrobed me of my coat, waistcoat, hat, and buckles, omitting not to take from me what money I had in my pocket. As this was transacted close by the passage that led from the lines on to the plain, near which a French sentinel was posted, I ran to him and claimed his protection; but he only called me an English dog, and thrust me with violence back again into the midst of the Indians.



I now endeavoured to join a body of our troops that were crowded together at some distance; but innumerable were the blows that were made at me with different weapons as I passed on; luckily, however, the savages were so close together, that they could not strike at me without endangering each other. Notwithstanding which, one of them found means to make a thrust at me with a spear, which grazed my side, and from another I received a wound, with the same kind of weapon, in my ankle. At length I gained the spot where my countrymen stood, and forced myself into the midst of them. But before I got thus far out of the hands of the Indians, the collar and wristbands of my shirt were all that remained of it, and my flesh was scratched and torn in many places by their savage gripes.

By this time the war whoop was given, and the Indians began to murder those that were nearest to them without distinction. It is not in the power of words to give any tolerable idea of the horrid scene that now ensued; men, women, and children were dispatched in the most wanton and cruel manner, and immediately scalped. Many of these savages drank the blood of their victims, as it flowed warm from the fatal wound.

We now perceived, though too late to avail us, that we were to expect no relief from the French; and that, contrary to the agreement they had so lately signed to allow us a sufficient force to protect us from these insults, they tacitly permitted them; for I could plainly perceive the French officers walking about at some distance, discoursing together with apparent unconcern. For the honour of human nature, I would hope that this flagrant breach of every sacred law, proceeded rather from the savage disposition of the Indians, which I acknowledge it is

sometimes almost impossible to controul, and which might now unexpectedly have arrived to a pitch not easily to be restrained, than to any premeditated design in the French commander. An unprejudiced observer would, however, be apt to conclude, that a body of ten thousand christian troops, most christian troops, had it in their power to prevent the massacre from becoming so general. But whatever was the cause from which it arose, the consequences of it were dreadful, and not to be paralleled in modern history.

As the circle in which I stood inclosed by this time was much thinned, and death seemed to be approaching with hasty strides, it was proposed by some of the most resolute to make one vigorous effort, and endeavour to force our way through the savages, the only probable method of preserving our lives that now remained. This, however desperate, was resolved on, and about twenty of us sprung at once into the midst of them.

In a moment we were all separated, and what was the fate of my companions I could not learn till some months after, when I found that only six or seven of them effected their design. Intent only on my own hazardous situation, I endeavoured to make my way through my savage enemies in the best manner possible. And I have often been astonished since, when I have recollected with what composure I took, as I did, every necessary step for my preservation. Some I overturned, being at that time young and athletic, and others I passed by, dextrously avoiding their weapons; till at last two very stout chiefs, of the most savage tribes, as I could distinguish by their dress, whose strength I could not resist, laid hold of me by each arm, and began to force me through the crowd.

I no  
but th  
fatiate  
they v  
lay at  
yards,  
I coul  
he had  
close b  
his hol  
voured  
being  
probab  
other a  
the op  
party  
and sto  
had tak  
the gen  
into his  
this ad

I had  
when a  
hitherto  
would  
stand fo  
savages.  
assistanc  
lay hold  
my side  
death.  
for a m  
ferer; I  
any me

I now  
we were

I now resigned myself to my fate, not doubting but that they intended to dispatch me, and then to satiate their vengeance with my blood, as I found they were hurrying me towards a retired swamp that lay at some distance. But before we had got many yards, an English gentleman of some distinction, as I could discover by his breeches, the only covering he had on, which were of fine scarlet velvet, rushed close by us. One of the Indians instantly relinquished his hold, and springing on this new object, endeavoured to seize him as his prey; but the gentleman being strong, threw him on the ground, and would probably have got away, had not he who held my other arm quitted me to assist his brother. I seized the opportunity, and hastened away to join another party of English troops that were yet unbroken, and stood in a body at some distance. But before I had taken many steps, I hastily cast my eye towards the gentleman, and saw the Indians tomahawk gash into his back, and heard him utter his last groan; this added both to my speed and desperation.

I had left this shocking scene but a few yards, when a fine boy about twelve years of age, that had hitherto escaped, came up to me, and begged that I would let him lay hold of me, so that he might stand some chance of getting out of the hands of the savages. I told him that I would give him every assistance in my power, and to this purpose bid him lay hold; but in a few moments he was torn from my side, and by his shrieks I judge was soon put to death. I could not help forgetting my own cares for a minute, to lament the fate of so young a sufferer; but it was utterly impossible for me to take any methods to prevent it.

I now got once more into the midst of friends, but we were unable to afford each other any succour.

As this was the division that had advanced the farthest from the fort, I thought there might be a possibility (though but a bare one) of my forcing my way through the outer ranks of the Indians, and getting to a neighbouring wood, which I perceived at some distance. I was still encouraged to hope by the almost miraculous preservation I had already experienced.

Nor were my hopes in vain, or the efforts I made ineffectual. Suffice it to say, that I reached the wood; but by the time I had penetrated a little way into it, my breath was so exhausted, that I threw myself into a break, and lay for some minutes apparently at the last gasp. At length I recovered the power of respiration; but my apprehensions returned with all their former force, when I saw several savages pass by, probably in pursuit of me, at no very great distance. In this situation I knew not whether it was better to proceed, or endeavour to conceal myself where I lay, till night came on; fearing, however, that they would return the same way, I thought it most prudent to get further from the dreadful scene of my distresses. Accordingly, striking into another part of the wood, I hastened on as fast as the briers and the loss of one of my shoes would permit me; and after a slow progress of some hours, gained a hill that overlooked the plain which I had just left, from whence I could discern that the bloody storm still raged with unabated fury.

But not to tire my readers, I shall only add, that after passing three days without subsistence, and enduring the severity of the cold dews for three nights, I at length reached Fort Edward; where with proper care my body soon recovered its wonted strength, and my mind, as far as the recollection of the late melancholy events would permit, its usual composure.

It w  
killed  
fatal d  
them a  
able ac  
countr  
captivi

The  
soon af  
to ende  
pulation  
remain  
troops  
Edward  
would  
left to  
of so m  
to whol  
such an  
survive.  
ken hea  
an hono

I mea  
as the i  
as an a  
omit th  
that sha  
small-po  
the Eu  
made at  
done.  
of that  
ding it,  
in a stat  
throw o  
rations

It was computed that fifteen hundred persons were killed or made prisoners by these savages during this fatal day. Many of the latter were carried off by them and never returned. A few, through favourable accidents, found their way back to their native country, after having experienced a long and severe captivity.

The brave Colonel Munro had hastened away, soon after the confusion began, to the French camp, to endeavour to procure the guard agreed by the stipulation; but his application proving ineffectual, he remained there till General Webb sent a party of troops to demand and protect him back to Fort Edward. But these unhappy occurrences, which would probably have been prevented, had he been left to pursue his own plans, together with the loss of so many brave fellows, murdered in cold blood, to whose valour he had been so lately a witness, made such an impression on his mind, that he did not long survive. He died in about three months of a broken heart, and of truth might be said, that he was an honour to his country.

I mean not to point out the following circumstance as the immediate judgment of heaven, and intended as an atonement for this slaughter; but I cannot omit that very few of those different tribes of Indians that shared in it ever lived to return home. The small-pox, by means of their communication with the Europeans, found its way among them, and made an equal havock to what they themselves had done. The methods they pursued on the first attack of that malignant disorder, to abate the fever attending it, rendered it fatal. Whilst their blood was in a state of fermentation, and nature was striving to throw out the peccant matter, they checked her operations by plunging into the water: the consequence

was that they died by hundreds. The few that survived were transformed by it into hideous objects, and bore with them to the grave deep-indented marks of this much-dreaded disease.

Monsieur Montcalm fell soon after on the plains of Quebec.

That the unprovoked cruelty of this commander was not approved of by the generality of his countrymen, I have since been convinced of by many proofs. One only, however, which I received from a person who was a witness to it, shall I at present give. A Canadian merchant, of some consideration, having heard of the surrender of the English fort, celebrated the fortunate event with great rejoicings and hospitality, according to the custom of that country; but no sooner did the news of the massacre which ensued reach his ears, than he put an immediate stop to the festivity, and exclaimed in the severest terms against the inhuman permission; declaring at the same time, that those who had connived at it had thereby drawn down, on that part of their king's dominions, the vengeance of Heaven. To this he added, that he much feared the total loss of them would deservedly be the consequence. How truly this prediction has been verified, we well know.

But to return—Though the Indians are negligent in guarding against surprises, they are alert and dextrous in surprising their enemies. To their caution and perseverance in stealing on the party they design to attack, they add that admirable talent, or rather instinctive qualification I have already described, of tracing out those they are in pursuit of. On the smoothest grass, on the hardest earth, and even on the very stones, will they discover the traces of an

enen  
dista  
whet  
way,  
How  
the  
their  
to d  
it.

W  
tory  
patch  
carry  
to tal  
retur  
much

At  
seize  
plac  
hand  
the s  
draw  
kept  
a few  
term  
ing t  
ceeds  
of th  
geanc

If  
and s  
them  
any  
prehe  
media

enemy, and by the shape of the footsteps, and the distance between the prints, distinguish not only whether it is a man or a woman who has passed that way, but even the nation to which they belong. However incredible this might appear, yet from the many proofs I received whilst among them of their amazing sagacity in this point, I see no reason to discredit even these extraordinary exertions of it.

When they have overcome an enemy, and victory is no longer doubtful, the conquerors first dispatch all such as they think they shall not be able to carry off without great trouble, and then endeavour to take as many prisoners as possible; after this they return to scalp those who are either dead, or too much wounded to be taken with them.

At this business they are exceedingly expert. They seize the head of the disabled or dead enemy, and placing one of their feet on the neck, twist their left hand in the hair; by this means having extended the skin that covers the top of the head, they draw out their scalping knives, which are always kept in good order for this cruel purpose, and with a few dextrous strokes take off the part that is termed the scalp. They are so expeditious in doing this, that the whole time required scarcely exceeds a minute. These they preserve as monuments of their prowess, and likewise as proofs of the vengeance they have inflicted on their enemies.

If two Indians seize in the same instant a prisoner, and seem to have an equal claim, the contest between them is soon decided; for to put a speedy end to any dispute that might arise, the person that is apprehensive he shall lose his expected reward, immediately has recourse to his tomahawk or war-club;



and knocks on the head the unhappy cause of their contention.

Having completed their purposes, and made as much havock as possible, they immediately retire towards their own country, with the spoil they have acquired, for fear of being pursued.

Should this be the case, they make use of many stratagems to elude the searches of their pursuers. They sometimes scatter leaves, sand, or dust over the prints of their feet; sometimes tread in each other's footsteps; and sometimes lift their feet so high, and tread so lightly, as not to make any impression on the ground. But if they find all these precautions unavailing, and that they are near being overtaken, they first dispart and scalp their prisoners, and then dividing, each endeavours to regain his native country by a different route. This prevents all further pursuit; for their pursuers now despairing, either of gratifying their revenge, or of releasing those of their friends who were made captives, return home.

If the successful party is so lucky as to make good their retreat unmolested, they hasten with the greatest expedition to reach a country where they may be perfectly secure; and that their wounded companions may not retard their flight, they carry them by turns in litters, or if it is in the winter season, draw them on sledges.

Their litters are made in a rude manner of the branches of trees. Their sledges consist of two small thin boards, about a foot wide when joined, and near six feet long. The fore-part is turned up, and the sides are bordered with small bands. The Indians draw these carriages with great ease, be they ever so much loaded, by means of a string which

passed  
Metu  
the f  
in th  
wrou

Th  
with  
ney i  
victo  
the c  
along  
and r  
Besid  
which  
at the

No  
ken b  
New-  
alone,  
lance  
her el  
her co

So  
consist  
wives,  
New-  
vicinit  
length  
ple, fo  
with h  
satisfie  
treated  
three h  
them t



passes round the breast. This collar is called a Metump, and is in use throughout America, both in the settlements and the internal parts. Those used in the latter are made of leather, and very curiously wrought.

The prisoners during their march are guarded with the greatest care. During the day, if the journey is over land, they are always held by some of the victorious party; if by water, they are fastened to the canoe. In the night time they are stretched along the ground quite naked, with their legs, arms, and neck fastened to hooks fixed in the ground. Besides this, cords are tied to their arms or legs, which are held by an Indian, who instantly awakes at the least motion of them.

Notwithstanding such precautions are usually taken by the Indians, it is recorded in the annals of New-England, that one of the weaker sex, almost alone, and unassisted, found means to elude the vigilance of a party of warriors, and not only to make her escape from them, but to revenge the cause of her countrymen.

Some years ago a small band of Canadian Indians, consisting of ten warriors, attended by two of their wives, made an irruption into the back settlements of New-England. They lurked for some time in the vicinity of one of the most exterior towns, and at length, after having killed and scalped several people, found means to take prisoner a woman who had with her a son of about twelve years of age. Being satisfied with the execution they had done, they retreated towards their native country, which lay at three hundred miles distance, and carried off with them their two captives.

The second night of their retreat, the woman, whose name, if I mistake not, was Rowe, formed a resolution worthy of the most intrepid hero. She thought she should be able to get from her hands the manacles by which they were confined, and determined if she did so to make a desperate effort for the recovery of her freedom. To this purpose, when she concluded that her conquerors were in their soundest sleep, she strove to slip the cords from her hands. In this she succeeded; and cautioning her son, whom they had suffered to go unbound, in a whisper, against being surprised at what she was about to do, she removed to a distance, with great wariness, the defensive weapons of the Indians, which lay by their sides.

Having done this, she put one of the tomahawks into the hands of the boy, bidding him to follow her example: and taking another herself, fell upon the sleeping Indians, several of whom she instantly dispatched. But her attempt was nearly frustrated by the imbecility of her son, who wanting both strength and resolution, made a feeble stroke at one of them, which only served to awaken him; she however sprung at the rising warrior, and before he could recover his arms, made him sink under the weight of her tomahawk; and this she alternately did to all the rest, except one of the women who awoke in time, and made her escape.

The heroine then took off the scalps of her vanquished enemies, and seizing also those they were carrying away with them as proofs of their success, she returned in triumph to the town from whence she had so lately been dragged, to the great astonishment of her neighbours, who could scarcely credit their senses, or the testimonies she bore of her Amazonian intrepidity.

Dur  
sing t  
these o  
" am a  
" tures  
" tude.  
" go to  
" accou  
fary into  
which t

When  
they set  
their fri  
expediti  
give, de  
the num  
they hav

It is d  
idea I ca  
of the f  
continued  
is exhaust  
elevation  
of much  
notes by  
Both of t  
tance.

Whilst  
they are d  
motionless  
is perform  
particulars  
neral term

During their march they oblige their prisoners to sing their death-song, which generally consists of these or similar sentences: "I am going to die, I am about to suffer; but I will bear the severest tortures my enemies can inflict with becoming fortitude. I will die like a brave man, and I shall then go to join the chiefs that have suffered on the same account." These songs are continued with necessary intervals, until they reach the village or camp to which they are going.

When the warriors are arrived within hearing, they set up different cries, which communicate to their friends a general history of the success of the expedition. The number of the death-cries they give, declare how many of their own party are lost; the number of war-whoops, the number of prisoners they have taken.

It is difficult to describe these cries, but the best idea I can give of them is, that the former consists of the sound *Whoo, Whoo, Whoop*, which is continued in a long shrill tone, nearly till the breath is exhausted, and then broken off with a sudden elevation of the voice. The latter is a loud cry, of much the same kind, which is modulated into notes by the hand being placed before the mouth. Both of them might be heard to a considerable distance.

Whilst these are uttering, the persons to whom they are designed to convey the intelligence, continue motionless and all attention. When this ceremony is performed, the whole village issue out to learn the particulars of the relation they have just heard in general terms, and according as the news proves mourn-

H h

ful or the contrary, they answer by so many acclamations or cries of lamentation.

Being by this time arrived at the village or camp, the women and children arm themselves with sticks and bludgeons, and form themselves into two ranks, through which the prisoners are obliged to pass. The treatment they undergo before they reach the extremity of the line, is very severe. Sometimes they are so beaten over the head and face, as to have scarcely any remains of life; and happy would it be for them if by this usage an end was put to their wretched beings. But their tormentors take care that none of the blows they give prove mortal, as they wish to reserve the miserable sufferers for more severe inflictions.

After having undergone this introductory discipline, they are bound hand and foot, whilst the chiefs hold a council in which their fate is determined. Those who are decreed to be put to death by the usual torments, are delivered to the chief of the warriors; such as are to be spared, are given into the hands of the chief of the nation: so that in a short time all the prisoners may be assured of their fate, as the sentence now pronounced is irrevocable. The former they term being consigned to the house of death, the latter to the house of grace.

Such captives as are pretty far advanced in life, and have acquired great honour by their warlike deeds, always atone for the blood they have spilt, by the tortures of fire. Their success in war is readily known by the blue marks upon their breasts and arms, which are as legible to the Indians as letters are to Europeans.

The manner in which these hieroglyphics are made, is by breaking the skin with the teeth of fish,

or the  
the so  
Picts  
at the  
action  
indeli

The  
the pl  
centre  
and ev  
of a c  
are th  
around  
their d

The  
suffer t  
lix ma  
an aud  
formed  
mies th  
not ever  
voking  
them.  
the suffe  
wife wo

There  
make u  
are only  
rally use

Whilf  
mies, an  
been ma  
had then  
cruelties

or sharpened flints, dipped in a kind of ink made of the foot of pitch pine. Like those of the ancient Picts of Britain, these are esteemed ornamental; and at the same time they serve as registers of the heroic actions of the warrior who thus bears about him indelible marks of his valour.

The prisoners destined to death are soon led to the place of execution, which is generally in the centre of the camp or village; where, being stript, and every part of their bodies blackened, the skin of a crow or raven is fixed on their heads. They are then bound to a stake, with faggots heaped around them, and obliged, for the last time, to sing their death song.

The warriors, for such it is only who commonly suffer this punishment, now performed in a more prolix manner this sad solemnity. They recount with an audible voice all the brave actions they have performed, and pride themselves in the number of enemies they have killed. In this rehearsal they spare not even their tormentors, but strive, by every provoking tale, they can invent, to irritate and insult them. Sometimes this has the desired effect, and the sufferers are dispatched sooner than they otherwise would have been.

There are many other methods which the Indians make use of to put their prisoners to death, but these are only occasional; that of burning is most generally used.

Whilst I was at the chief town of the Ottagau-mies, an Illinois Indian was brought in, who had been made prisoner by one of their war-parties. I had then an opportunity of seeing the customary cruelties inflicted by these people on their captives,

through the minutest part of their process. After the previous steps necessary to this condemnation, he was carried, early in the morning, to a little distance from the town, where he was bound to a tree.

This being done, all the boys, who amounted to a great number, as the place was populous, were permitted to amuse themselves with shooting their arrows at the unhappy victim. As there were none of them more than twelve years old, and were placed at a considerable distance, they had not strength to penetrate to the vital parts, so that the poor wretch stood pierced with arrows, and suffering the consequent agonies, for more than two days.

During this time he sung his warlike exploits. He recapitulated every stratagem he had made use of to surprise his enemies: He boasted of the quantity of scalps he possessed, and enumerated the prisoners he had taken. He then described the different barbarous methods by which he had put the latter to death, and seemed even then to receive inconceivable pleasure from the recital of the horrid tale.

But he dwelt more particularly on the cruelties he had practised on such of the kindred of his present tormentors, as had fallen into his hands; endeavouring by these aggravated insults to induce them to increase his tortures, that he might be able to give greater proofs of fortitude. Even in the last struggles of life, when he was no longer able to vent in words the indignant provocation his tongue would have uttered, a smile of mingled scorn and triumph sat on his countenance.

T  
sider  
one  
degr  
the  
divid  
warr  
thirft  
for f  
vage

I  
unde  
to tel  
and  
death  
taken  
vial  
vifed  
havin  
bodie  
which  
enjoy

Th  
insult  
could  
off th  
torment  
ping  
which

Inn  
the co  
pen to  
that I  
to ex  
howev

This method of tormenting their enemies is considered by the Indians as productive of more than one beneficial consequence. It satiates, in a greater degree, that diabolical lust of revenge, which is the predominant passion in the breast of every individual of every tribe, and it gives the growing warriors an early propensity to that cruelty and thirst for blood, which is so necessary a qualification for such as would be thoroughly skilled in their savage art of war.

I have been informed, that an Indian, who was under the hands of his tormentors, had the audacity to tell them, that they were ignorant old women, and did not know how to put brave prisoners to death. He acquainted them that he had heretofore taken some of their warriors, and instead of the trivial punishments they inflicted on him, he had devised for them the most excruciating torments; that having bound them to a stake, he had stuck their bodies full of sharp splinters of turpentine wood, to which he then set fire, and dancing around them, enjoyed the agonizing pangs of the flaming victims.

This bravado, which carried with it a degree of insult, that even the accustomed ear of an Indian could not listen to unmoved, threw his tormentors off their guard, and shortened the duration of his torments; for one of the chiefs ran to him, and ripping out his heart, stopped with it the mouth from which had issued such provoking language.

Innumerable are the stories that may be told of the courage and resolution of the Indians, who happen to be made prisoners by their adversaries. Many that I have heard are so astonishing, that they seem to exceed the utmost limits of credibility; it is, however, certain that these savages are possessed with



many heroic qualities, and bear every species of misfortune with a degree of fortitude which has not been outdone by any of the ancient heroes either of Greece or of Rome.

Notwithstanding these acts of severity exercised by the Indians towards those of their own species, who fall into their hands, some tribes of them have been remarked for their moderation to such female prisoners, belonging to the English colonies, as have happened to be taken by them. Women of great beauty have frequently been carried off by them, and during a march of three or four hundred miles, thro' their retired forests, have lain by their sides without receiving any insult, and their chastity has remained inviolate. Instances have happened where female captives, who have been pregnant at the time of their being taken, have found the pangs of childbirth come upon them in the midst of solitary woods, and savages their only companions; yet from these, savages as they were, have they received every assistance their situation would admit of, and been treated with a degree of delicacy and humanity they little expected.

This forbearance, it must be acknowledged, does not proceed altogether from their disposition, but is only inherent in those who have held some communication with the French missionaries. Without intending that their natural enemies, the English, should enjoy the benefit of their labours, these fathers have taken great pains to inculcate on the minds of the Indians the general principles of humanity, which has diffused itself through their manners, and has proved of public utility.

Those prisoners that are consigned to the house of grace, and these are commonly the young men, wo-

men  
who  
to d

A  
noti  
expe  
whic  
have  
fied  
depr  
fange  
yout

T  
othe  
recei  
and  
woun  
then  
table

W  
deavo  
them  
must  
them  
shall  
the lo  
will a

If  
to the  
hand  
whom  
foor.  
engag  
great



men, and children, await the disposal of the chiefs, who, after the execution of such as are condemned to die, hold a council for this purpose.

A herald is sent round the village or camp, to give notice that such as have lost any relations in the late expedition, are desired to attend the distribution which is about to take place. Those women who have lost their sons or husbands, are generally satisfied in the first place; after these, such as have been deprived of friends of a more remote degree of consanguinity, or who choose to adopt some of the youth.

The division being made, which is done, as in other cases, without the least dispute, those who have received any share, lead them to their tents or huts; and having unbound them, wash and dress their wounds, if they happen to have received any; they then clothe them, and give them the most comfortable and refreshing food their store will afford.

Whilst their new domestics are feeding, they endeavour to administer consolation to them; they tell them that as they are redeemed from death, they must now be cheerful and happy; and if they serve them well, without murmuring or repining, nothing shall be wanting to make them such atonement for the loss of their country and friends as circumstances will allow of.

If any men are spared, they are commonly given to the widows that have lost their husbands by the hand of the enemy, should there be any such, to whom, if they happen to prove agreeable, they are soon married. But should the dame be otherwise engaged, the life of him who falls to her lot is in great danger; especially if she fancies that her late

husband wants a slave in the country of spirits, to which he is gone.

When this is the case, a number of young men take the devoted captive to some distance, and dispatch him without any ceremony; after he has been spared by the council, they consider him of too little consequence to be entitled to the torments allotted to those who have been judged worthy of them.

The women are usually distributed to the men, from whom they do not fail of meeting with a favourable reception. The boys and girls are taken into the families of such as have need of them, and are considered as slaves; and it is not uncommon that they are sold in the same capacity to the European traders that come among them.

The Indians have no idea of moderating the ravages of war, by sparing their prisoners, and entering into a negotiation with the band from whom they have been taken for an exchange. All that are captivated by both parties, are either put to death, adopted, or made slaves of. And so particular are every nation in this respect, that if any of their tribe, even a warrior, should be taken prisoner, and by chance be received into the house of grace, either as an adopted person or a slave, and should afterwards make his escape, they will by no means receive him, or acknowledge him as one of their band.

The condition of such as are adopted differs not in any one instance from the children of the nation to which they now belong. They assume all the rights of those whose places they supply, and frequently make no difficulty of going in the war parties against their own countrymen. Should, however, any of these by chance make their escape,

and  
unna  
defen  
facto

Th  
slaves  
who  
the I  
super  
have  
missio  
these  
by fo  
luable

The  
gined  
vent m  
portun  
increas  
traders

The  
not hov  
fathers  
cruelty  
between  
greater  
dour.  
revenge  
liquors,  
ed, and  
rately fo  
wonted  
to surpri

and be afterwards retaken, they are esteemed as unnatural children and ungrateful persons, who have deserted and made war upon their parents and benefactors, and are treated with uncommon severity.

That part of the prisoners which are considered as slaves, are generally distributed among the chiefs; who frequently make presents of some of them to the European governors of the out-posts, or to the superintendants or commissaries of Indian affairs. I have been informed that it was the Jesuits and French missionaries that first occasioned the introduction of these unhappy captives into the settlements, and who by so doing taught the Indians that they were valuable.

Their views indeed were laudable, as they imagined that by this method they should not only prevent much barbarity and bloodshed, but find the opportunities of spreading their religion among them increased. To this purpose they encouraged the traders to purchase such slaves as they met with.

The good effects of this mode of proceeding were not however equal to the expectations of these pious fathers. Instead of being the means of preventing cruelty and bloodshed, it only caused the dissensions between the Indian nations to be carried on with a greater degree of violence, and with unremitted ardour. The prize they fought for being no longer revenge or fame, but the acquirement of spiritous liquors, for which their captives were to be exchanged, and of which almost every nation is immoderately fond, they fought for their enemies with unwonted alacrity, and were constantly on the watch to surprise and carry them off.

It might still be said that fewer of the captives are tormented and put to death, since these expectations of receiving so valuable a consideration for them have been excited, than there usually had been; but it does not appear that their accustomed cruelty to the warriors they take, is in the least abated; their natural desire of vengeance must be gratified; they now only become more assiduous in securing a greater number of young prisoners, whilst those who are made captive in their defence, are tormented and put to death as before.

The missionaries finding, that, contrary to their wishes, their zeal had only served to increase the sale of the noxious juices, applied to the governor of Canada, in the year 1693, for a prohibition of this baneful trade. An order was issued accordingly, but it could not put a total stop to it; the French *Couriers de Bois* were hardy enough to carry it on clandestinely, notwithstanding the penalty annexed to a breach of the prohibition was a considerable fine and imprisonment.

Some who were detected in the prosecution of it, withdrew into the Indian countries, where they intermarried with the natives, and underwent a voluntary banishment. These, however, being an abandoned and debauched set, their conduct contributed very little either towards reforming the manners of their new relations, or engaging them to entertain a favourable opinion of the religion they professed. Thus did these indefatigable religious men see their designs in some measure once more frustrated.

However, the emigration was productive of an effect which turned out to be beneficial to their nation. By the connection of these refugees with the Iroquois, Mississauges, Hurons, Miamies, Powto-

wotte  
and  
tions  
of th  
mona  
still r  
becar  
ple; a  
of the

An  
matio  
been  
every  
their  
dued  
on, it  
when  
pettic  
a state  
the w  
howev  
dicat

wottomies, Puants, Menomonies, Algonkins, &c. and the constant representations these various nations received from them of the power and grandeur of the French, to the aggrandisement of whose monarch, notwithstanding their banishment, they still retained their habitual inclinations, the Indians became insensibly prejudiced in favour of that people, and I am persuaded will take every opportunity of shewing their attachment to them.

And this even in despite of the disgraceful estimation they must be held by them, since they have been driven out of Canada; for the Indians consider every conquered people as in a state of vassalage to their conquerors. After one nation has finally subdued another, and a conditional submission is agreed on, it is customary for the chiefs of the conquered, when they sit in council with their subduers, to wear petticoats, as an acknowledgment that they are in a state of subjection, and ought to be ranked among the women. Their partiality to the French has however taken too deep root for time itself to eradicate it.

## CHAPTER X.

*Of their manner of making Peace, &c.*

THE wars that are carried on between the Indian nations are in general hereditary, and continue from age to age with a few interruptions. If a peace becomes necessary, the principal care of both parties is to avoid the appearance of making the first advances.

When they treat with an enemy, relative to a suspension of hostilities, the chief who is commissioned to undertake the negociation, if it is not brought about by the mediation of some neighbouring band, abates nothing of his natural haughtiness: even when the affairs of his country are in the worst situation, he makes no concessions; but endeavours to persuade his adversaries that it is their interest to put an end to the war.

Accidents sometimes contribute to bring about a peace between nations that otherwise could not be prevailed on to listen to terms of accommodation. An instance of this, which I heard of in almost every nation I passed through, I shall relate.

A  
ways  
Ottawa  
to, the  
One  
excuse  
towards  
ed La  
they  
ated  
these  
the fa  
As th  
discov  
file, t

For  
ed thi  
of the  
the co  
design

Not  
ed was  
with t  
not be  
tion to  
purpos  
and, t  
the hu  
large a  
do. T  
dred w  
they in

The  
force, a  
taken f

About eighty years ago, the Iroquois and Chipeways, two powerful nations, were at war with the Ottagumies and Saukies, who were much inferior to their adversaries both in numbers and strength. One winter near a thousand of the former made an excursion from Lake Ontario, by way of Toronto, towards the territories of their enemies. They coasted Lake Huron on its east and northern borders, till they arrived at the island of St Joseph, which is situated in the Straits of St Marie. There they crossed these Straits upon the ice, about fifteen miles below the falls, and continued their route still westward. As the ground was covered with snow, to prevent a discovery of their numbers, they marched in a single file, treading in each others footsteps.

Four Chipeway Indians, passing that way, observed this army, and readily guessed from the direction of their march, and the precautions they took, both the country to which they were hastening and their designs.

Notwithstanding the nation to which they belonged was at war with the Ottagumies, and in alliance with their invaders, yet from a principle which cannot be accounted for, they took an instant resolution to apprise the former of their danger. To this purpose they hastened away with their usual celerity, and, taking a circuit to avoid discovery, arrived at the hunting grounds of the Ottagumies, before so large a body, moving in so cautious a manner, could do. There they found a party of about four hundred warriors, some of whom were Saukies, whom they informed of the approach of their enemies.

The chiefs immediately collected their whole force, and held a council on the steps that were to be taken for their defence. As they were encumbered



with their families, it was impossible that they could retreat in time; they therefore determined to choose the most advantageous spot, and to give the Iroquois the best reception in their power.

Not far from the place where they then happened to be, stood two small lakes, between which ran a narrow neck of land about a mile in length, and only from twenty to forty yards in breadth. Concluding that the Iroquois intended to pass through this defile, the united bands divided their little party into two bodies of two hundred each. One of these took post at the extremity of the pass that lay nearest to their hunting grounds, which they immediately fortified with a breast-work formed of palisades; whilst the other body took a compass round one of the lakes; with a design to hem their enemies in when they had entered the defile.

Their stratagem succeeded; for no sooner had the whole of the Iroquois entered the pass, than, being provided with wood for the purpose, they formed a similar breast-work on the other extremity, and thus enclosed their enemies.

The Iroquois soon perceived their situation, and immediately held a council on the measures that were necessary to be pursued to extricate themselves. Unluckily for them, a thaw had just taken place, which had so far dissolved the ice as to render it impassable, and yet there still remained sufficient to prevent them from either passing over the lake on rafts, or from swimming across. In this dilemma it was agreed that they should endeavour to force one of the breast-works; but they soon found them too well defended to effect their purpose.

No  
usual  
they  
By th  
them  
some  
tempt

Th  
Ottag  
tions,  
and fi  
their  
exped  
they  
the sh  
in the

As  
in a  
musqu  
certed  
desper  
way  
could  
men.

Aft  
their  
mies  
furs  
Thus  
curfio  
to hav  
pelled  
ancien



Notwithstanding this disappointment, with the usual composure and unapprehensiveness of Indians, they amused themselves three or four days in fishing. By this time the ice being quite dissolved, they made themselves rafts, which they were enabled to do by some trees that fortunately grew on the spot, and attempted to pass one of the lakes.

They accordingly set off before day-break; but the Ottagaumies, who had been watchful of their motions, perceiving their design, detached one hundred and fifty men from each of their parties, to oppose their landing. These three hundred marched so expeditiously to the other side of the lake, that they reached it before their opponents had gained the shore, they being retarded by their poles sticking in the mud.

As soon as the confederates arrived, they poured in a very heavy fire, both from their bows and musquetry, on the Iroquois, which greatly disconcerted them; till the latter finding their situation desperate, leaped into the water, and fought their way through their enemies. This however they could not do without losing more than half their men.

After the Iroquois had landed, they made good their retreat, but were obliged to leave their enemies masters of the field, and in possession of all the furs they had taken during their winter's hunt. Thus dearly did they pay for an unprovoked excursion to such a distance from the rout they ought to have pursued, and to which they were only impelled by a sudden desire of cutting off some of their ancient enemies.

But had they known their strength, they might have destroyed every man of the party that opposed them; which even at the first onset was only inconsiderable, and when diminished by the action, totally unable to make any stand against them.

The victorious bands rewarded the Chipeways, who had been the means of their success, with a share of the spoils. They pressed them to take any quantity they chose of the richest of the furs, and sent them under an escort of fifty men to their own country. The disinterested Chipeways, as the Indians in general are seldom actuated by mercenary motives, for a considerable while refused these presents, but were at length persuaded to accept of them.

The brave and well concerted resistance here made by the Ottawaumies and Saukies, aided by the mediation of the Chipeways, who laying aside on this occasion the animosity they had so long borne those people, approved of the generous conduct of their four chiefs, were together the means of effecting a reconciliation between these nations, and in process of time united them all in the bands of amity.

And I believe that all the Indians inhabiting that extensive country which lies between Quebec, the banks of the Mississippi north of the Ouisconsin, and the settlements belonging to the Hudson's Bay company, are at present in a state of profound peace. When their restless dispositions will not suffer them to remain inactive, these northern Indians seldom commit hostilities on each other, but make excursions to the southward, against the Cherokees, Choctaws, Chickaws, or Illinois.

So  
they  
tion f  
case t  
These

A r  
who h  
ther f  
choser  
tensive  
bear b  
not in  
flag of  
with th  
most h  
stance  
friends  
rights  
Spirit  
unpun

The  
the Ca  
about f  
marble  
ly pain  
and ac  
birds;  
of the  
much e

Ever  
these pi  
band it  
treaties  
these o

Sometimes the Indians grow tired of a war which they have carried on against some neighbouring nation for many years with much success, and in this case they seek for mediators to begin a negotiation. These being obtained, the treaty is thus conducted :

A number of their own chiefs, joined by those who have accepted the friendly office, set out together for the country of their enemies ; such as are chosen for this purpose, are chiefs of the most extensive abilities, and of the greatest integrity. They bear before them the Pipe of Peace, which I need not inform my readers is of the same nature as a flag of truce among the Europeans, and is treated with the greatest respect and veneration, even by the most barbarous nations. I never heard of an instance wherein the bearers of this sacred badge of friendship were ever treated disrespectfully, or its rights violated. The Indians believe that the Great Spirit never suffers an infraction of this kind to go unpunished.

The Pipe of Peace, which is termed by the French the Calumet, for what reason I could never learn, is about four feet long. The bowl of it is made of red marble, and the stem of it of a light wood, curiously painted with hieroglyphics in various colours, and adorned with feathers of the most beautiful birds ; but it is not in my power to convey an idea of the various tints and pleasing ornaments of this much esteemed Indian implement.

Every nation has a different method of decorating these pipes, and they can tell at first sight to what band it belongs. It is used as an introduction to all treaties, and great ceremony attends the use of it on these occasions.

The assistant or aid-de-camp of the great warrior, when the chiefs are assembled and seated, fills it with tobacco mixed with the herbs before mentioned, taking care at the same time that no part of it touches the ground. When it is filled, he takes a coal that is thoroughly kindled, from a fire which is generally kept burning in the midst of the assembly, and places it on the tobacco.

As soon as it is sufficiently lighted, he throws off the coal. He then turns the stem of it towards the heavens; after this towards the earth, and now holding it horizontally, moves himself round till he has completed a circle; by the first action he is supposed to present it to the Great Spirit, whose aid is thereby supplicated; by the second, to avert any malicious interposition of the evil spirits; and by the third, to gain the protection of the spirits inhabiting the air, the earth, and the waters. Having thus secured the favour of those invisible agents, in whose power they suppose it is either to forward or obstruct the issue of their present deliberations, he presents it to the hereditary chief, who having taken two or three whiffs, blows the smoke from his mouth first towards heaven, and then around him upon the ground.

It is afterwards put in the same manner into the mouths of the ambassadors or strangers, who observe the same ceremony, then to the chief of the warriors, and to all the other chiefs in turn, according to their gradation. During this time the person who executes this honourable office holds the pipe slightly in his hand, as if he feared to press the sacred instrument; nor does any one presume to touch it but with his lips.

When the chiefs who are intrusted with the commission for making peace, approach the town or

camp  
and day  
occasio  
of their  
Peace,  
invite  
and fur  
negotia

A co  
and del  
put a st  
in the  
between  
peace t  
as have  
war-cl  
hatchet

A be  
which f  
cords  
into wh  
article

Ther  
of New  
into be  
inch lo  
on leat  
togethe  
what is

The  
white  
highly  
in as m  
or prec

camp to which they are going, they begin to sing and dance the songs and dances appropriated to this occasion. By this time the adverse party are apprised of their arrival, and, at the sight of the Pipe of Peace, divesting themselves of their wonted enmity, invite them to the habitation of the Great Chief, and furnish them with every conveniency during the negociation.

A council is then held; and when the speeches and debates are ended, if no obstructions arise to put a stop to the treaty, the painted hatchet is buried in the ground, as a memorial that all animosities between the contending nations have ceased, and a peace taken place. Among the ruder bands, such as have no communication with the Europeans, a war-club, painted red, is buried, instead of the hatchet.

A belt of wampum is also given on this occasion, which serves as a ratification of the peace, and records to the latest posterity, by the hieroglyphics into which the beads are formed, every stipulated article in the treaty.

These belts are made of shells found on the coasts of New-England and Virginia, which are sawed out into beads of an oblong form, about a quarter of an inch long, and round like other beads. Being strung on leather strings, and several of them sewed neatly together with fine sinewy threads, they then compose what is termed a belt of wampum.

The shells are generally of two colours, some white and others violet; but the latter are more highly esteemed than the former. They are held in as much estimation by the Indians, as gold, silver, or precious stones, are by the Europeans.

The belts are composed of ten, twelve, or a greater number of strings, according to the importance of the affair in agitation, or the dignity of the person to whom it is presented. On more trifling occasions, strings of these beads are presented by the chiefs to each other, and frequently worn by them about their necks, as a valuable ornament.

great  
and  
posse  
forts  
amon  
the E

TH  
made  
deer-  
ple,  
ture,  
are a  
is fix  
hand  
In th  
distan  
oppo

TH  
nies,  
dred  
to ph

## CHAPTER XI.

*Of their Games.*

AS I have before observed, the Indians are greatly addicted to gaming, and will even stake, and lose with compoture, all the valuables they are possessed of. They amuse themselves at several sorts of games, but the principal and most esteemed among them is that of the ball, which is not unlike the European game of tennis.

The balls they use are rather larger than those made use of at tennis, and are formed of a piece of deer-skin; which being moistened to render it supple, is stuffed hard with the hair of the same creature, and sewed with its sinews. The ball-sticks are about three feet long, at the end of which there is fixed a kind of racket, resembling the palm of the hand, and fashioned of thongs cut from a deer-skin. In these they catch the ball, and throw it to a great distance, if they are not prevented by some of the opposite party, who fly to intercept it.

This game is generally played by large companies, that sometimes consist of more than three hundred; and it is not uncommon for different bands to play against each other.

They begin by fixing two poles in the ground, at about six hundred yards apart, and one of these goals belong to each party of the combatants. The ball is thrown up high in the centre of the ground, and in a direct line between the goals; towards which each party endeavours to strike it, and whichever side first causes it to reach their own goal, reckons towards the game.

They are so exceeding dextrous in this manly exercise, that the ball is usually kept flying in different directions by the force of the rackets, without touching the ground during the whole contention; for they are not allowed to catch it with their hands: They run with amazing velocity in pursuit of each other, and when one is on the point of hurling it to a great distance, an antagonist overtakes him, and by a sudden stroke dashes down the ball.

They play with so much vehemence that they frequently wound each other, and sometimes a bone is broken; but notwithstanding these accidents, there never appears to be any spite or wanton exertions of strength to effect them, nor do any disputes ever happen between the parties.

There is another game also in use among them worthy of remark, and this is the game of the Bowl or Platter. This game is played between two persons only. Each person has six or eight little bones, not unlike a peach-stone either in size or shape, except they are quadrangular; two of the sides of which are coloured black, and the others white. These they throw up into the air, from whence they fall into a bowl or platter placed underneath, and made to spin round.

According as these bones present the white or black side upwards, they reckon the game; he that

happene  
similar  
game.

The  
yields  
umpire  
in the  
another

During  
agitated  
shout.  
sing the  
loading  
their fire

At  
move  
liberty  
universe  
are.



happens to have the greatest number turn up of a similar colour, counts five points; and forty is the game.

The winning party keeps his place, and the loser yields his to another who is appointed by one of the umpires; for a whole village is sometimes concerned in the party, and at times one band plays against another.

During this play, the Indians appear to be greatly agitated, and at every decisive throw set up a hideous shout. They make a thousand contortions, addressing themselves at the same time to the bones, and loading with imprecations the evil spirits that assist their successful antagonists.

At this game some will lose their apparel, all the moveables of their cabins, and sometimes even their liberty; notwithstanding there are no people in the universe more jealous of the latter than the Indians are.

## CHAPTER XII.

*Of their Marriage Ceremonies, &c.*

THE Indians allow of polygamy, and persons of every rank indulge themselves in this point. The chiefs in particular have a seraglio, which consists of an uncertain number, usually from six to twelve or fourteen. The lower ranks are permitted to take as many as there is a probability of their being able, with the children they may bear, to maintain. It is not uncommon for an Indian to marry two sisters; sometimes, if there happen to be more, the whole number; and notwithstanding this (as it appears to civilized nations) unnatural union, they all live in the greatest harmony.

The younger wives are submissive to the elder; and those who have no children, do such menial offices for those who are fertile, as causes their situation to differ but little from a state of servitude. However, they perform every injunction with the greatest cheerfulness, in hopes of gaining thereby the affection of their husband, that they in their turns may have the happiness of becoming mothers, and be entitled to the respect attendant on that state.

It i  
takes  
contin  
Such  
their  
hayton  
contin  
their i  
him to  
will n  
connec  
tion of  
not di  
any tin  
out fir  
the fan  
tery.

This  
which  
that ar  
latter a  
to thos  
hold w

The  
in their  
of their  
ders of

When  
on one  
consent,  
her pare  
prelimin  
the frien  
at the l

It is not uncommon for an Indian, although he takes to himself so many wives, to live in a state of continence with many of them for several years. Such as are not so fortunate as to gain the favour of their husband, by their submissive and prudent behaviour, and by that means to share in his embraces, continue in their virgin state during the whole of their lives, except they happen to be presented by him to some stranger chief, whose abode among them will not admit of his entering into a more lasting connection. In this case, they submit to the injunction of their husband without murmuring, and are not displeased with the temporary union. But if at any time it is known that they take this liberty without first receiving his consent, they are punished in the same manner as if they had been guilty of adultery.

This custom is more prevalent among the nations which lie into the interior parts, than among those that are nearer the settlements, as the manners of the latter are rendered more conformable in some points to those of the Europeans, by the intercourse they hold with them.

The Indian nations differ but little from each other in their marriage ceremonies, and less in the manner of their divorces. The tribes that inhabit the borders of Canada, make use of the following custom.

When a young Indian has fixed his inclinations on one of the other sex, he endeavours to gain her consent, and if he succeeds, it is never known that her parents ever obstruct their union. When every preliminary is agreed on, and the day appointed, the friends and acquaintance of both parties assemble, at the house or tent of the oldest relation of the

bridegroom, where a feast is prepared on the occasion.

The company who meet to assist at the festival are sometimes very numerous; they dance, they sing, and enter into every other diversion usually made use of on any of their public rejoicings.

When these are finished, all those who attended merely out of ceremony depart, and the bridegroom and bride are left alone, with three or four of the nearest and oldest relations of either side; those of the bridegroom being men, and those of the bride, women.

Presently the bride, attended by these few friends, having withdrawn herself for the purpose, appears at one of the doors of the house, and is led to the bridegroom, who stands ready to receive her. Having now taken their station, on a mat placed on the centre of the room, they lay hold of the extremities of a wand, about three feet long, by which they continue separated, whilst the old men pronounce some short harangues suitable to the occasion.

The married couple after this make a public declaration of the love and regard they entertain for each other, and still holding the rod between them dance and sing. When they have finished this part of the ceremony, they break the rod into as many pieces as there are witnesses present, who each take a piece, and preserve it with great care.

The bride is then reconducted out of the door at which she entered; where her young companions wait to attend her to her father's house; there the bridegroom is obliged to seek her, and the marriage is consummated. Very often the wife remains at

her father's house  
up her  
rally p  
his hal

Wh  
for the  
rally g  
tention  
conduc  
marriage  
of the c  
with th  
ed at th  
presence

This  
the separa  
ings or  
and after  
again.

When  
which h  
vided be  
a treasure  
be odd,  
half.

Thoug  
ness and  
of the In  
with her  
exceeded  
not a few  
ble attach  
before-ma  
a violatio

her father's house till she has a child, when she packs up her apparel, which is all the fortune she is generally possessed of, and accompanies her husband to his habitation.

When from any dislike a separation takes place, for they are seldom known to quarrel, they generally give their friends a few days notice of their intentions, and sometimes offer reasons to justify their conduct. The witnesses who were present at the marriage, meet on the day requested, at the house of the couple that are about to separate, and bringing with them the pieces of rod which they had received at their nuptials, throw them into the fire, in the presence of all the parties.

This is the whole of the ceremony required, and the separation is carried on without any murmurings or ill-will between the couple or their relations; and after a few months they are at liberty to marry again.

When a marriage is thus dissolved, the children, which have been produced from it, are equally divided between them; and as children are esteemed a treasure by the Indians, if the number happens to be odd, the woman is allowed to take the better half.

Though this custom seems to encourage fickleness and frequent separations, yet there are many of the Indians who have but one wife, and enjoy with her a state of conjugal happiness not to be exceeded in more refined societies. There are also not a few instances of women preserving an inviolable attachment to their husbands, except in the cases before-mentioned, which are not considered as either a violation of their chastity or fidelity.

Although I have said that the Indian nations differ very little from each other in their marriage ceremonies, there are some exceptions. The Naudowessies have a singular method of celebrating their marriages, which seems to bear no resemblance to those made use of by any other nation I passed through. When one of their young men has fixed on a young woman he approves of, he discovers his passion to her parents, who give him an invitation to come and live with them in their tent.

He accordingly accepts the offer, and by so doing engages to reside in it for a whole year, in the character of a menial servant. During this time he hunts, and brings all the game he kills to the family; by which means the father has an opportunity of seeing whether he is able to provide for the support of his daughter and the children that might be the consequence of their union. This however is only done whilst they are young men, and for their first wife, and not repeated like Jacob's servitudes.

When this period is expired, the marriage is solemnized after the custom of the country, in the following manner: Three or four of the oldest male relations of the bridegroom, and as many of the bride's, accompany the young couple from their respective tents, to an open part in the centre of the camp.

The chiefs and warriors, being here assembled to receive them, a party of the latter are drawn up into two ranks on each side of the bride and bridegroom immediately on their arrival. Their principal chiefs then acquaint the whole assembly with the design of their meeting, and tells them that the couple before them, meeting at the same time their names, are come to avow publicly their in-

tentic  
then  
ther  
Havi  
so, th  
over  
chief

Th  
his be  
ner h  
specta  
the m  
afford  
cultor

Di  
fies, t  
they a

Ad  
punish  
these  
instan  
of pur  
them.  
buted  
other

Am  
there  
and ne  
dern. v  
tion, l  
young  
opport  
mode  
singul

tentions of living together as man and wife. He then asks the two young people alternately, whether they desire that the union might take place. Having declared with an audible voice that they do so, the warriors fix their arrows, and discharge them over the heads of the married pair; this done, the chief pronounces them man and wife.

The bridegroom then turns round, and bending his body, takes his wife on his back, in which manner he carries her amidst the acclamations of the spectators to his tent. The ceremony is succeeded by the most plentiful feast the new married man can afford, and songs and dances, according to the usual custom, conclude the festival.

Divorces happen so seldom among the Naudowessies, that I had not an opportunity of learning how they are accomplished.

Adultery is esteemed by them a heinous crime, and punished with the greatest rigour. The husband in these cases bites off the wife's nose, and a separation instantly ensues. I saw an instance wherein this mode of punishment was inflicted, whilst I remained among them. The children, when this happens, are distributed according to the usual custom observed by other nations, that is, they are equally divided.

Among the Indian as well as European nations, there are many that devote themselves to pleasure, and notwithstanding the accounts given by some modern writers, of the frigidity of an Indian constitution, become the zealous votaries of Venus. The young warriors that are thus disposed, seldom want opportunities for gratifying their passion; and as the mode usually followed on these occasions is rather singular, I shall describe it.



When one of these young debauchees imagines, from the behaviour of the person he has chosen for his mistress, that he shall not meet with any great obstruction to his suit from her, he pursues the following plan.

It has been already observed, that the Indians acknowledge no superiority, nor have they any ideas of subordination, except in the necessary regulations of their war or hunting parties; they consequently live nearly in a state of equality, pursuant to the first principles of nature. The lover therefore is not apprehensive of any check or controul in the accomplishment of his purposes, if he can find a convenient opportunity for completing them.

As the Indians are also under no apprehension of robbers, or secret enemies, they leave the doors of their tents or huts unfastened during the night, as well as in the day. Two or three hours after sunset, the slaves or old people cover over the fire, that is generally burning in the midst of their apartment, with ashes, and retire to their repose.

Whilst darkness thus prevails, and all is quiet, one of these sons of pleasure, wrapped up closely in his blanket, to prevent his being known, will sometimes enter the apartment of his intended mistress. Having first lighted at the smothered fire a small splinter of wood, which answers the purpose of a match, he approaches the place where she reposes, and gently pulling away the covering from the head, jogs her till she awakes. If she then rises up, and blows out the light, he needs no further confirmation that his company is not disagreeable; but if, after he has discovered himself, she hides her head, and takes no notice of him, he might rest assured



that any further solicitations will prove vain, and that it is necessary immediately for him to retire.

During this stay he conceals the light as much as possible in the hollow of his hand, and as the tents or rooms of the Indians are usually large and capacious, he escapes without detection. It is said that the young women who admit their lovers on these occasions, take great care, by an immediate application to herbs, with the potent efficacy of which they are well acquainted, to prevent the effects of these illicit amours from becoming visible; for should the natural consequences ensue, they must forever remain unmarried.

The children of the Indians are always distinguished by the name of the mother: and if a woman marries several husbands, and has issue by each of them, they are all called after her. The reason they give for this is, that as their offspring are indebted to the father for their souls, the invisible part of their essence, and to the mother for their corporeal and apparent part, it is more rational that they should be distinguished by the name of the latter, from whom they indubitably derive their being, than by that of the father, to which a doubt might sometimes arise whether they are justly entitled.

There are some ceremonies made use of by the Indians at the imposition of the name, and it is considered by them as a matter of great importance; but what these are I could never learn, through the secrecy observed on the occasion. I only know that it is usually given when the children have passed the state of infancy.

Nothing can exceed the tenderness shewn by them to their offspring; and a person cannot recommend

himself to their favour by any method more certain, than by paying some attention to the younger branches of their families. I can impute, in some measure, to the presents I made to the children of the chiefs of the Naudowessies, the hospitable reception I met with when among them.

There is some difficulty attends an explanation of the manner in which the Indians distinguish themselves from each other. Besides the name of the animal by which every nation and tribe is denominated, there are others that are personal, and which the children receive from their mother.

The chiefs are also distinguished by a name that has either some reference to their abilities, or to the hieroglyphic of their families; and these are acquired after they arrive at the age of manhood. Such as have signalized themselves either in their war or hunting parties, or are possessed of some eminent qualification, receive a name that serves to perpetuate the fame of their actions, or to make their abilities conspicuous.

Thus the great warrior of the Naudowessies was named Ottahtongoomlischah, that is, the Great Father of Snakes: ottaht being in English father, tongoom great, and lischah a snake. Another chief was called Honahpawjatin, which means a swift runner over the mountains. And when they adopted me a chief among them, they named me Shebaygo, which signifies a writer, or a person that is curious in making hieroglyphics, as they saw me often writing.

ledge  
Their  
ridicul  
concea  
you de  
of relig  
with it  
the Fre  
an unin  
upon.

Such  
(for the  
give my  
the acc  
ple, from  
terated  
we shall  
a more  
monies  
any nati

It is c  
ing, or

## CHAPTER XIII.

*Of their Religion,*

IT is very difficult to attain a perfect knowledge of the religious principles of the Indians. Their ceremonies and doctrines have been so often ridiculed by the Europeans, that they endeavour to conceal them; and if, after the greatest intimacy, you desire any of them to explain to you their system of religion, to prevent your ridicule, they intermix with it many of the tenets they have received from the French missionaries, so that it is at last rendered an unintelligible jargon, and not to be depended upon.

Such as I could discover among the Naudowessies (for they also were very reserved in this point,) I shall give my readers, without paying any attention to the accounts of others. As the religion of that people, from their situation, appears to be totally unadulterated with the superstitions of the church of Rome, we shall be able to gain from their religious customs a more perfect idea of the original tenets and ceremonies of the Indians in general, than from those of any nations that approach nearer to the settlements.

It is certain they acknowledge one Supreme Being, or Giver of Life, who presides over all things.

M m

The Chipeways call this being Manitou, or Kitchi Manitou; the Naudowessies, Wakon or Tongo-Wakon, that is, the Great Spirit; and they look up to him as the source of good, from whom no evil can proceed. They also believe in a bad spirit, to whom they ascribe great power, and suppose that through his means all the evils which befall mankind are inflicted. To him, therefore, do they pray in their distresses, begging that he would either avert their troubles, or moderate them when they are no longer avoidable.

They say that the Great Spirit, who is infinitely good, neither wishes nor is able to do any mischief to mankind; but on the contrary, that he showers down on them all the blessings they deserve; whereas the evil spirit is continually employed in contriving how he may punish the human race; and to do which, he is not only possessed of the will, but of the power.

They hold also that there are good spirits of a lesser degree, who have their particular departments, in which they are constantly contributing to the happiness of mortals. These they suppose to preside over all the extraordinary productions of nature, such as those lakes, rivers, or mountains that are of an uncommon magnitude; and likewise the beasts, birds, fishes, and even vegetables, or stones that exceed the rest of their species in size or singularity. To all of these they pay some kind of adoration. Thus, when they arrive at the borders of Lake Superior, on the banks of the Mississippi, or any other great body of water, they present to the Spirit who resides there some kind of offering, as the prince of the Winnebagoes did when he attended me to the Falls of St Anthony.

But at the same time I fancy that the ideas they annex to the word spirit, are very different from the conceptions more enlightened nations entertain of it. They appear to fashion to themselves corporeal representations of their gods, and believe them to be of a human form, though of a nature more excellent than man.

Of the same kind are their sentiments relative to a futurity. They doubt not but they shall exist in some future state; they however fancy that their employments there will be similar to those they are engaged in here, without the labour and difficulties annexed to them in this period of their existence.

They consequently expect to be translated to a delightful country, where they shall always have a clear unclouded sky, and enjoy a perpetual spring; where the forests will abound with game, and the lakes with fish, which might be taken without a painful exertion of skill, or a laborious pursuit; in short, that they shall live for ever in regions of plenty, and enjoy every gratification they delight in here, in a greater degree.

To intellectual pleasures they are strangers; nor are these included in their scheme of happiness. But they expect that even these animal pleasures will be proportioned and distributed according to their merit; the skilful hunter, the bold and successful warrior, will be entitled to a greater share than those who through ignorance or want of skill cannot boast of any superiority over the common herd.

The priests of the Indians are at the same time their physicians, and their conjurers; whilst they heal their wounds or cure their diseases, they interpret their dreams, give them protective charms, and

satisfy that desire that is so prevalent among them, of searching into futurity.

How well they execute the latter part of their professional engagements, and the methods they make use of on some of these occasions, I have already shewn in the exertion of the priest of the Killistinoes, who was fortunate enough to succeed in his extraordinary attempt near Lake Superior. They frequently are successful likewise in administering the salubrious herbs they have acquired a knowledge of; but that the ceremonies they make use of during the administration of them contributes to their success, I shall not take upon me to assert.

When any of the people are ill, the person who is invested with this triple character of doctor, priest, and magician, sits by the patient day and night, rattling in his ears a gourd shell filled with dry beans, called a Chichicoue, and making a disagreeable noise that cannot be well described.

This uncouth harmony one would imagine should disturb the sick person, and prevent the good effects of the doctor's prescription; but on the contrary, they believe that the method made use of contributes to his recovery, by diverting from his malignant purposes the evil spirit who has inflicted the disorder; or at least that it will take off his attention, so that he shall not increase the malady. This they are credulous enough to imagine he is constantly on the watch to do, and would carry his inveteracy to a fatal length if they did not thus charm him.

I could not discover that they make use of any other religious ceremonies than those I have de-

scrib  
moon  
they  
to re  
nigh  
their  
the f

N  
natio  
very  
the  
amon  
north  
except  
custo  
them

TH  
prete  
velled  
were  
that  
cross  
on th  
with  
not f  
credi  
the z  
to gi  
their  
were

TH  
ciple  
hold  
neral

scribed; indeed, on the appearance of the new moon, they dance and sing; but it is not evident that they pay that planet any adoration; they only seem to rejoice at the return of a luminary that makes the night cheerful, and which serves to light them on their way when they travel during the absence of the sun.

Notwithstanding Mr Adair has asserted that the nations among whom he resided, observe with very little variation all the rites appointed by the Mosaic Law, I own I could never discover among those tribes that lie but a few degrees to the north-west, the least traces of the Jewish religion, except it be admitted that one particular female custom and their division into tribes, carry with them proofs sufficient to establish this assertion.

The Jesuits and French missionaries have also pretended that, the Indians had, when they first travelled into America, some notions, though these were dark and confused, of the christian institution; that they have been greatly agitated at the sight of a cross, and given proofs, by the impressions made on them, that they were not entirely unacquainted with the sacred mysteries of christianity. I need not say that these are too glaring absurdities to be credited, and could only receive their existence from the zeal of those fathers, who endeavoured at once to give the public a better opinion of the success of their missions, and to add support to the cause they were engaged in.

The Indians appear to be, in their religious principles, rude and uninstructed. The doctrines they hold are few and simple, and such as have been generally impressed on the human mind, by some

means or other, in the most ignorant ages. They however have not deviated, as many other uncivilized nations, and too many civilized ones have done, into idolatrous modes of worship; they venerate indeed, and make offerings to the wonderful parts of the creation, as I have before observed; but whether these rites are performed on account of the impression such extraordinary appearances make on them, or whether they consider them as the peculiar charge, or the usual places of residence of the invisible spirits they acknowledge, I cannot positively determine.

The human mind in its uncultivated state is apt to ascribe the extraordinary occurrences of nature, such as earthquakes, thunder or hurricanes; to the interposition of unseen beings; the troubles and disasters also that are annexed to a savage life, the apprehensions attendant on a precarious subsistence, and those numberless inconveniencies which man in his improved state has found means to remedy; are supposed to proceed from the interposition of evil spirits; the savage consequently lives in continual apprehensions of their unkind attacks, and to avert them, has recourse to charms, to the fantastic ceremonies of his priest, or the powerful influence of his manitous. Fear has of course a greater share in his devotions than gratitude, and he pays more attention to deprecating the wrath of the evil, than to securing the favour of the good beings.

The Indians, however, entertain these absurdities in common with those of every part of the globe, who have not been illuminated by that religion which only can disperse the clouds of superstition and ignorance, and they are as free from error as a people can be that has not been favoured with its instructive doctrine.

subje  
civil  
quene  
them  
they  
the se  
but a  
cioufi  
them  
and b

Pair  
are fo  
confu  
exerci  
fancy,  
port  
most  
which  
vative  
sweati



## CHAPTER XIV.

*Of their Diseases, &c.*

THE Indians in general are healthy, and subject but to few diseases, many of those that afflict civilized nations, and are the immediate consequences of luxury or sloth, being not known among them; however, the hardships and fatigues which they endure in hunting or war, the inclemency of the seasons, to which they are continually exposed, but above all the extremes of hunger, and that voraciousness their long excursions consequently subject them to, cannot fail of impairing the constitution, and bringing on disorders.

Pains and weaknesses in the stomach and breast are sometimes the result of their long fasting, and consumptions of the excessive fatigue and violent exercises they expose themselves to from their infancy, before they have sufficient strength to support them. But the disorder to which they are most subject, is the pleurisy; for the removal of which, they apply their grand remedy and preservative against the generality of their complaints, sweating.

The manner in which they construct their stoves for this purpose is as follows: They fix several small poles in the ground, the tops of which they twist together so as to form a rotunda: this frame they cover with skins or blankets; and they lay them on with so much nicety, that the air is kept from entering through any crevice; a small space being only left, just sufficient to creep in at, which is immediately after closed. In the middle of this confined building they place a red hot stone, on which they pour water till a steam arises that produces a great degree of heat.

This causes an instantaneous perspiration, which they increase as they please. Having continued in it for some time, they immediately hasten to the nearest stream, and plunge into the water; and, after bathing therein for about half a minute, they put on their clothes, sit down and smoke with great composure, thoroughly persuaded that the remedy will prove efficacious. They often make use of this sudoriferous method to refresh themselves, or to prepare their minds for the management of any business that requires uncommon deliberation and sagacity.

They are likewise afflicted with the dropsy and paralytic complaints, which, however, are but very seldom known among them. As a remedy for these as well as for fevers, they make use of lotions and decoctions, composed of herbs, which the physicians know perfectly well how to compound and apply. But they never trust to medicines alone; they always have recourse likewise to some superstitious ceremonies, without which their patients would not think the physical preparations sufficiently powerful.

W  
for th  
are ab  
ters, i  
wound  
extrem  
less ti  
of pro

W  
nually  
amazin  
tion, r  
the lea

It h  
tinent  
tive p  
have o  
still re  
it; I s  
least tr  
resided  
yet un  
think I  
origin i  
any con  
thern  
have al  
tain an  
tion is p

Soon  
ders, w  
gonorrh  
increase  
reached

With equal judgment they make use of simples for the cure of wounds, fractures, or bruises; and are able to extract by these, without incision, splinters, iron, or any other sort of matter by which the wound is caused. In cures of this kind they are extremely dextrous, and complete them in much less time than might be expected from their mode of proceeding.

With the skin of a snake, which these reptiles annually shed, they will also extract splinters. It is amazing to see the sudden efficacy of this application, notwithstanding there does not appear to be the least moisture remaining in it.

It has long been a subject of dispute, on what continent the venereal disease first received its destructive power. This dreadful malady is supposed to have originated in America, but the literary contest still remains undecided. To give some elucidation to it; I shall remark, that as I could not discover the least traces among the Naudowessies, with whom I resided so long, and was also informed that it was yet unknown among the more western nations, I think I may venture to pronounce that it had not its origin in North-America. Those nations that have any communication with the Europeans, or the southern tribes, are greatly afflicted with it; but they have all of them acquired a knowledge of such certain and expeditious remedies, that the communication is not attended with any dangerous consequences.

Soon after I set out on my travels, one of the traders, whom I accompanied, complained of a violent gonorrhoea, with all its alarming symptoms: this increased to such a degree, that by the time we had reached the town of the Winnebagoes, he was una-

ble to travel. Having made his complaint known to one of the chiefs of that tribe, he told him not to be uneasy, for he would engage that by following his advice, he should be able in a few days to pursue his journey, and in a little longer time be entirely free from his disorder.

The chief had no sooner said this, than he prepared for him a decoction of the bark of the roots of the prickly ash, a tree scarcely known in England, but which grows in great plenty throughout North-America; by the use of which, in a few days he was greatly recovered, and having received directions how to prepare it, in a fortnight after his departure from this place, he perceived that he was radically cured.

If from excessive exercise, or the extremes of heat or cold, they are affected with pains in their limbs or joints, they scarify the parts affected. Those nations who have no commerce with Europeans do this with a sharp flint; and it is surprising to see to how fine a point they have the dexterity to bring them; a lancet can scarcely exceed in sharpness the instruments they make of this unmanageable substance.

They never can be convinced a person is ill whilst he has an appetite; but when he rejects all kind of nourishment, they consider the disease as dangerous, and pay great attention to it; and during the continuance of the disorder, the physician refuses his patient no sort of food that he is desirous of.

Their doctors are not only supposed to be skilled in the physical treatment of diseases, but the common people believe, that by the ceremony of the Chicoué usually made use of, as before described,

they  
the  
afflic  
rem  
pern  
mini  
stition

So  
arises  
juggl  
tions,  
and f  
notwi  
these  
it is  
they c  
ed on  
which  
their

The  
person  
are no  
the ca  
which  
with e

In I  
Main;  
wife of  
standing  
could  
mained  
her exp  
to her e

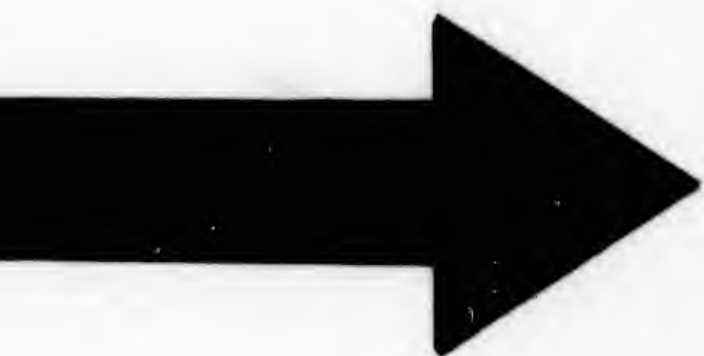
they are able to gain intelligence from the spirits, of the cause of the complaints with which they are afflicted, and are thereby the better enabled to find remedies for them. They discover something supernatural in all their diseases, and the physic administered must invariably be aided by these superstitions.

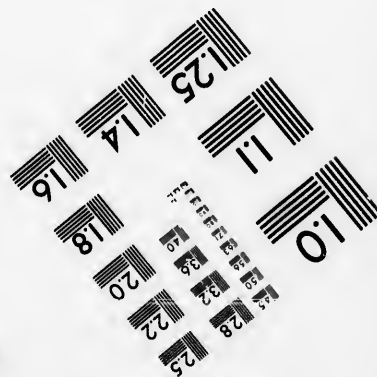
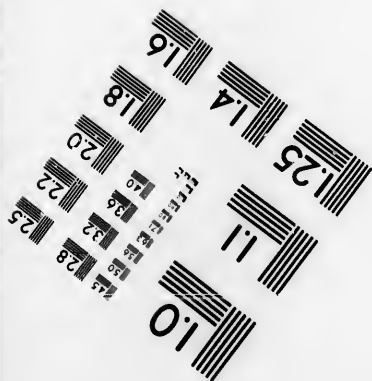
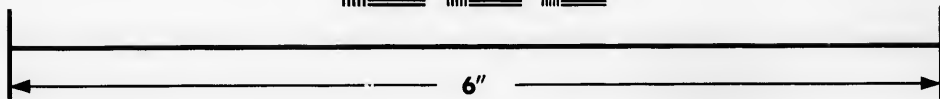
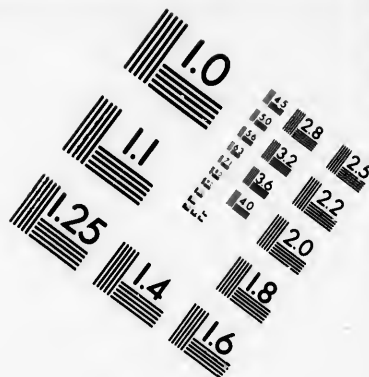
Sometimes a sick person fancies that his disorder arises from witchcraft; in this case the physician or juggler is consulted, who, after the usual preparations, gives his opinion on the state of the disease, and frequently finds some means for his cure. But notwithstanding the Indian physicians always annex these superstitious ceremonies to their prescriptions, it is very certain, as I have already observed, that they exercise their art by principles which are founded on the knowledge of simples, and on experience, which they acquire by an indefatigable attention to their operations.

The following story, which I received from a person of undoubted credit, proves that the Indians are not only able to reason with great acuteness on the causes and symptoms of many of the disorders which are attendant on human nature, but to apply with equal judgment proper remedies.

In Penobscot, a settlement in the province of Maine; in the north-east parts of New-England, the wife of a soldier was taken in labour, and notwithstanding every necessary assistance was given her, could not be delivered. In this situation she remained for two or three days, the persons around her expecting that the next pang would put an end to her existence.







# Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503**



1.5 2.8 2.5  
1.6 3.2 2.2  
1.8 2.0

1.1 0.1  
0.5 0.2

An Indian woman, who accidentally passed by, heard the groans of the unhappy sufferer, and enquired from whence they proceeded. Being made acquainted with the desperate circumstances attending the case, she told the informant, that if she might be permitted to see the person, she did not doubt but that she should be of great service to her.

The surgeon that had attended, and the midwife who was then present, having given up every hope of preserving their patient, the Indian woman was allowed to make use of any methods she thought proper. She accordingly took a handkerchief, and bound it tight over the nose and mouth of the woman: this immediately brought on a suffocation; and from the struggles that consequently ensued, she was in a few seconds delivered. The moment this was achieved, and time enough to prevent any fatal effect, the handkerchief was taken off. The long-suffering patient thus happily relieved from her pains, soon after perfectly recovered, to the astonishment of all those who had been witness to her desperate situation.

The reason given by the Indian for this hazardous method of proceeding was, that desperate disorders require desperate remedies; that as she observed the exertions of nature were not sufficiently forcible to effect the desired consequence, she thought it necessary to augment their force, which could only be done by some mode that was violent in the extreme.

## CHAPTER XV.

*Of the manner in which they treat their Dead.*

AN Indian meets death when it approaches him in his hut, with the same resolution he has often faced him in the field. His indifference relative to this important article, which is the source of so many apprehensions to almost every other nation, is truly admirable. When his fate is pronounced by the physician, and it remains no longer uncertain, he harangues those about him with the greatest composure.

If he is a chief and has a family, he makes a kind of funeral oration, which he concludes by giving to his children such advice for the regulation of their conduct as he thinks necessary. He then takes leave of his friends, and issues out orders for the preparation of a feast, which is designed to regale those of his tribe that come to pronounce his eulogium.

After the breath is departed, the body is dressed in the same attire it usually wore whilst living, his face is painted, and he seated in an erect posture on a mat or skin, placed in the middle of the hut, with his weapons by his side. His relations being seated

round, each harangues in turn the deceased; and if he has been a great warrior, recounts his heroic actions nearly to the following purport, which in the Indian language is extremely poetical and pleasing:

“ You still sit among us, Brother; your person  
 “ retains its usual resemblance, and continues similar  
 “ lar to ours, without any visible deficiency, except  
 “ that it has lost the power of action. But whether  
 “ is that breath blown, which a few hours ago sent  
 “ up smoke to the Great Spirit? Why are those lips  
 “ silent, that lately delivered to us expressive and  
 “ pleasing language? why are those feet motionless,  
 “ that a short time ago were fleetier than the deer on  
 “ yonder mountains? why useless hang those arms  
 “ that could climb the tallest tree, or draw the  
 “ toughest bow? Alas! every part of that frame  
 “ which we lately beheld with admiration and wonder,  
 “ is now become as inanimate as it was three  
 “ hundred winters ago. We will not, however,  
 “ bemoan thee as if thou wast for ever lost to us,  
 “ or that thy name would be buried in oblivion;  
 “ thy soul yet lives in the great Country of Spirits,  
 “ with those of thy nation that are gone before thee;  
 “ and though we are left behind to perpetuate thy  
 “ fame, we shall one day join thee. Actuated by  
 “ the respect we bore thee whilst living, we now  
 “ come to render to thee the last act of kindness it  
 “ is in our power to bestow: that the body might  
 “ not lie neglected on the plain, and become a prey  
 “ to the beasts of the field, or the fowls of the air,  
 “ we will take care to lay it with those of thy predecessors  
 “ who are gone before thee; hoping at the  
 “ same time, that thy spirit will feed with their  
 “ spirits, and be ready to receive ours, when we  
 “ also shall arrive at the great Country of Souls.”

In short speeches somewhat similar to this does every chief speak the praises of his departed friend. When they have so done, if they happen to be at a great distance from the place of interment, appropriated to their tribe, and the person dies during the winter season, they wrap the body in skins, and lay it on a high stage built for this purpose, or on the branches of a large tree, till the spring arrives. They then, after the manner described in my journal, carry it, together with all those belonging to the same nation, to the general burial-place, where it is interred with some other ceremonies that I could not discover.

When the Naudowessies brought their dead for interment to the great cave, I attempted to get an insight into the remaining burial rites; but whether it was on account of the stench which arose from so many bodies, the weather being then hot, or whether they chose to keep this part of their customs secret from me, I could not discover; I found, however, that they considered my curiosity as ill-timed, and therefore, I withdrew.

After the interment, the band to which the person belongs, take care to fix near the place such hieroglyphics as shall shew to future ages his merit and accomplishments. If any of these people die in the summer, at a distance from the burying-ground, and they find it impossible to remove the body before it putrefies, they burn the flesh from the bones, and preserving the latter, bury them in the manner described.

As the Indians believe that the souls of the deceased employ themselves in the same manner in the country of spirits, as they did on earth, that they acquire their food by hunting, and have there, also,

enemies to contend with, they take care that they do not enter those regions defenceless and unprovided: they consequently bury with them their bows, their arrows, and all the other weapons used either in hunting or war. As they doubt not but they will likewise have occasion both for the necessaries of life, and those things they esteem as ornaments, they usually deposit in their tombs such skins or stuffs as they commonly make their garments of, domestic utensils, and paint for ornamenting their persons.

The near relations of the deceased lament his loss with an appearance of great sorrow and anguish; they weep and howl, and make use of many contortions, as they sit in the hut or tent around the body, when the intervals between the praises of the chiefs will permit.

One formality in mourning for the dead among the Naudowessies, is very different from any mode I observed in the other nations through which I passed. The men, to shew how great their sorrow is, pierce the flesh of their arms, above the elbows, with arrows; the scars of which I could perceive on those of every rank, in a greater or lesser degree; and the women cut and gash their legs with sharp broken flints, till the blood flows very plentifully.

Whilst I remained among them, a couple, whose tent was adjacent to mine, lost a son of about four years of age. The parents were so much affected at the death of their favourite child, that they pursued the usual testimonies of grief with such uncommon rigour, as, through the weight of sorrow and loss of blood, to occasion the death of the father. The woman, who had been hitherto inconsolable, no sooner saw her husband expire, than she dried up her tears, and appeared cheerful and resigned.

nar-  
the  
shou  
rath  
such

SP  
when  
coun  
been  
from  
depa  
child  
hunt  
its s  
that  
the c  
care  
only  
that

Ex  
and  
Roma  
great  
and t  
I had  
other  
paren

He  
opinio  
notwit  
some p  
from a  
by nat

As I knew not how to account for so extraordinary a transition, I took an opportunity to ask her the reason of it; telling her, at the same time, that I should have imagined the loss of her husband would rather have occasioned an increase of grief, than such a sudden diminution of it.

She informed me, that as the child was so young when it died, and unable to support itself in the country of spirits, both she and her husband had been apprehensive that its situation would be far from happy; but no sooner did she behold the father depart for the same place, who not only loved the child with the tenderest affection, but was a good hunter, and would be able to provide plentifully for its support, than she ceased to mourn. She added, that she now saw no reason to continue her tears, as the child on whom she doted was happy under the care and protection of a fond father, and she had only one wish that remained ungratified, which was that of being herself with them.

Expressions so replete with unaffected tenderness, and sentiments that would have done honour to a Roman matron, made an impression on my mind greatly in favour of the people to whom she belonged, and tended not a little to counteract the prejudices I had hitherto entertained, in common with every other traveller, of Indian insensibility and want of parental tenderness.

Her subsequent conduct confirmed the favourable opinion I had just imbibed; and convinced me that, notwithstanding this apparent suspension of her grief, some particles of that reluctance, to be separated from a beloved relation, which is implanted either by nature or custom in every human heart, still

lurked in hers. I observed that she went almost every evening to the foot of the tree, on a branch of which the bodies of her husband and child were laid, and after cutting off a lock of her hair, and throwing it on the ground, in a plaintive, melancholy song bemoaned its fate. A recapitulation of the actions he might have performed, had his little life been spared, appeared to be her favourite theme; and whilst she foretold the same that would have attended an imitation of his father's virtues, her grief seemed to be suspended:—

“ If thou hadst continued with us, my dear son,” would she cry, “ how well would the bow have become thy hand, and how fatal would thy arrows have proved to the enemies of our bands. Thou wouldst often have drank their blood, and eaten their flesh, and numerous slaves would have rewarded thy toils. With a nervous arm wouldst thou have seized the wounded buffalo, or have combated the fury of the enraged bear. Thou wouldst have overtaken the flying elk, and have kept pace on the mountain's brow with the fleetest deer. What feats mightest thou not have performed, hadst thou staid among us till age had given thee strength; and thy father had instructed thee in every Indian accomplishment !” In terms like these did this untutored savage bewail the loss of her son, and frequently would she pass the greatest part of the night in the affectionate employ.

The Indians in general are very strict in the observance of their laws relative to mourning for their dead. In some nations they cut off their hair, blacken their faces, and sit in an erect posture, with their heads closely covered, and depriving themselves of every pleasure. This severity is continued for several months, and with some relaxations the appear-

ance  
told  
cider  
after  
to be  
times  
fever  
occu  
ing,  
with



ance is sometimes kept up for several years. I was told that when the Naudowessies recollected any incidents of the lives of their deceased relations, even after an interval of ten years, they would howl so as to be heard at a great distance. They would sometimes continue this proof of respect and affection for several hours ; and if it happened that the thought occurred, and the noise was begun towards the evening, those of their tribe who are at hand would join with them.

dear son,"  
v have be-  
hy arrows  
ds. Thou  
and eaten  
have re-  
wouldst  
or have  
. Thou  
and have  
the fleet-  
have per-  
age had  
instructed  
In terms  
the loss  
e greatest  
y.

the ob-  
for their  
blacken  
with their  
selves of  
for se-  
appear-

## CHAPTER XVI.

*A concise Character of the Indians.*

THE character of the Indians, like that of other uncivilized nations, is composed of a mixture of ferocity and gentleness. They are at once guided by passions and appetites, which they hold in common with the fiercest beasts that inhabit their woods, and are possessed of virtues which do honour to human nature.

In the following estimate, I shall endeavour to forget on the one hand the prejudices of Europeans, who usually annex to the word Indian, epithets that are disgraceful to human nature, and who view them in no other light than as savages and cannibals; whilst with equal care I avoid any partiality towards them, as some must naturally arise from the favourable reception I met with during my stay among them.

At the same time I shall confine my remarks to the nations inhabiting only the western regions, such as the Naudowessies, the Ottaugaumies, the Chipeways, the Winnebagoes, and the Saukies; for as throughout that diversity of climates the extensive continent of America is composed of, there are people of diffe-

rent dispositions and various characters, it would be incompatible with my present undertaking to treat of all these, and to give a general view of them as a conjunctive body.

That the Indians are of a cruel, revengeful, inexorable disposition, that they will watch whole days unmindful of the calls of nature, and make their way through pathless, and almost unbounded woods, subsisting only on the scanty produce of them, to pursue and revenge themselves of an enemy; that they hear unmoved the piercing cries of such as unhappily fall into their hands, and receive a diabolical pleasure from the tortures they inflict on their prisoners, I readily grant; but let us look on the reverse of this terrifying picture, and we shall find them temperate both in their diet and potations (it must be remembered that I speak of those tribes who have little communication with Europeans,) that they withstand, with unexampled patience, the attacks of hunger, or the inclemency of the seasons, and esteem the gratification of their appetites but as a secondary consideration.

We shall likewise see them social and humane to those whom they consider as their friends, and even to their adopted enemies; and ready to partake with them of the last morsel, or to risk their lives in their defence.

In contradiction to the report of many other travellers, all of whom have been tinctured with prejudice, I can assert, that notwithstanding the apparent indifference with which an Indian meets his wife and children after a long absence, an indifference proceeding from custom rather than insensibility, he is not unmindful of the claims either of conjugal or parental tenderness; the little story I have

introduced in the preceding chapter, of the Naudowessie woman lamenting her child, and the immature death of the father, will elucidate this point, and enforce the assertion much better than the most studied arguments I can make use of.

Accustomed from their youth to innumerable hardships, they soon become superior to a sense of danger, or the dread of death; and their fortitude, implanted by nature, and nurtured by example, by precept and accident, never experiences a moment's alloy.

Though slothful and inactive while their store of provisions remain unexhausted, and their foes are at a distance, they are indefatigable and persevering in pursuit of their game, or in circumventing their enemies.

If they are artful and designing, and ready to take every advantage, if they are cool and deliberate in their councils, and cautious in the extreme, either of discovering their sentiments, or of revealing a secret, they might at the same time boast of possessing qualifications of a more animated nature, of the sagacity of a hound, the penetrating sight of a lynx, the cunning of a fox, the agility of a bounding roe, and the unconquerable fierceness of a tiger.

In their public characters, as forming part of a community, they possess an attachment for that band to which they belong, unknown to the inhabitants of any other country. They combine, as if they were actuated only by one soul, against the enemies of their nation, and banish from their minds every consideration opposed to this.

They consult without unnecessary opposition, or without giving way to the excitements of envy or ambition, on the measures necessary to be pursued for the destruction of those who have drawn on themselves their displeasure. No selfish views ever influence their advice, or obstruct their consultations. Nor is it in the power of bribes or threats to diminish the love they bear to their country.

The honour of their tribe, and the welfare of their nation, is the first and most predominant emotion of their hearts; and from thence proceed in a great measure all their virtues and their vices. Actuated by this, they brave every danger, endure the most exquisite torments, and expire triumphant in their fortitude, not as a personal qualification, but as a national characteristic.

From these also flow that insatiable revenge towards those with whom they are at war, and all the consequent horrors that disgrace their name. Their uncultivated mind being incapable of judging of the propriety of an action, in opposition to their passions, which are totally insensible to the controuls of reason or humanity, they know not how to keep their fury within any bounds, and consequently that courage and resolution, which would otherwise do them honour, degenerates into a savage ferocity.

But this short dissertation must suffice: the limits of my work will not permit me to treat the subject more copiously, or to pursue it with a logical regularity. The observations already made by my readers, on the preceding pages, will, I trust, render it unnecessary; as by them they will be enabled to form a tolerably just idea of the people I have been describing. Experience teaches, that anecdotes, and relations of particular events, however trifling they

might appear, enable us to form a truer judgment of the manners and customs of a people, and are much more declaratory of their real state, than the most studied and elaborate disquisition, without these aids.

North  
they c  
of the  
Chipe  
Naud  
kafaw  
four a  
that li  
Florid  
far as  
made,

But  
to be  
esteem  
the gr  
banks  
the Oh  
sifting  
this lar  
ing eac

## CHAPTER XVII.

*Of their Language, Hieroglyphics, &c.*

THE principal languages of the natives of North-America may be divided into four classes, as they consist of such as are made use of by the nations of the Iroquois towards the eastern parts of it, the Chipeways or Algonkins to the north-west, the Naudowessies to the west, and the Cherokees, Chickasaws, &c. to the south. One or other of these four are used by all the Indians who inhabit the parts that lie between the coast of Labrador north, the Floridas south, the Atlantic Ocean east, and, as far as we can judge from the discoveries hitherto made, the Pacific Ocean on the west.

But of all these, the Chipeway tongue appears to be the most prevailing; it being held in such esteem, that the chiefs of every tribe, dwelling about the great lakes, or to the westward of these on the banks of the Mississippi, with those as far south as the Ohio, and as far north as Hudson's Bay, consisting of more than thirty different tribes, speak this language alone in their councils, notwithstanding each has a peculiar one of their own.

P p

It will probably in time become universal among all the Indian nations, as none of them attempt to make excursions to any great distance, or are considered as qualified to carry on any negotiation with a distant band, unless they have acquired the Chipeway tongue.

At present, besides the Chipeways, to whom it is natural, the Ottawaws, Saukies, the Ottagau-mies, the Killistinoes, the Nipegons, the bands about Lake Le Pluye, and the remains of the Algonkins, or Gens de Terre, all converse in it, with some little variation of dialect; but whether it be natural to those nations, or acquired, I was not able to discover. I am however of opinion that the barbarous and uncouth dialect of the Winnebagoes, the Menomonies, and many other tribes, will become in time totally extinct, and this be adopted in its stead.

The Chipeway tongue is not encumbered with any unnecessary tones or accents, neither are there any words in it that are superfluous; it is also easy to pronounce, and much more copious than any other Indian language.

As the Indians are unacquainted with the polite arts, or with the sciences, and as they are strangers to ceremony, or compliment, they neither have nor need an infinity of words wherewith to embellish their discourse. Plain and unpolished in their manners, they only make use of such as serve to denominate the necessities or conveniences of life, and to express their wants, which in a state of nature can be but few.

I have annexed hereto a short vocabulary of the Chipeway language, and another of that of the Nau-

dow  
rule

T  
gutt  
lity,  
writ  
the C  
lang  
fiflip  
amon  
Mess  
Paci

A  
it is  
foun  
to w  
are e  
mit c

Al  
ideas  
which  
extra  
Th  
inten  
enter  
lie in  
that h  
must

Th  
idea c  
sion,

Wh  
Chipe



dowessies, but am not able to reduce them to the rules of grammar.

The latter is spoken in a soft accent, without any guttural sounds, so that it may be learnt with facility, and is not difficult either to be pronounced or written. It is nearly as copious and expressive as the Chipeway tongue, and is the most prevailing language of any on the western banks of the Mississippi; being in use, according to their account, among all the nations that lie to the north of the Messorie, and extend as far west as the shores of the Pacific Ocean.

As the Indians are not acquainted with letters, it is very difficult to convey with precision the exact sound of their words; I have however endeavoured to write them as near to the manner in which they are expressed, as such an uncertain mode will admit of.

Although the Indians cannot communicate their ideas by writing, yet they form certain hieroglyphics, which, in some measure, serve to perpetuate any extraordinary transaction, or uncommon event. Thus, when they are on their excursions, and either intend to proceed, or have been on any remarkable enterprise, they peel the bark from the trees which lie in their way, to give intelligence to those parties that happen to be at a distance, of the path they must pursue to overtake them.

The following instance will convey a more perfect idea of the methods they make use of on this occasion, than any expression I can frame.

When I left the Mississippi, and proceeded up the Chipeway River, in my way to Lake Superior, as

related in my Journal, my guide, who was a chief of the Chipeways that dwell on the Ottawa Lake, near the heads of the river we had just entered, fearing that some parties of the Naudowessies, with whom this nation is perpetually at war, might accidentally fall in with us, and before they were apprised of my being in company, do us some mischief, he took the following steps.

He peeled the bark from a large tree, near the entrance of a river, and with wood-coal, mixed with bear's grease, the usual substitute for ink, made in an uncouth, but expressive manner, the figure of the town of the Ottagaumies. He then formed to the left a man dressed in skins, by which he intended to represent a Naudowessie, with a line drawn from his mouth to that of a deer, the symbol of the Chipeways. After this he depicted still further to the left a canoe as proceeding up the river, in which he placed a man sitting with a hat on; this figure was designed to represent an Englishman, or myself; and my Frenchman was drawn with a handkerchief tied round his head, and rowing the canoe; to these he added several other significant emblems, among which the Pipe of Peace appeared painted on the prow of the canoe.

The meaning he intended to convey to the Naudowessies, and which I doubt not appeared perfectly intelligible to them, was, that one of the Chipeway chiefs had received a speech from some Naudowessie chiefs, at the town of the Ottagaumies, desiring him to conduct the Englishman, who had lately been among them, up the Chipeway river; and that they thereby required, that the Chipeway, notwithstanding he was an avowed enemy, should not be molested by them on his passage, as he had the care of a person whom they esteemed as one of their nation.

Some authors have pretended that the Indians have armorial bearings, which they blazon with great exactness, and which distinguish one nation from another; but I never could observe any other arms among them than the symbols already described.

s a chief  
aw Lake,  
entered,  
ies, with  
ight ac-  
were ap-  
mischief,

near the  
ked with  
made in  
figure of  
rmed to  
ntended  
wn from  
he Chi-  
r to the  
which he  
ure was  
myself;  
kerchief  
oe; to  
blems,  
painted

he Nau-  
perfectly  
hipeway  
dowessie  
ng him  
ly been  
at they  
chstand-  
be mo-  
cate of  
nation.

*A short VOCABULARY of the Chipeway  
Language.*

N. B. This people do not make use either of the  
consonants F. or V.

## A

A  
BOVE

Abandon  
Admirable  
Afterwards  
All  
Always  
Amis  
Arrive  
Axe  
Ashes  
Assist

*Spimink*  
*Packiton*  
*Pilawah*  
*Mipidach*  
*Kokinum*  
*Kokali*  
*Napitch*  
*Takouchin*  
*Agacwet*  
*Pingoc*  
*Mawinewah*

## B

Ball  
Bag, or tobacco-pouch  
Barrel  
Beat  
Bear  
Bear, a young one  
Beaver  
Beaver's skin  
Be, or to be

*Alewin*  
*Caspetaogan*  
*Owentowgan*  
*Pakhite*  
*Mackwah*  
*Makon*  
*Amik*  
*Apiminique*  
*Tapaie*

Bear  
Beca  
Belie  
Belly  
Black  
Bloo  
Body  
Bott  
Broth  
Bran  
Brea  
Bree  
Bree  
Buck

Cano  
Call  
Chief  
Carry  
Child  
Coat  
Cold,  
Come  
Come  
Comp  
Conce  
Corn  
Cover  
Count  
Coura  
Cup

Dance  
Dart

Beard	<i>Mischiton</i>
Because	<i>Mewinch</i>
Believe	<i>Tilerima</i>
Belly	<i>Mishemout</i>
Black	<i>Markaute</i>
Blood	<i>Miskow</i>
Body	<i>Toe</i>
Bottle	<i>Shishago</i>
Brother	<i>Neconnis</i>
Brandy or Rum	<i>Scuttawawbab</i>
Bread	<i>Pabaushigan</i>
Breech	<i>Miscousah</i>
Breeches	<i>Kipokitie Kousab</i>
Buck	<i>Wasketch</i>

## C

Canoe	<i>Cheman</i>
Call	<i>Teshenekaw</i>
Chief, a	<i>Okemaw</i>
Carry	<i>Peton</i>
Child or Children	<i>Bobelosbin</i>
Coat	<i>Capotewain</i>
Cold, I am	<i>Kekalch</i>
Come on	<i>Moppa</i>
Come to	<i>Pemotchba</i>
Comrade	<i>Neechee</i>
Concerned	<i>Tallemiffi</i>
Corn	<i>Melomin</i>
Covering, or a Blanket	<i>Wawbewion</i>
Country	<i>Endawlawkeen</i>
Courage	<i>Tagwawomiffi</i>
Cup	<i>Olawgan</i>

## D

Dance	<i>Nemeh</i>
Dart	<i>Sheshikwee</i>

Die, to	<i>Nip</i>
Dish	<i>Mackoan</i>
Dog	<i>Alim</i>
Dead	<i>Neepe</i>
Devil, or evil Spirit	<i>Matcho-Manitou</i>
Dog, a little one	<i>Alemon</i>
Done, it is done	<i>Shiah</i>
Do	<i>Tosbiton</i>
Doubtless	<i>Ontclatoubah</i>
Dress the kettle	<i>Poutwab</i>
Drink	<i>Minikwab</i>
Drunken	<i>Ouisquiba</i>
Duck	<i>Chickhip</i>

## E

Earth	<i>Aukwin</i>
Eat	<i>Owissine</i>
Each	<i>Papegik</i>
English	<i>Sagaunofb</i>
Enough	<i>Mimilic</i>
Equal, or alike	<i>Tawbiscouch</i>
Esteem	<i>Nawpetellmaw</i>
Eyes	<i>Wiskinkhie</i>

## F

Fast	<i>Waliebic</i>
Fall	<i>Ponkisin</i>
Far off	<i>Watsaw</i>
Fat	<i>Pimmittee</i>
Friend	<i>Niconnis</i>
Father	<i>Noofah</i>
Few, or little	<i>Maungis</i>
Fatigued	<i>Taukwissir</i>
Field sown	<i>Kittegaumic</i>
Fire	<i>Scutta</i>

Fire,  
Find  
Fish  
Fork  
Forme  
Fort  
Forwa  
French  
Freeze  
Freeze  
Full  
Fusce

God, o  
Go by  
Girl  
Give  
Glass, a  
Good  
Good f  
Govern  
General  
den  
Grapes  
Great  
Greedy  
Guts

Hare  
Heart  
Hate  
Half

Fire, to strike  
Find  
Fifth  
Fork  
Formerly  
Fort  
Forward  
French  
Freeze, to  
Freezes hard  
Full  
Fusce or Gun

*Scutecke*  
*Nantounawaw*  
*Kickon*  
*Nassawokwot*  
*Pirwego*  
*Wakaigon*  
*Nopawink*  
*Nechtegoosb*  
*Kissin*  
*Kissin Magat*  
*Mouskinet*  
*Paskeffigan*

G

God, or the Great Spirit  
Go by water  
Girl  
Give  
Glas, a mirror  
Good  
Good for nothing  
Govern  
General, or Command- }  
der in Chief }  
Grapes  
Great  
Greedy  
Guts

*Kitchi Manitou*  
*Pimmiscaw*  
*Jeckwassin*  
*Millaw*  
*Wawbemo*  
*Carolatch*  
*Malatal*  
*Tibarimaw*  
*Kitchi Okimaw*  
*Simauganish*  
*Shoamin*  
*Manatou*  
*Sawfawkiss*  
*Olawbish*

H

Hare  
Heart  
Hate  
Half

*Wawpoos*  
*Michewah*  
*Shingaurimaw*  
*Nowbal*

Hair, human	<i>Liffis</i>
Hair of beasts	<i>Perwal</i>
Handsome	<i>Canoginne</i>
Have	<i>Tandaulaw</i>
Head	<i>Oustecouan</i>
Heaven	<i>Speminkakwin</i>
Herb	<i>Nrejas</i>
Here	<i>Aconda</i>
Hidden	<i>Kemouch</i>
Home	<i>Entayent</i>
Honour	<i>Mackawalarw</i>
Hot	<i>Akesbotta</i>
How	<i>Tawne</i>
How many	<i>Tawnemilik</i>
Hunt	<i>Kewassa</i>
Hut, or house	<i>Wig Waum</i>

## I

Indians	<i>Ishinawbab</i>
Iron	<i>Perawbick</i>
Island	<i>Minis</i>
Immediately	<i>Webatch</i>
Indian Corn	<i>Mittawmin</i>
Intirely	<i>Nawpitch</i>
Impostor	<i>Marlawtiffse</i>
It might be so	<i>Tawneendo</i>

## K

Kettle	<i>Ackikons</i>
King, or Chief	<i>Okemaw</i>
Keep	<i>Ganwerimaw</i>
Knife	<i>Mockoman</i>
Knife that is crooked	<i>Cootawgon</i>
Know	<i>Thickeremaw</i>

Lake  
Laugh  
Lazy  
Lam  
Leav  
Lette  
Life  
Love  
Long  
Lose  
Land  
Lie  
Littl

Mea  
Muc  
Man  
Mar  
Mar  
Med  
Mer  
Moc  
Mor  
Mal  
Mist

Neer  
Nea



## L

Lake	<i>Kitchigawmink</i>
Laugh	<i>Paropi</i>
Lazy	<i>Kittimi</i>
Lame	<i>Kickkate</i>
Leave	<i>Pockiton</i>
Letter	<i>Marwsgnaugon</i>
Life	<i>Nouchimowin</i>
Love	<i>Saukie</i>
Long since	<i>Shawshia</i>
Lose	<i>Hackilaugue</i>
Land Carriage	<i>Cappatawgon</i>
Lie down	<i>Weepemaw</i>
Little	<i>Waubasheen</i>

## M

Meat	<i>Weas</i>
Much	<i>Nibbilaw</i>
Man	<i>Allissinape</i>
March, to go	<i>Pimmoussie</i>
Marry	<i>Weewin</i>
Medicine	<i>Makikic</i>
Merchandise	<i>Alokochigon</i>
Moon	<i>Debicot</i>
Mortar, to pound in	<i>Poutawgon</i>
Male	<i>Nape</i>
Mistress	<i>Neremcusin</i>

## N

Needle	<i>Shawbonkin</i>
Near	<i>Pewitch</i>

Nation	<i>Irinee</i>
Never	<i>Cawikkaw</i>
Night	<i>Debicot</i>
No	<i>Kaw</i>
None	<i>Tach</i>
Nothing	<i>Kakego</i>
Not yet	<i>Kurwmischi</i>
Not at all	<i>Kagutch</i>
Nought, good for nothing	<i>Malatat</i>

## O

Old	<i>Kawweshine</i>
Otter	<i>Nikkik</i>
Other	<i>Coutack</i>

## P

Pipe	<i>Poagan</i>
Part, what part	<i>Tawnapee</i>
Play	<i>Packeigo</i>
Powder, Gun, or dust	<i>Pingo</i>
Peace, to make	<i>Pecacotiche</i>
Pray	<i>Tawlaimia</i>
Proper	<i>Sawfega</i>
Presently	<i>Webatch</i>
Peninsula	<i>Minnissin</i>

## Q

Quick	<i>Kegotck</i>
-------	----------------

## R

Regard	<i>Warwbomo</i>
Red	<i>Miscow</i>
Resolve	<i>Tibelindon</i>
Relation	<i>Towwemaw</i>

Respect  
Rain  
Robe  
River  
Run, t

Sad  
Sail  
Sack, o  
Sea, or  
Shoes  
Ship, or  
Sorry  
Spirit  
Spoon  
Star  
Steal  
Stocking  
Strong  
Sturgeon  
Sun  
Sword  
Surprisin  
See  
Since  
Shirt  
Slave  
Sleep  
Sit down

Take  
Teeth  
That

Respect  
Rain  
Robe  
River  
Run, to

*Tawbaromica*  
*Kimmerwan*  
*Ockolaro*  
*Sippim*  
*Pitchebot*

## S

Sad  
Sail  
Sack, or Bag  
Sea, or large Lake  
Shoes  
Ship, or large Canoe  
Sorry  
Spirit  
Spoon  
Star  
Steal  
Stockings  
Strong  
Sturgeon  
Sun  
Sword  
Surprising  
See  
Since  
Shirt  
Slave  
Sleep  
Sit down

*Talimissie*  
*Pemiscaw*  
*Mashimot*  
*Agankitchigawmink*  
*Maukissin*  
*Kitchi Cheman*  
*Niscottissie*  
*Manitou*  
*Mickwon*  
*Alank*  
*Kemautin*  
*Mittaus*  
*Mashkawwah*  
*Lawmack*  
*Kissis*  
*Simaugan*  
*Etwah, Etwah*  
*Wawbemo*  
*Mapedoch*  
*Papawkwean*  
*Wackan*  
*Nippee*  
*Mintepin*

## T

Take  
Teeth  
That

*Emaundah*  
*Tibbit*  
*Mawbah*

There	<i>Watsaudebi</i>
This	<i>Maundab</i>
Truly	<i>Kikit</i>
Together	<i>Marowawwee</i>
Tobacco	<i>Semau</i>
Tongue	<i>Outon</i>
Tired	<i>Tawkonfie</i>
Too little	<i>Osaummangis</i>
Too much	<i>Offuune</i>
Thank you	<i>Megwatch</i>
To-morrow	<i>Warobunk</i>
To-morrow, the day after	<i>Oufwawbunk</i>

## W

Warriors	<i>Semauganaush</i>
Water	<i>Nebbi</i>
War	<i>Nantaubaulaw</i>
Way	<i>Mickon</i>
Well then !	<i>Tauneendab !</i>
What is that ?	<i>Warwarwin ?</i>
What now ?	<i>Quagonie ?</i>
Whence	<i>Taunippi</i>
Where	<i>Tab</i>
White	<i>Waube</i>
Who is there ?	<i>Quagonie Maubab ?</i>
Wind	<i>Loutin</i>
Winter	<i>Pepoun</i>
Woman	<i>Ickwee</i>
Wood	<i>Mittic</i>
Wolf	<i>Marwbingon</i>

## Y

Yesterday	<i>Petchilarwo</i>
Yet	<i>Minnewatch</i>
Young	<i>Wisconnekissi</i>
Yellow	<i>Wazze</i>

## The Numerical Terms of the Chipeways.

One	<i>Pasbik</i>
Two	<i>Ninch</i>
Three	<i>Nissou</i>
Four	<i>Neau</i>
Five	<i>Naran</i>
Six	<i>Ningoutwassou</i>
Seven	<i>Ninchowassou</i>
Eight	<i>Nissowassou</i>
Nine	<i>Shongassou</i>
Ten	<i>Mittassou</i>
Eleven	<i>Mittassou Pasik</i>
Twenty	<i>Ninchtawnaw</i>
Thirty	<i>Nissou Mittawnaw</i>
Forty	<i>Neau Mittawnaw</i>
Fifty	<i>Naran Mittawnaw</i>
Sixty	<i>Ningoutwassou Mit-</i> <i>tawna</i>
Seventy	<i>Ninchowassou Mit-</i> <i>tawnaw</i>
Eighty	<i>Nissowassou Mittaw-</i> <i>naw</i>
Ninety	<i>Shongassou Mittaw-</i> <i>naw</i>
Hundred	<i>Mittassou Mittaw-</i> <i>naw</i>
Thousand	<i>Mittassow Mittaw-</i> <i>sou Mittawnaw</i>

## A short VOCABULARY of the Naudowessie Language.

## A

Axe

*Ashparaw*

## B

Beaver  
Buffalo  
Bad  
Broach  
Bear, a

*Chawbah*  
*Tawtongo*  
*Shejab*  
*Muzahootoo*  
*Wahkon/shejab*

## C

Canoe  
Cold  
Child, a Male  
Child, a Female  
Come here

*Waahtoh*  
*Mechuetah*  
*Wechoakseh*  
*Whacheekseh*  
*Accooyuiyare*

## D

Dead  
Deer  
Dog

*Negush*  
*Tobinjob*  
*Shungush*

## E

Eat  
Ears

*Echarwmenaw*  
*Noekab*

Eye  
Evil

Fire  
Fath  
Fren  
Falls  
Frien

Good  
Give  
Go a  
God,  
Gun  
Great  
Gold

Hear  
Horse  
Home  
House  
Heave

Iron  
I, or n

King,  
Kill

Eyes  
Evil

*Eshtike*  
*Shejah*

F

Fire  
Father  
Frenchman  
Falls of Water  
Friend

*Paabtab*  
*Otah*  
*Neehteegush*  
*Owah Menah*  
*Kitchiwah*

G

Good  
Give  
Go away  
God, or the Great Spirit  
Gun  
Great  
Gold

*Wofhtah*  
*Accooyeh*  
*Accorwah*  
*Wakon*  
*Muzah Wakon*  
*Tongo*  
*Muzabam*

H

Hear  
Horse  
Home, or domestic  
House  
Heaven

*Nookishon*  
*Shuetongo*  
*Shuah*  
*Teebee*  
*Wofhtah Teebee*

I

Iron  
I, or me

*Muzah*  
*Meoh*

K

King, or Chief  
Kill

*Otah*  
*Negushtaugaw*

R r

## L

Little  
Long  
Lake  
Love

*Jestin*  
*Tongoom*  
*Tongo Meneb*  
*Ehwahmeah*

## M

Much  
More  
Moon  
Mouth  
Medal  
Mine  
Milk

*Otah*  
*Otenab*  
*Orweeb*  
*Eeb*  
*Muzah Otah*  
*Merwah*  
*Etjawboh*

## N

No  
Near

*Heyah*  
*Jestinarw*

## O

Oh!

*Hopiniyachie!*

## P

Pipe  
Pipe of Peace

*Shanuapaw*  
*Shanuapaw Wakow*

## R

Rain  
Ring  
Round

*Owah Meneb*  
*Muzamohupah*  
*Chupah*

Smol  
Salt  
See,  
Sleep  
Snak  
Sun  
Spiri  
Spiri  
Snow  
Surp  
Silver

Toba  
Talk  
Tree  
Ther

Won  
Won  
Wate  
Wha  
Who  
Wick

You  
Youn



## S

Smoke	<i>Shaweah</i>
Salt water	<i>Menis Queah</i>
See, to	<i>Eshiarw</i>
Sleep	<i>Eshsteemo</i>
Snake	<i>Omlishcarw</i>
Sun	<i>Paabtah</i>
Spirit	<i>Wakon</i>
Spirituos Liquors	<i>Meneh Wakon</i>
Snow	<i>Sinnee</i>
Surprising	<i>Hopiniayare</i>
Silver	<i>Muzaham</i>

## T

Tobacco	<i>Shawaffaw</i>
Talk	<i>Owehchin</i>
Tree	<i>Ochaw</i>
There	<i>Dache</i>

## W

Woman	<i>Winnokejah</i>
Wonderful	<i>Hopiniyare</i>
Water	<i>Meneh</i>
What	<i>Tawgo</i>
Who is there?	<i>Tawgodache?</i>
Wicked	<i>Heyahatchta</i>

## Y

You	<i>Chee</i>
Young	<i>Hawpawnarw</i>

You are good	<i>Washtab Chee</i>
You are a spirit	<i>Wakon Chee</i>
You are my good friend	<i>Washtab Kitchiwah</i>
	<i>Chee</i>
No good	<i>Heyah Washtab</i>

## The Numerical Terms of the Naudowessies.

One	<i>Woncharw</i>
Two	<i>Noomparw</i>
Three	<i>Tawmonnee</i>
Four	<i>Toboh</i>
Five	<i>Sawbuttee</i>
Six	<i>Shawcoo</i>
Seven	<i>Shawcopee</i>
Eight	<i>Shahindohin</i>
Nine	<i>Nebochunganong</i>
Ten	<i>Wegochunganong</i>
Eleven	<i>Wegochunganong Woncharw</i>
Twenty	<i>Wegochunganong Noomparw</i>
Thirty	<i>Wegochunganong Tawmonnee</i>
Forty	<i>Wegochunganong Toboh</i>
Fifty	<i>Wegochunganong Sawbuttee</i>
Sixty	<i>Wegochunganong Shawcoo</i>
Seventy	<i>Wegochunganong Shawcopee</i>
Eighty	<i>Wegochunganong Shahindohin</i>
Ninety	<i>Wegochunganong Nebochunganong</i>
Hundred	<i>Opohng</i>
Thousand	<i>Wegochunganong Opohng</i>

To this short vocabulary of the Naudowessie language I shall adjoin a specimen of the manner in which they unite their words. I have chosen for

this purpose a short song, which they sing, with some kind of melody, though not without any appearance of poetical measure, when they set out on their hunting expeditions; and have given as near a translation as the difference of the idioms will permit.

• *Meoh accowah eshtaw paatah negushtawgarw shejah menah. Tongo Wakon meoh woshta, paatah accowah. Hopiniyahie oweeh accoyee meoh, woshta patah otah tobinjob meoh teebee.*

I will rise before the sun, and ascend yonder hill, to see the new light chase away the vapours and disperse the clouds. Great Spirit, give me success. And when the sun is gone, lend me, oh moon, light sufficient to guide me with safety back to my tent laden with deer !

## CHAPTER XVIII.

*Of the Beasts, Birds, Fishes, Reptiles, and Insects,  
which are found in the Interior Parts of North-  
America.*

OF these I shall, in the first place, give a catalogue, and afterwards a description of such only as are either peculiar to this country, or which differ in some material point from those that are to be met with in other realms.

## OF THE BEASTS.

The Tiger, the Bear, Wolves, Foxes, Dogs, the Cat of the Mountain, the Wild Cat, the Buffalo, the Deer, the Elk, the Moose, the Carraboo, the Carcajou, the Skunk, the Porcupine, the Hedge-Hog, the Woodchuck, the Raccoon, the Marten, the Fisher, the Musquash, Squirrels, Hares, Rabbits, the Mole, the Weasel, the Mouse, the Dormouse, the Beaver, the Otter, the Mink, and Bats.

**The TIGER.** The Tiger of America resembles in shape those of Africa and Asia, but is considerably smaller. Nor does it appear to be so fierce and ravenous as they are. The colour of it is a darkish fallow, and it is entirely free from spots. I saw one on an island in the Chipeway River, of which I had a very good view, as it was at no great distance from me. It sat up on its hinder parts like a dog; and did not seem either to be apprehensive of our approach, or to discover any ravenous inclinations. It is however very seldom to be met with in this part of the world.

**The BEAR.** Bears are very numerous on this continent, but more particularly so in the northern parts of it, and contribute to furnish both food and beds for almost every Indian nation. Those of America differ in many respects from those either of Greenland or Russia, they being not only somewhat smaller, but timorous and inoffensive, unless they are pinched by hunger, or smarting from a wound. The sight of a man terrifies them; and a dog will put several to flight. They are extremely fond of grapes, and will climb to the top of the highest trees in quest of them. This kind of food renders their flesh excessively rich, and finely flavoured; and it is consequently preferred by the Indians and traders to that of any other animal. The fat is very white, and besides being sweet and wholesome, is possessed of one valuable quality, which is, that it never cloyes. The inhabitants of these parts constantly anoint themselves with it, and to its efficacy they in a great measure owe their agility. The season for hunting the bear is during the winter; when they take up their abode in hollow trees, or make themselves dens in the roots of those that are blown down, the entrance of which they stop up with branches of fir that lie scattered about. From these retreats it is

said they stir not while the weather continues severe, and as it is well known that they do not provide themselves with food, they are supposed to be enabled by nature to subsist for some months without it, and during this time to continue of the same bulk.

**The WOLF.** The Wolves of North-America are much less than those which are met with in other parts of the world. They have, however, in common with the rest of their species, a wildness in their looks, and a fierceness in their eyes; notwithstanding which, they are far from being so ravenous as the European wolves, nor will they ever attack a man, except they have accidentally fed on the flesh of those slain in battle. When they herd together, as they often do in the winter, they make a hideous and terrible noise. In these parts there are two kinds; one of which is of a fallow colour, the other of a dun, inclining to a black.

**The FOX.** There are two sort of foxes in North-America, which differ only in their colour, one being of a reddish brown, the other of a grey; those of the latter kind that are found near the river Mississippi, are extremely beautiful, their hair being of a fine silver grey.

**DOGS.** The dogs employed by the Indians in hunting appear to be all of the same species; they carry their ears erect, and greatly resemble a wolf about the head. They are exceedingly useful to them in their hunting excursions, and will attack the fiercest of the game they are in pursuit of. They are also remarkable for their fidelity to their masters; but being ill fed by them, are very troublesome in their huts or tents.

T  
shap  
refer  
colo  
dith  
The  
feren  
and  
ther  
fiero

T  
amaz  
has f  
chin  
his e  
a bur  
and i  
to th  
body  
a dun  
able,  
His h  
neck  
towa  
away  
make  
flesh  
treme  
manu

Th  
in No  
slimme  
is nea  
a deep  
ing.

The CAT of the Mountain. This creature is in shape like a cat, only much larger. The hair or fur resembles also the skin of that domestick animal; the colour however differs, for the former is of a reddish or orange cast, but grows lighter near the belly. The whole skin is beautified with black spots of different figures, of which those on the back are long, and those on the lower parts round. On the ears there are black stripes. This creature is nearly as fierce as a leopard, but will seldom attack a man.

The BUFFALO. This beast, of which there are amazing numbers in those parts, is larger than an ox, has short black horns, with a large beard under his chin, and his head is so full of hair, that it falls over his eyes, and gives him a frightful look. There is a bunch on his back which begins at the haunches, and increasing gradually to the shoulders, reaches on to the neck. Both this excrescence and its whole body are covered with long hair, or rather wool, of a dun or moult colour, which is exceedingly valuable, especially that on the fore part of the body. His head is larger than a bull's, with a very short neck; the breast is broad, and the body decreases towards the buttocks. These creatures will run away at the sight of a man, and a whole herd will make off when they perceive a single dog. The flesh of the buffalo is excellent food, its hide extremely useful, and the hair very proper for the manufacture of various articles.

The DEER. There is but one species of deer in North-America, and these are higher and of a slimmer make than those in Europe. Their shape is nearly the same as the European, their colour of a deep fallow, and their horns very large and branching. This beast is the swiftest on the American

plains, and they herd together as they do in other countries.

The ELK greatly exceeds the deer in size, being in bulk equal to a horse. Its body is shaped like that of a deer, only its tail is remarkably short, being not more than three inches long. The colour of its hair, which is grey, and not unlike that of a camel, but of a more reddish cast, is nearly three inches in length, and as coarse as that of a horse. The horns of this creature grow to a prodigious size, extending so wide that two or three persons might sit between them at the same time. They are not forked like those of a deer, but have all their teeth or branches on the outer edge. Nor does the form of those of the Elk resemble a deer's, the former being flat, and eight or ten inches broad, whereas the latter are round and considerably narrower. They shed their horns every year in the month of February, and by August their new ones are nearly arrived at their full growth. Notwithstanding their size, and the means of defence nature has furnished them with, they are as timorous as a deer. Their skin is very useful, and will dress as well as that of a buck. They feed on grass in the summer, and on moss or buds in the winter.

The MOOSE is nearly about the size of the elk, and the horns of it are almost as enormous as that animal's; the stem of them, however, is not quite so wide, and they branch on both sides like those of a deer; this creature also sheds them every year. Though its hinder parts are very broad, its tail is not above an inch long. It has feet and legs like a camel; its head is about two feet long, its upper lip much larger than the under, and the nostrils of it are so wide that a man might thrust his hand into them a considerable way. The hair of the moose is

ligh  
elaf  
reta  
goo  
The  
from  
of a  
and  
ous  
thick  
this  
ous,  
fello  
foun  
Tho  
herd  
the c  
diffe  
defec

Th  
tall a  
shape  
form  
of th  
also  
bend  
or m  
and i  
flesh  
partic  
and f

Th  
the ca  
four f  
from  
into a



light grey, mixed with a blackish red. It is very elastic, for though it be beaten ever so long, it will retain its original shape. The flesh is exceeding good food, easy of digestion, and very nourishing. The nose, or upper lip, which is large and loose from the gums, is esteemed a great delicacy, being of a firm consistence, between marrow and gristle, and when properly dressed, affords a rich and luscious dish. Its hide is very proper for leather, being thick and strong, yet soft and pliable. The pace of this creature is always a trot, which is so expeditious, that it is exceeded in swiftness but by few of its fellow inhabitants of these woods. It is generally found in the forests, where it feeds on moss and buds. Though this creature is of the deer kind, it never herds as those do. Most authors confound it with the elk, deer, or carraboo, but it is a species totally different, as might be discovered by attending to the description I have given of each.

**The CARRABOO.** This beast is not near so tall as the moose; however, it is something like it in shape, only rather more heavy, and inclining to the form of the ass. The horns of it are not flat, as those of the elk are, but round like those of the deer; they also meet nearer together at the extremities, and bend more over the face than either those of the elk or moose. It partakes of the swiftness of the deer, and is with difficulty overtaken by its pursuers. The flesh of it is likewise equally as good, the tongue particularly is in high esteem. The skin being smooth and free from veins, is as valuable as shamoy.

**The CARCAJOU.** This creature, which is of the cat kind, is a terrible enemy to the preceding four species of beasts. He either comes upon them from some concealment unperceived, or climbs up into a tree, and taking his station on some of the

branches, waits till one of them, driven by an extreme of heat or cold, takes shelter under it; when he fastens upon his prey to the ground. This he is enabled to do by his long tail, with which he encircles the body of his adversary; and the only means they have to shun their fate, is by flying immediately to the water; by this method, as the carcajou has a great dislike to that element, he is sometimes got rid of before he can effect his purpose.

**The SKUNK.** This is the most extraordinary animal that the American woods produce. It is rather less than a pole-cat, and of the same species; it is therefore often mistaken for that creature, but it is very different from it in many points. Its hair is long and shining, variegated with large black and white spots, the former mostly on the shoulders and rump; its tail is very bushy, like that of the fox, part black, and part white like its body; it lives chiefly in the woods and hedges; but its extraordinary powers are only shewn when it is pursued. As soon as he finds himself in danger, he ejects to a great distance from behind, a small stream of water, of so subtle a nature, and at the same time of so powerful a smell, that the air is tainted with it for half a mile in circumference; and his pursuers, whether men or dogs, being almost suffocated with the stench, are obliged to give over the pursuit. On this account he is called by the French, *Enfant du Diable*, the Child of the Devil; or *Bete Puante*, the Stinking Beast. It is almost impossible to describe the noisome effects of the liquid with which this creature is supplied by nature for its defence. If a drop of it falls on your clothes, they are rendered so disagreeable that it is impossible ever after to wear them; or if any of it enters your eyelids, the pain becomes intolerable for a long time, and perhaps at last lose

your  
to be  
but a  
rather  
seous  
duciv  
This  
but I  
and h  
vessel  
from  
from  
proce  
the b  
quent  
sweet  
only  
every  
use.  
give i

Th  
can p  
dog,  
high  
those  
length  
except  
but r  
cover  
ches i  
straw,  
with  
ally th  
this c  
which  
the fl  
it, an

your sight. The smell of the skunk, though thus to be dreaded, is not like that of a putrid carcase, but a strong foetid effluvia of musk, which displeases rather from its penetrating power than from its nauseousness. It is notwithstanding considered as conducive to clear the head, and to raise the spirits. This water is supposed by naturalists to be its urine: but I have dissected many of them that I have shot, and have found within their bodies, near the urinal vessel, a small receptacle of water, totally distinct from the bladder which contained the urine, and from which alone I am satisfied the horrid stench proceeds. After having taken out with great care the bag wherein this water is lodged, I have frequently fed on them, and have found them very sweet and good; but one drop emitted, taints not only the carcase, but the whole house, and renders every kind of provisions, that are in it, unfit for use. With great justice therefore do the French give it such a diabolical name.

**THE PORCUPINE.** The body of an American porcupine is in bulk about the size of a small dog, but it is both shorter in length, and not so high from the ground. It varies very much from those of other countries both in its shape and the length of its quills. The former is like that of a fox, except the head, which is not so sharp and long, but resembles more that of a rabbit. Its body is covered with hair of a dark brown, about four inches long, great part of which are the thickness of a straw, and are termed its quills. These are white, with black points, hollow and very strong, especially those that grow on the back. The quills serve this creature for offensive and defensive weapons, which he darts at his enemies, and if they pierce the flesh in the least degree, they will sink quite into it, and are not to be extracted without incision.

The Indians use them for boring their ears and noses, to insert their pendants, and also by way of ornament to their stockings, hair, &c. besides which they greatly esteem the flesh.

The WOOD-CHUCK is a ground animal of the fur kind, about the size of a marten, being nearly fifteen inches long; its body however is rounder, and its legs shorter; the fore-paws of it are broad, and constructed for the purpose of digging holes in the ground, where it burrows like a rabbit; its fur is of a grey colour, on the reddish cast, and its flesh tolerable food.

The RACCOON is somewhat less in size than a beaver, and its feet and legs are like those of that creature, but short in proportion to its body, which resembles that of a badger. The shape of its head is much like a fox's, only the ears are shorter, more round and naked; and its hair is also similar to that animal's, being thick, long, soft, and black at the ends. On its face there is a broad stripe that runs across it, and includes the eyes, which are large. Its muzzle is black, and at the end roundish like that of a dog; the teeth are also similar to those of a dog in number and shape; the tail is long and round, with annular stripes on it like those of a cat; the feet have five long slender toes, armed with sharp claws, by which it is enabled to climb up trees like a monkey, and to run to the very extremities of the boughs. It makes use of its fore-feet, in the manner of hands, and feeds itself with them. The flesh of this creature is very good in the months of September and October, when fruit and nuts, on which it likes to feed, are plenty.

The  
and so  
howev  
short,  
the nig  
covere  
there  
are bla  
ter val  
long h  
really i  
any gr

The  
termed  
appear  
endow  
animal  
being  
way br  
bles.  
same as  
their b  
that it  
that cr  
perfect  
the sid  
they le  
leaves  
they f  
other f  
winter  
apart b  
remain  
the gre  
till the

The MARTEN is rather larger than a squirrel, and somewhat of the same make; its legs and claws, however, are considerably shorter. Its ears are short, broad, and roundish, and its eyes shine in the night like those of a cat. The whole body is covered with fur of a brownish fallow colour, and there are some in the more northern parts which are black; the skins of the latter are of much greater value than the other. The tail is covered with long hair, which makes it appear thicker than it really is. Its flesh is sometimes eaten, but is not in any great esteem.

The MUSQUASH, or MUSK-RAT, is so termed for the exquisite musk which it affords. It appears to be a diminutive of the beaver, being endowed with all the properties of that sagacious animal, and wants nothing but size and strength, being not much bigger than a large rat of the Norway breed, to rival the creature it so much resembles. Was it not for its tail, which is exactly the same as that of an European rat, the structure of their bodies is so much alike, especially the head, that it might be taken for a small beaver. Like that creature it builds itself a cabin, but of a less perfect construction, and takes up its abode near the side of some piece of water. In the spring they leave their retreats, and in pairs subsist on leaves and roots till the summer comes on, when they feed on strawberries, raspberries, and such other fruits as they can reach. At the approach of winter they separate, when each takes up its lodging apart by itself in some hollow of a tree, where they remain quite unprovided with food, and there is the greatest reason to believe, subsist without any till the return of spring.

**SQUIRRELS.** There are five sorts of squirrels in America; the red, the grey, the black, the variegated, and the flying. The two former are exactly the same as those of Europe; the black are somewhat larger, and differ from them only in colour; the variegated also resemble them in shape and figure, but are very beautiful, being finely stripped with white or grey, and sometimes with red and black. The American flying squirrel is much less than the European, being not above five inches long, and of a ruflet grey or ash-colour on the back, and white on the under parts. It has black prominent eyes, like those of the mouse, with a long, flat, broad tail. By a membrane on each side, which reaches from its fore to its hind legs, this creature is enabled to leap from one tree to another, even if they stand a considerable distance apart; this loose skin, which it is enabled to stretch out like a sail, and by which it is buoyed up, is about two inches broad, and is covered with a fine hair or down. It feeds upon the same provisions as the others, and is easily tamed.

**The BEAVER.** This creature has been so often treated of, and his uncommon abilities so minutely described, that any further account of it will appear unnecessary; however, for the benefit of those of my readers who are not so well acquainted with the form and properties of this sagacious and useful animal, I shall give a concise description of it. The beaver is an amphibious quadruped, which cannot live for any long time in the water; and it is said is even able to exist entirely without it, provided it has the convenience of sometimes bathing itself. The largest beavers are nearly four feet in length, and about fourteen or fifteen inches in breadth over the haunches; they weigh about sixty pounds. Its head is like that of the otter, but larger; its snout

is pr  
hairy  
teeth  
moun  
the u  
crook  
called  
very  
an ax  
side,  
to ea  
cut d  
to br  
partic  
five i  
the to  
obliqu  
feet a  
brane  
walk,  
as mu  
tail h  
feems  
the b  
being  
cover  
are jo  
about  
a half  
figure  
twelve  
where  
or the  
the bo  
dually  
of the  
climat

is pretty long, the eyes small, the ears short, round, hairy on the outside, and smooth within, and its teeth very long; the under teeth stand out of their mouths about the breadth of three fingers, and the upper half a finger, all of which are broad, crooked, strong and sharp; besides those teeth called the incisors, which grow double, are set very deep in their jaws, and bend like the edge of an axe, they have sixteen grinders, eight on each side, four above and four below, directly opposite to each other. With the former they are able to cut down trees of a considerable size, with the latter to break the hardest substances. Its legs are short, particularly the fore-legs, which are only four or five inches long, and not unlike those of a badger; the toes of the fore-feet are separate, the nails placed obliquely, and are hollow like quills; but the hind feet are quite different, and furnished with membranes between the toes. By this means it can walk, though but slowly, and is able to swim with as much ease as any other aquatic animal. The tail has somewhat in it that resembles a fish, and seems to have no manner of relation to the rest of the body, except the hind feet, all the other parts being similar to those of land animals. The tail is covered with a skin furnished with scales, that are joined together by a pellicle; the scales are about the thickness of parchment, nearly a line and a half in length, and generally of a hexagonal figure, having six corners; it is about eleven or twelve inches in length, and broader in the middle, where it is four inches over, than either at the root or the extremity. It is about two inches thick near the body, where it is almost round, and grows gradually thinner and flatter to the end. The colour of the beaver is different according to the different climates in which it is found. In the most northern

T t

parts they are generally quite black ; in more temperate, brown ; their colour becoming lighter and lighter as they approach towards the south. The fur is of two sorts all over the body, except at the feet, where it is very short ; that which is the longest is generally in length about an inch, but on the back it sometimes extends to two inches, gradually diminishing towards the head and tail. This part of the fur is harsh, coarse, and shining, and of little use ; the other part consists of a very thick and fine down, so soft that it feels almost like silk, about three quarters of an inch in length, and is what is commonly manufactured. Castor, which is useful in medicine, is produced from the body of this creature ; it was formerly believed to be its testicles, but later discoveries have shown that it is contained in four bags, situated in the lower belly. Two of which, that are called the superior, from their being more elevated than the others, are filled with a soft, resinous, adhesive matter, mixed with small fibres, greyish without, and yellow within, of a strong, disagreeable and penetrating scent, and very inflammable. This is the true castoreum : it hardens in the air, and becomes brown, brittle, and friable. The inferior bags contain an unctuous liquor like honey ; the colour of which is a pale yellow, and its odour somewhat different from the other, being rather weaker and more disagreeable ; it however thickens as it grows older, and at length becomes about the consistence of tallow. This has also its particular use in medicine ; but it is not so valuable as the true castoreum.

The ingenuity of these creatures in building their cabins, and in providing for their subsistence, is truly wonderful. When they are about to choose themselves a habitation, they assemble in companies sometimes of two or three hundred, and after mature

delit  
visio  
houf  
they  
ende  
rent  
cause  
felling  
those  
to be  
Havi  
four  
find  
They  
the v  
it.  
labou  
roll t  
the pl  
enter  
sue i  
rema  
their  
had b  
where  
much  
ced v  
cabin  
on pil  
thus f  
tremi  
lake.  
they  
dams.  
water  
tain e  
place



deliberation, fix on a place where plenty of provisions and all necessaries are to be found. Their houses are always situated in the water, and when they can find neither lake nor pond adjacent, they endeavour to supply the defect by stopping the current of some brook or small river by means of a causeway or dam. For this purpose they set about felling of trees, and they take care to choose out those that grow about the place where they intend to build, that they may swim down with the current. Having fixed upon those that are proper, three or four beavers placing themselves round a large one, find means with their strong teeth to bring it down. They also prudently contrive that it shall fall towards the water, that they may have the less way to carry it. After they have by a continuance of the same labour and industry, cut it into proper lengths, they roll these into the water, and navigate them towards the place where they are to be employed. Without entering more minutely into the measures they pursue in the construction of their dams, I shall only remark, that having prepared a kind of mortar with their feet, and laid it on with their tails, which they had before made use of to transport it to the place where it is requisite, they construct them with as much solidity and regularity as the most experienced workmen could do. The formation of their cabins is no less amazing. These are either built on piles in the middle of the small lakes they have thus formed, on the bank of a river, or at the extremity of some point of land that advances into a lake. The figure of them is round or oval, and they are fashioned with an ingenuity equal to their dams. Two thirds of the edifice stand above the water, and this part is sufficiently capacious to contain eight or ten inhabitants. Each beaver has his place assigned him, the floor of which he curiously

strews with leaves, or small branches of the pine-tree, so as to render it clean and comfortable; and their cabins are all situated so contiguous to each other, as to allow of an easy communication. The winter never surprises these animals before their business is completed; for by the latter end of September their houses are finished, and their stock of provisions is generally laid in. These consist of small pieces of wood, whose texture is soft, such as the poplar, the aspin, or willow, &c. which they lay up in piles, and dispose in such a manner as to preserve their moisture. Was I to enumerate every instance of sagacity that is to be discovered in these animals, they would fill a volume; and prove not only entertaining but instructive.

The OTTER. This creature also is amphibious, and greatly resembles a beaver, but is very different from it in many respects. Its body is nearly as long as a beaver's, but considerably less in all its parts. The muzzle, eyes, and the form of the head, are nearly the same, but the teeth are very unlike, for the otter wants the large incisors or nippers that the beaver has; instead of these, all his teeth, without any distinction, are shaped like those of a dog or wolf. The hair also of the former is not half so long as that belonging to the latter, nor is the colour of it exactly the same, for the hair of an otter under the neck, stomach, and belly, is more greyish than that of a beaver, and in many other respects it likewise varies. This animal, which is met with in most parts of the world, but in much greater numbers in North-America, is very mischievous, and when he is closely pursued, will not only attack dogs but men.

It  
furn  
bark  
flesh  
fome  
neces

TH  
the f  
pole-  
is bla  
creat  
verbi  
so v  
season  
that  
end,  
musk  
with  
chief

Th  
Fish  
the C  
the C  
Duck  
key, t  
geons  
koo, t  
the B  
law, t  
the V

It generally feeds upon fish, especially in the summer, but in the winter is contented with the bark of trees, or the produce of the fields. Its flesh both tastes and smells of fish, and is not wholesome food, though it is sometimes eaten through necessity.

The MINK is of the otter kind, and subsists in the same manner. In shape and size, it resembles a pole-cat, being equally long and slender. Its skin is blacker than that of an otter, or almost any other creature; "as black as a mink," being a proverbial expression in America; it is not, however, so valuable, though this greatly depends on the season in which it is taken. Its tail is round like that of a snake, but growing flattish towards the end, and is entirely without hair. An agreeable musky scent exhales from its body; and it is met with near the sources of rivers, on whose banks it chiefly lives.

### OF THE BIRDS.

The Eagle, the Hawk, the Night Hawk, the Fish Hawk, the Whipperwill, the Raven, the Crow, the Owl, Parrots, the Pelican, the Crane, the Stork, the Cormorant, the Heron, the Swan, the Goose, Ducks, Teal, the Loon, the Water-Hen, the Turkey, the Heath Cock, the Partridge, the Quail, Pigeons, the Snipe, Larks, the Woodpecker, the Cuckoo, the Blue Jay, the Swallow, the Wagon Bird, the Black Bird, the Red Bird, the Thrush, the Whetfaw, the Nightingale, the King Bird, the Robin, the Wren, and the Humming Bird.

The EAGLE. There are only two sorts of eagles in these parts, the bald and the grey, which are much the same in size, and similar to the shape of those of other countries.

The NIGHT HAWK. This bird is of the hawk species, its bill being crooked, its wings formed for swiftness, and its shape nearly like that of the common hawk, but in size it is considerably less, and in colour rather darker. It is scarcely ever seen, but in the evening, when, at the approach of twilight, it flies about, and darts itself in wanton gambols at the head of the belated traveller. Before a thunder-shower, these birds are seen at an amazing height in the air, assembled together in great numbers, as swallows are observed to do on the same occasion.

The WHIPPERWILL, or, as it is termed by the Indians, the Muckawifs. This extraordinary bird is somewhat like the last-mentioned in its shape and colour, only it has some whitish stripes across the wings, and like that is seldom ever seen till after sun-set. It also is never met with but during the spring and summer months. As soon as the Indians are informed by its notes of its return, they conclude that the frost is entirely gone, in which they are seldom deceived, and on receiving this assurance of milder weather, begin to sow their corn. It acquires its name by the noise it makes, which to the people of the colonies sounds like the name they give it, Whipperwill; to an Indian ear Muck-a-wifs. The words, it is true, are not unlike, but in this manner they strike the imagination of both; and the circumstance is a proof that the same sounds, if they are not rendered certain by being reduced to the rules of orthography, might convey different ideas

to different people. As soon as night comes on, these birds will range themselves on the fences, stumps, or stones that lie near some house, and repeat their melancholy notes without any variation till midnight. The Indians, and some of the inhabitants of the back settlements, think, if this bird perches upon any house, that it betokens some mishap to the inhabitants of it.

The FISH HAWK greatly resembles the latter in its shape, and receives his name from his food, which is generally fish; it skins over the lakes and rivers, and sometimes seems to lie expanded on the water, as he hovers so close to it, and having by some attractive power drawn the fish within its reach, darts suddenly upon them. The charm it makes use of is supposed to be an oil contained in a small bag in the body, and which nature has by some means or other supplied him with the power of using for this purpose; it is however very certain that any bait touched with a drop of the oil collected from this bird is an irresistible lure for all sorts of fish, and insures the angler great success.

The OWL. The only sort of owls that is found on the banks of the Mississippi is extremely beautiful in its plumage, being of a fine deep yellow or gold colour, pleasingly shaded and spotted.

The CRANE. There is a kind of crane in these parts, which is called by Father Hennipin, a pelican, that is about the size of the European crane, of a greyish colour, and with long legs; but this species differs from all others in its bill, which is about twelve inches long, and one inch and a half broad, of which breadth it continues to the end, where it is blunted, and round like a paddle; its tongue is of the same length.

**DUCKS.** Among a variety of wild ducks, the different species of which amount to upwards of twenty, I shall confine my description to one sort, that is, the wood duck, or, as the French term it, *Canard Branchus*. This fowl receives its name from its frequenting the woods, and perching on the branches of trees, which no other kind of water fowl (a characteristic that this still preserves) is known to do. It is nearly of a size with other ducks; its plumage is beautifully variegated, and very brilliant. The flesh of it also, as it feeds but little on fish, is finely flavoured, and much superior to any other sort.

**The TEAL.** I have already remarked in my Journal, that the teal found on the Fox River, and the head branches of the Mississippi, are perhaps not to be equalled for the farness and delicacy of their flesh by any other in the world. In colour, shape, and size they are very little different from those found in other countries.

**The LOON** is a water fowl, somewhat less than a teal, and is a species of the dobchick. Its wings are short, and its legs and feet large in proportion to the body; the colour of it is a dark brown, nearly approaching to black; and as it feeds only on fish, the flesh of it is very ill flavoured. These birds are exceedingly nimble and expert at diving, so that it is almost impossible for one person to shoot them, as they will dextrously avoid the shot by diving before they reach them; so that it requires three persons to kill one of them, and this can only be done the moment it raises its head out of the water, as it returns to the surface after diving. It however only repays the trouble taken to obtain it, by the excellent sport it affords.

Th  
part  
the fi  
much  
nearly  
eyes a  
tails,  
but co  
tries,  
and b  
early  
evenin  
easily

Th  
ours,  
them  
somet

Th  
tiful b  
ture o  
all ove  
are of  
a grea  
is con

Th  
like t  
On th  
which  
part o  
purpli  
and ta  
rump,  
wings  
on th

**THE PARTRIDGE.** There are three sorts of partridges here, the brown, the red, and the black, the first of which is most esteemed. They are all much larger than the European partridges, being nearly the size of a hen pheasant; their head and eyes are also like that bird, and they have all long tails, which they spread like a fan, but not erect; but contrary to the custom of those in other countries, they will perch on the branches of the poplar and black birch, on the buds of which they feed, early in the morning, and in the twilight of the evening, during the winter months, when they are easily shot.

**THE WOOD PIGEON** is nearly the same as ours, and there are such prodigious quantities of them on the banks of the Mississippi, that they will sometimes darken the sun for several minutes.

**THE WOODPECKER.** This is a very beautiful bird; there is one sort whose feathers are a mixture of various colours; and another that is brown all over the body, except the head and neck, which are of a fine red. As this bird is supposed to make a greater noise than ordinary at particular times, it is conjectured his cries then denote rain.

**THE BLUE JAY.** This bird is shaped nearly like the European jay, only that its tail is longer. On the top of its head is a crest of blue feathers, which is raised or let down at pleasure. The lower part of the neck behind, and the back, are of a purplish colour, and the upper sides of the wings and tail, as well as the lower part of the back and rump, are of a fine blue; the extremities of the wings are blackish, faintly tinged with dark blue on the edges, whilst the other parts of the wing are

barred across with black in an elegant manner. Upon the whole, this bird can scarcely be exceeded in beauty by any of the winged inhabitants of this or other climates. It has the same jetting motion that jays generally have, and its cry is far more pleasing.

The WAKON BIRD, as it is termed by the Indians, appears to be of the same species as the birds of paradise. The name they have given it is expressive of its superior excellence, and the veneration they have for it; the wakon bird being in their language, the bird of the Great Spirit. It is nearly the size of a swallow, of a brown colour, shaded about the neck with a bright green; the wings are of a darker brown than the body; its tail is composed of four or five feathers, which are three times as long as its body, and which are beautifully shaded with green and purple. It carries this fine length of plumage in the same manner as a peacock does, but it is not known whether it ever raises it into the erect position that bird sometimes does. I never saw any of these birds in the colonies, but the Naudowessie Indians caught several of them when I was in their country, and seemed to treat them as if they were of a superior rank to any other of the feathered race.

The BLACK BIRD. There are three sorts of birds in North-America that bear this name; the first is the common, or, as it is there termed, the crow black bird, which is quite black, and of the same size and shape of those in Europe, but it has not that melody in its notes which they have. In the month of September this sort fly in large flights, and do great mischief to the Indian corn, which is at that time just ripe. The second sort is the red-wing, which is rather smaller than the first species,

but like  
lower  
full  
among  
and lo  
but is  
bird.

ter, an  
part of  
clear v  
species  
pipe b  
deficie  
fort ar  
a rusty

The  
but w  
vermil  
Ottaw  
fung.  
of muc  
yellow

The  
like th  
In the  
where  
which

The  
to be  
swift.  
to mak  
seen it

The  
which



but like it is black all over its body, except on the lower rim of the wings, where it is a fine, bright, full scarlet. It builds its nest, and chiefly resorts among the small bushes that grow in meadows and low, swampy places. It whistles a few notes, but is not equal in its song to the European black-bird. The third sort is of the same size as the latter, and is jet black like that, but all the upper part of the wing, just below the back, is of a fine, clear white; as if nature intended to diversify the species, and to atone for the want of a melodious pipe by the beauty of its plumage; for this also is deficient in its musical powers. The beaks of every sort are of a full yellow, and the females of each of a rusty black like the European.

The RED BIRD is about the size of a sparrow, but with a long tail, and is all over of a bright vermilion colour. I saw many of them about the Ottawaw Lakes, but I could not learn that they sung. I also observed, in some other parts, a bird of much the same make, that was entirely of a fine yellow.

The WHETSAW is of the Cuckoo kind, being, like that, a solitary bird, and scarcely ever seen. In the summer months it is heard in the groves, where it makes a noise like the filing of a saw; from which it receives its name.

The KING BIRD is like a swallow, and seems to be of the same species as the black marten or swift. It is called the King Bird, because it is able to master almost every bird that flies. I have often seen it bring down a hawk.

The HUMMING BIRD. This beautiful bird, which is the smallest of the feathered inhabitants of

the air, is about the third part the size of a wren, and is shaped extremely like it. Its legs which are about an inch long, appear like two small needles, and its body is proportionable to them. But its plumage exceeds description. On its head it has a small tuft of a jetty, shining black; the breast of it is red, the belly white, the back, wings, and tail of the finest pale green; and small specks of gold are scattered with inexpressible grace over the whole: besides this, an almost imperceptible down softens the colours, and produces the most pleasing shades. With its bill, which is of the same diminutive size as the other parts of its body, it extracts from the flowers a moisture which is its nourishment; over these it hovers like a bee, but never lights on them, moving at the same time its wings with such velocity, that the motion of them is imperceptible; notwithstanding which, they make a humming noise, from whence it receives its name.

*Of the FISHES which are found in the waters of the Mississippi.*

I have already given a description of those that are taken in the great lakes.

The Sturgeon, the Pout or Cat Fish, the Pike, the Carp, and the Chub.

**THE STURGEON.** The fresh water sturgeon is shaped in no other respect like those taken near the sea, except in the formation of its head and tail, which are fashioned in the same manner, but the body is not so angulated, nor are there so many horny scales about it as on the latter. Its length is generally about two feet and a half or three feet long, but in circumference not proportionable, be-

ing  
and  
ters  
The  
as th  
darti  
take  
ther  
crib  
cept  
inch  
is of  
broa  
the f  
flesh  
with  
even

T  
inche  
scale  
recei  
three  
long  
with  
who  
or fi  
lusci  
flavo

T  
those

T  
Wall

ing a slender fish. The flesh is exceedingly delicate and finely flavoured; I caught some in the head waters of the river St Croix that far exceeded trout. The manner of taking them is by watching them as they lye under the banks in a clear stream, and darting at them with a fish-spear; for they will not take a bait. There is also in the Mississippi, and there only, another sort than the species I have described, which is similar to it in every respect, except that the upper jaw extends fourteen or fifteen inches beyond the under; this extensive jaw, which is of a gristly substance, is three inches and a half broad, and continues of that breadth, somewhat in the shape of an oar, to the end, which is flat. The flesh of this fish, however, is not to be compared with the other sort, and is not so much esteemed even by the Indians.

The CAT FISH. This fish is about eighteen inches long, of a brownish colour, and without scales. It has a large round head, from whence it receives its name, on different parts of which grow three or four strong, sharp horns about two inches long. Its fins are also very bony and strong, and without great care will pierce the hands of those who take them. It weighs commonly about five or six pounds; the flesh of it is exceedingly fat and luscious, and greatly resembles that of an eel in its flavour.

The CARP and CHUB are much the same as those in England, and nearly about the same in size.

## OF SERPENTS.

The Rattle Snake, the Long Black Snake, the Wall or House Adder, the Striped or Garter Snake,

the Water Snake, the Hissing Snake, the Green Snake, the Thorn-tail Snake, the Speckled Snake, the Ring Snake, the Two-headed Snake.

**The RATTLE SNAKE.** There appears to be two species of this reptile; one of which is commonly termed, the Black, and the other the Yellow; and of these the latter is generally considered as the largest. At their full growth they are upwards of five feet long, and the middle part of the body, at which it is of the greatest bulk, measures about nine inches round. From that part it gradually decreases both towards the head and the tail. The neck is proportionably very small, and the head broad and depressed. These are of a light brown colour, the iris of the eye red, and all the upper part of the body brown, mixed with a ruddy yellow, and chequered with many regular lines of a deep black, gradually shading towards a gold colour. In short, the whole of this dangerous reptile is very beautiful; and could it be viewed with less terror, such a variegated arrangement of colours would be extremely pleasing. But these are only to be seen in their highest perfection at the time this creature is animated by resentment; then every tint rushes from its subcutaneous recess, and gives the surface of the skin a deeper stain. The belly is of a palish blue, which grows fuller as it approaches the sides, and is at length intermixed with the colour of the upper part. The rattle at its tail, from which it receives its name, is composed of a firm, dry, callous, or horny substance, of a light brown, and consists of a number of cells which articulate one within another, like joints; and which increase every year, and make known the age of the creature. These articulations being very loose, the included points strike against the inner surface of the concave parts or rings into which they are admitted, and

as the  
rattlin  
is app  
ter for  
tre of  
ing fo  
that sh  
awaits  
as he  
ly inti  
as a m  
reptile  
unwar  
an opp  
observ  
pursue  
but lie  
if rel  
serpen  
he mal  
two in  
fixed  
tremit  
cat; a  
extend  
requir  
so con  
is mad  
nous  
destru  
mome  
chilly  
immed  
entere  
body,  
varieg  
tile is  
son of

Green  
Snake;

ars to  
s com-  
ellow;  
as the  
ards of  
ody, at  
ut nine  
decrea-  
e neck  
broad  
colour;  
of the  
d che-  
black,  
short,  
autiful,  
a va-  
remely  
n their  
s ani-  
from  
of the  
blue,  
s, and  
upper  
ceives  
us, or  
s of a  
other,  
r, and  
arti-  
points  
ncave  
, and

as the snake vibrates, or shakes its tail, makes a rattling noise. This alarm is always given when it is apprehensive of danger; and in an instant after forms itself into a spiral wreath; in the centre of which appears the head erect, and breathing forth vengeance against either man or beast that shall dare to come near it. In this attitude he awaits the approach of his enemies, rattling his tail as he sees or hears them coming on. By this timely intimation, which heaven seems to have provided as a means to counteract the mischief this venomous reptile would otherwise be the perpetrator of, the unwary traveller is apprised of his danger, and has an opportunity of avoiding it. It is however to be observed, that it never acts offensively; it neither pursues nor flies from any thing that approaches it, but lies in the position described, rattling his tail, as if reluctant to hurt. The teeth with which this serpent effects his poisonous purposes, are not those he makes use of on ordinary occasions; they are only two in number, very small and sharp pointed, and fixed in a smewy substance that lies near the extremity of the upper jaw, resembling the claws of a cat; at the root of each of these, which might be extended, contracted, or entirely hidden, as need requires, are two small bladders, which nature has so constructed, that at the same instant an incision is made by the teeth, a drop of a greenish, poisonous liquid enters the wound, and taints with its destructive quality the whole mass of blood. In a moment the unfortunate victim of its wrath feels a chilly tremor run through all his frame; a swelling immediately begins on the spot where the teeth had entered, which spreads by degrees over the whole body, and produces on every part of the skin the variegated hue of the snake. The bite of this reptile is more or less venomous, according to the season of the year in which it is given. In the dog-

days it often proves instantly mortal, and especially if the wound is made among the sinews situated in the back part of the leg, above the heel; but in the spring, in autumn, or during a cool day, which might happen in the summer, its bad effects are to be prevented by the immediate application of proper remedies; and these Providence has bounteously supplied, by causing the Rattle Snake Plantain, an approved antidote to the poison of this creature, to grow in great profusion wherever they are to be met with. There are likewise several other remedies besides this, for the venom of its bite. A decoction made of the buds or bark of the white ash, taken internally, prevents its pernicious effects. Salt is a newly discovered remedy, and if applied immediately to the part, or the wound be washed with brine, a cure might be assured. The fat of the reptile also rubbed on it, is frequently found to be very efficacious. But though the lives of the persons who have been bitten might be preserved by these, and their health in some degree restored, yet they annually experience a slight return of the dreadful symptoms about the time they received the instillation. However remarkable it may appear, it is certain, that though the venom of this creature affects, in a greater or less degree, all animated nature, the hog is an exception to the rule, as that animal will readily destroy them, without dreading their poisonous fangs, and fatten on their flesh. It has been often observed, and I can affirm the observation, that the Rattle Snake is charmed with any harmonious sounds, whether vocal or instrumental; I have many times seen them, even when they have been enraged, place themselves in a listening posture, and continue immoveably attentive and susceptible of delight all the time the music has lasted. I should have remarked, that when the Rattle Snake bites, it drops its under jaw, and holding the upper jaw erect, throws itself

in a  
light  
mom  
ture,  
with  
which  
It nev  
its ler  
peats  
with  
Black  
the Y  
variati  
one is  
versa.  
how t  
the eg  
notwit  
quire a  
reptile  
manne  
once k  
its bell  
them j  
as a pl  
of the  
little b  
purpos  
powder  
inciden  
dried,  
than th  
sumptio

The  
two for  
and siz

in a curve line, with great force, and as quick as lightning, on the object of its resentment. In a moment after, it returns again to its defensive posture, having disengaged its teeth from the wound with great celerity, by means of the position in which it had placed its head when it made the attack. It never extends itself to a greater distance than half its length will reach, and though it sometimes repeats the blow two or three times, it as often returns with a sudden rebound to its former state. The Black Rattle Snake differs in no other respect from the Yellow, than in being rather smaller, and in the variation of its colours, which are exactly reversed: one is black where the other is yellow, and vice versa. They are equally venomous. It is not known how these creatures engender; I have often found the eggs of several other species of the snake, but notwithstanding no one has taken more pains to acquire a perfect knowledge of every property of these reptiles than myself, I never could discover the manner in which they bring forth their young. I once killed a female that had seventy young ones in its belly, but these were perfectly formed, and I saw them just before retire to the mouth of their mother, as a place of security, on my approach. The galls of the serpent, mixed with chalk, are formed into little balls, and exported from America, for medical purposes. They are of the nature of Gascoign's powders, and are an excellent remedy for complaints incident to children. The flesh of the snake also dried, and made into broth, is much more nutritive than that of vipers, and very efficacious against consumptions.

The LONG BLACK SNAKE, these are also of two sorts, both of which is exactly similar in shape and size, only the belly of the one is a light red, the



other a faint blue; all the upper parts of their bodies are black and scaly. They are in general from six to eight feet in length, and carry their heads, as they crawl along, about a foot and a half from the ground. They easily climb the highest trees in pursuit of birds and squirrels, which are their chief food; and these, it is said, they charm by their looks, and render incapable of escaping from them. Their appearance carries terror with it to those who are unacquainted with their inability to hurt, but they are perfectly inoffensive and free from venom.

The STRIPED or GARTER SNAKE is exactly the same as the species found in other climates.

The WATER SNAKE is much like the Rattle Snake in shape and size, but is not endowed with the same venomous powers, being quite harmless.

The HISSING SNAKE I have already particularly described, when I treated, in my journal, of Lake Erie.

The GREEN SNAKE is about a foot and an half long, and in colour so near to grass and herbs, that it cannot be discovered as it lies on the ground; happily, however, it is free from venom, otherwise it would do an infinite deal of mischief, as those who pass through the meadows, not being able to perceive it, are deprived of the power of avoiding it.

The THORN-TAIL SNAKE. This reptile is found in many parts of America, but is very seldom to be seen. It is of a middle size, and receives its name from a thorn-like dart in its tail, with which it is said to inflict a mortal wound.



The SPECKLED SNAKE is an aqueous reptile, about two feet and a half in length, but without venom. Its skin, which is brown and white, with some spots of yellow in it, is used by the Americans as a cover for the handles of whips, and it renders them very pleasing to the sight.

The RING SNAKE is about twelve inches long, the body of it is entirely black, except a yellow ring which it has about its neck, and which appears like a narrow piece of ribband tied round it. This odd reptile is frequently found in the bark of trees, and among old logs.

The TWO-HEADED SNAKE. The only snake of this kind that was ever seen in America, was found about the year 1762, near Lake Champlain, by Mr Park, a gentleman of New-England, and made a present to Lord Amherst. It was about a foot long, and in shape like the common snake, but it was furnished with two heads exactly similar, which united at the neck. Whether this was a distinct species of snakes, and was able to propagate its likeness, or whether it was an accidental formation, I know not.

The TORTOISE or LAND TURTLE. The shape of this creature is so well known that it is unnecessary to describe it. There are seven or eight sorts of them in America, some of which are beautifully variegated, even beyond description. The shells of many have spots of red, green, and yellow in them, and the chequer work is composed of small squares curiously disposed. The most beautiful sort of these creatures are the smallest, and the bite of them is said to be venomous.

## LIZARDS, &amp;c.

Though there are numerous kinds of this class of the animal creation, in the country I treat of, I shall only take notice of two of them; which are termed the Swift and the Slow Lizard.

The **SWIFT LIZARD** is about six inches long, and has four legs and a tail. Its body, which is blue, is prettily striped with dark lines shaded with yellow; but the end of the tail is totally blue. It is so remarkable agile, that in an instant it is out of sight, nor can its movements be perceived by the quickest eye; so that it might more justly be said to vanish, than to run away. This species are supposed to poison those they bite, but are not dangerous, as they never attack persons that approach them, choosing rather to get suddenly out of their reach.

The **SLOW LIZARD** is of the same shape as the Swift, but its colour is brown; it is moreover of an opposite disposition, being altogether as slow in its movements as the other is swift. It is remarkable that these lizards are extremely brittle, and will break off near the tail as easily as an icicle.

Among the reptiles of North-America, there is a species of the toad, termed the **TREE TOAD**, which is nearly the same shape as the common sort, but smaller and with longer claws. It is usually found on trees, sticking close to the bark, or lying in the crevices of it; and so nearly does it resemble the colour of the tree to which it cleaves, that it is with difficulty distinguished from it. These creatures are only heard during the twilight of the morning and evening, or just before and after a shower of rain,

when  
than  
distan  
that  
air re  
to be

Th  
nearl  
parall  
nume  
tion o  
there  
almost  
Toba  
Water

Th  
Franc  
quant

Th  
size an  
colour  
quarte

Th  
honey  
the be

Th  
the siz  
like th  
are of

when they make a croaking noise somewhat shriller than that of a frog, which might be heard to a great distance. They infest the woods in such numbers; that their responsive notes at these times make the air resound. It is only a summer animal, and never to be found during the winter.

## INSECTS.

The interior parts of North-America abound with nearly the same insects as are met with in the same parallels of latitude; and the species of them are so numerous and diversified, that even a succinct description of the whole of them would fill a volume; I shall therefore confine myself to a few, which I believe are almost peculiar to this country; the Silk Worm, the Tobacco Worm, the Bee, the Lightning Bug, the Water Bug, and the Horned Bug.

The SILK WORM is nearly the same as those of France and Italy, but will not produce the same quantity of silk.

The TOBACCO WORM is a caterpillar of the size and figure of a silk worm; it is of a fine sea green colour, on its rump it has a sting or horn near a quarter of an inch long.

The Bees in America principally lodge their honey in the earth, to secure it from the ravages of the bears, who are remarkably fond of it.

The LIGHTNING BUG or FIRE FLY is about the size of a bee, but it is of the beetle kind, having like that insect two pair of wings, the upper of which are of a firm texture, to defend it from danger. When

it flies, and the wings are expanded, there is under these a kind of coat, constructed also like wings, which is luminous; and as the insect passes on, causes all the hinder part of its body to appear like a bright fiery coal. Having placed one of them on your hand, the under part only shines, and throws the light on the space beneath; but as soon as it spreads its upper wings to fly away, the whole body which lies behind them appears illuminated all around. The light it gives is not constantly of the same magnitude, even when it flies; but seems to depend on the expansion or contraction of the luminous coat or wings, and is very different from that emitted in a dark night by dry wood or some kinds of fish, it having much more the appearance of real fire. They seem to be sensible of the power they are possessed of, and to know the most suitable time for exerting it, as in a very dark night they are much more numerous than at any other time. They are only seen during the summer months of June, July, and August, and then at no other time but in the night. Whether from their colour, which is a dusky brown, they are not then discernible, or from their retiring to holes and crevices, I know not, but they are never to be discovered in the day. They chiefly are seen in low, swampy land, and appear like innumerable transient gleams of light. In dark nights, when there is much lightning without rain, they seem as if they wished either to imitate or assist the flashes; for during the intervals, they are uncommonly agile, and endeavour to throw out every ray they can collect. Notwithstanding this effulgent appearance, these insects are perfectly harmless; you may permit them to crawl upon your hand, when five or six, if they freely exhibit their glow together, will enable you to read almost the smallest print.

THE  
the f  
many  
surfa  
that

TH  
term  
colou  
and a  
two  
head  
very  
from  
in th  
who

I  
nial  
of f  
they  
large  
years  
locul

The WATER BUG is of a brown colour, about the size of a pea, and in shape nearly oval; it has many legs, by means of which, it passes over the surface of the water with such incredible swiftness, that it seems to slide or dart itself along.

The HORNED BUG, or, as it is sometimes termed, the STAG BEETLE, is of a dusky brown colour, nearly approaching to black, about an inch and an half long, and half an inch broad. It has two large horns, which grow on each side of the head, and meet horizontally, and with these it pinches very hard; they are branched like those of a stag, from whence it receives its name. They fly about in the evening, and prove very troublesome to those who are in the fields at that time.

I must not omit that the LOCUST is a septennial insect, as they are only seen, a small number of stragglers excepted, every seven years, when they infest these parts and the interior colonies in large swarms, and do a great deal of mischief. The years when they thus arrive are denominated the locust years.

---

## CHAPTER XIX.

*Of the Trees, Shrubs, Roots, Herbs, Flowers, &c.*

I SHALL here observe the same method that I have pursued in the preceding chapter, and having given a list of the trees, &c. which are natives of the interior parts of North-America, particularize such only as differ from the produce of other countries, or, being little known, have not been described.

## OF TREES.

The Oak, the Pine Tree, the Maple, the Ash, the Hemlock, the Bass or White Wood, the Cedar, the Elm, the Birch, the Fir, the Locust Tree, the Poplar, the Wickopick or. Suckwick, the Spruce, the Horn-beam, and the Button Wood Tree.

The OAK. There are several sorts of oaks in these parts; the black, the white, the red, the yellow, the grey, the swamp oak, and the chefnut oak; the five former vary but little in their external appearance, the shape of the leaves, and the colour

of t  
scar  
wher  
confi  
very  
oak  
shape  
which  
a mo  
of all  
often  
equal  
differ  
of the  
nut-tr  
It is p  
tough  
split i  
dure a

The  
tree p  
white,  
the tim  
deals.  
height  
though  
thern

The  
the har  
juice,  
very g  
richer  
duces a  
maple  
when v

of the bark being so much alike, that they are scarcely distinguishable; but the body of the tree when sawed discovers the variation, which chiefly consists in the colour of the wood, they being all very hard, and proper for building. The swamp oak differs materially from the others, both in the shape of the leaf, which is smaller, and in the bark, which is smoother; and likewise as it grows only in a moist, gravelly soil. It is esteemed the toughest of all woods, being so strong yet pliable, that it is often made use of instead of whalebone, and is equally serviceable. The chestnut oak also is greatly different from the others, particularly in the shape of the leaf, which much resembles that of the chestnut-tree, and for this reason it is so denominated. It is neither so strong as the former species, nor so tough as the latter, but is of a nature proper to be split into rails for fences, in which state it will endure a considerable time.

**The PINE TREE.** That species of the pine tree peculiar to this part of the continent is the white, the quality of which I need not describe, as the timber of it is so well known under the name of deals. It grows here in great plenty, to an amazing height and size, and yields an excellent turpentine, though not in such quantities as those in the northern parts of Europe.

**The MAPLE.** Of this tree there are two sorts, the hard and the soft, both of which yield a luscious juice, from which the Indians, by boiling, make very good sugar. The sap of the former is much richer and sweeter than the latter, but the soft produces a greater quantity. The wood of the hard-maple is very beautifully veined and curled, and when wrought into cabinets, tables, gunstocks, &c.

is greatly valued. That of the soft sort differs in its texture, wanting the variegated grain of the hard; it also grows more straight and free from branches, and is more easily split. It likewise may be distinguished from the hard, as this grows in meadows and low-lands, that on the hills and uplands. The leaves are shaped alike, but those of the soft maple are much the largest, and of a deeper green.

The ASH. There are several sorts of this tree in these parts, but that to which I shall confine my description, is the yellow ash, which is only found near the head branches of the Mississippi. This tree grows to an amazing height, and the body of it is so firm and sound, that the French traders who go into that country from Louisiana, to purchase furs, make of them periaguays; this they do by excavating them by fire, and when they are completed, convey in them the produce of their trade to New-Orleans, where they find a good market both for their vessels and cargoes. The wood of this tree greatly resembles that of the common ash; but it might be distinguished from any other tree by its bark; the rose or out-side bark being near eight inches thick, and indented with furrows more than six inches deep, which make those that are arrived to a great bulk appear uncommonly rough; and by this peculiarity they may be readily known. The rind or inside bark is of the same thickness as that of other trees, but its colour is a fine bright yellow, inasmuch that if it is but slightly handled, it will leave a stain on the fingers, which cannot easily be washed away; and if in the spring you peel off the bark, and touch the sap, which then arises between that and the body of the tree, it will leave so deep a tincture that it will require three or four days to wear it off. Many useful qualities belong-

ing  
time  
dyer

T  
Ame  
gree  
what  
and  
being  
or c

Th  
midd  
grow  
a cor  
bowl  
and  
other

Th  
be a  
from  
when  
instan  
natur  
canoe  
other  
pose;  
oily a  
it, and  
rable

Th  
size, a  
is quit  
very p  
cover



ing to this tree I doubt not will be discovered in time, besides its proving a valuable acquisition to the dyer.

The **HEMLOCK TREE** grows in every part of America, in a greater or less degree. It is an evergreen of a very large growth, and has leaves somewhat like that of yew; it is however quite useless, and only an incumbrance to the ground, the wood being of a very coarse grain, and full of wind-shakes or cracks.

The **BASS** or **WHITE WOOD** is a tree of a middling size, and the whitest and softest wood that grows; when quite dry, it swims on the water like a cork; in the settlements the turners make of it bowls, trenchers, and dishes, which wear smooth, and will last a long time; but when applied to any other purpose, it is far from durable.

The **WICKOPICK** or **SUCKWICK** appears to be a species of the white wood, and is distinguished from it by a peculiar quality in the bark, which when pounded, and moistened with a little water, instantly becomes a matter of the consistence and nature of size. With this the Indians pay their canoes, and it greatly exceeds pitch, or any other material usually appropriated to that purpose; for besides its adhesive quality, it is of so oily a nature, that the water cannot penetrate through it, and its repelling power abates not for a considerable time.

The **BUTTON WOOD** is a tree of the largest size, and might be distinguished by its bark, which is quite smooth and prettily mottled. The wood is very proper for the use of cabinet-makers. It is covered with small hard burs, which spring from

its branches, that appear not unlike buttons, and from these I believe it receives its name.

## NUT TREES.

The Butter or Oil Nut, the Walnut, the Hazle Nut, the Beech Nut, the Pecan Nut, the Chestnut, the Hickory.

**The BUTTER or OIL NUT.** As no mention has been made by any authors of this nut, I shall be the more particular in my account of it. The tree grows in meadows where the soil is rich and warm. The body of it seldom exceeds a yard in circumference, is full of branches, the twigs of which are short and blunt, and its leaves resemble those of the walnut. The nut has a shell like that fruit, which when ripe is more furrowed, and more easily cracked; it is also much longer and larger than a walnut, and contains a greater quantity of kernel, which is very oily; and of a rich agreeable flavour. I am persuaded that a much purer oil than that of olives, might be extracted from this nut. The inside bark of this tree dyes a good purple; and it is said, varies in its shade, being either darker or lighter, according to the month in which it is gathered.

**The BEECH NUT.** Though this tree grows exactly like that of the same name in Europe, yet it produces nuts equally as good as chestnuts; on which bears, martens, squirrels, partridges, turkeys, and many other beasts and birds feed. The nut is contained, whilst growing, in an outside case, like that of a chestnut, but not so prickly; and the coat of the inside shell is also smooth like that; only its

form  
lie so  
food  
The  
durin  
is a c  
arise  
tive f

Th  
kind,  
the fi  
the sh  
that c  
Illinoi

Th  
bears  
sorts o  
wood  
gener  
also v  
lent su

I na  
taneou  
receiv  
or ma

The  
Tree,  
Sweet

form is nearly triangular. Vast quantities of them lie scattered about in the woods, and supply with food great numbers of the creatures just mentioned. The leaves, which are white, continue on the trees during the whole winter. A decoction made of them is a certain and expeditious cure for wounds which arise from burning or scalding, as well as a restorative for those members that are nipped by the frost.

The PECAN NUT is somewhat of the walnut kind, but rather smaller than a walnut, being about the size of a middling acorn, and of an oval form; the shell is easily cracked, and the kernel shaped like that of a walnut. This tree grows chiefly near the Illinois River.

The HICKORY is also of the walnut kind, and bears a fruit nearly like that tree. There are several sorts of them, which vary only in the colour of the wood. Being of a very tough nature, the wood is generally used for the handles of axes, &c. It is also very good fire-wood, and as it burns, an excellent sugar distils from it.

## FRUIT TREES.

I need not observe that these are all the spontaneous productions of nature, which have never received the advantages of ingrafting, transplanting, or manuring.

The Vine, the Mulberry Tree, the Crab Apple Tree, the Plum Tree, the Cherry Tree, and the Sweet Gum Tree.

The VINE is very common here, and of three kinds; the first sort hardly deserves the name of a grape; the second much resembles the Burgundy grape, and if exposed to the sun, a good wine might be made from them. The third sort resembles Zante currants, which are so frequently used in cakes, &c. in England, and if proper care was taken of them, would be equal, if not superior, to those of that country.

The MULBERRY TREE is of two kinds, red and white, and nearly of the same size or those of France and Italy, and grow in such plenty, as to feed any quantity of silk worms.

The GRAB APPLE TREE bears a fruit that is much larger and better flavoured than those of Europe.

The PLUM TREE. There are two sorts of plums in this country, one a large sort of a purple cast on one side, and red on the reverse, the second totally green, and much smaller. Both these are of a good flavour, and are greatly esteemed by the Indians, whose taste is not refined, but who are satisfied with the productions of nature in their unimproved state.

The CHERRY TREE. There are three sorts of cherries in this country; the black, the red, and the sand cherry; the two latter may with more propriety be ranked among the shrubs, as the bush that bears the sand cherries almost creeps along the ground, and the other rises not above eight or ten feet in height; however I shall give an account of them all in this place. The black cherries are about the size of a currant, and hang in clusters like grapes; the trees which bear them being very fruitful, they

are generally loaded, but the fruit is not good to eat; however, they give an agreeable flavour to brandy, and turn it to the colour of claret. The red cherries grow in the greatest profusion, and hang in bunches, like the black sort just described; so that the bushes which bear them appear at a distance like solid bodies of red matter. Some people admire this fruit, but they partake of the nature and taste of allum, leaving a disagreeable roughness in the throat, and being very astringent. As I have already described the sand cherries, which greatly exceed the two other sorts, both in flavour and size, I shall give no further description of them. The wood of the black cherry tree is very useful, and works well into cabinet ware.

The SWEET GUM TREE, or LIQUID AMBER, (Copalm) is not only extremely common, but it affords a balm, the virtues of which are infinite. Its bark is black and hard, and its wood so tender and supple, that when the tree is felled, you may draw from the middle of it rods of five or six feet in length. It cannot be employed in building or furniture, as it warps continually. Its leaf is indented with five points, like a star. This balm is reckoned by the Indians to be an excellent febrifuge, and it cures wounds in two or three days.

#### S H R U B S .

The Willow, Shin Wood, Shumack, Sassafras, the Prickly Ash, Moose Wood, Spoon Wood, Large Elder, Dwarf Elder, Poisonous Elder, Juniper, Shrub Oak, Sweet Fern, the Laurel, the Witch Hazle, the Myrtle Wax Tree, Winter Green, the Fever Bush, the Cranberry Bush, the Gooseberry Bush,

the Currant Bush, the Whortle Berry, the Raspberry, the Black Berry, and the Choak Berry.

**THE WILLOW.** There are several species of the willow, the most remarkable of which is a small sort that grows on the banks of the Mississippi, and some other places adjacent. The bark of this shrub supplies the beaver with its winter food; and where the water has washed the soil from its roots, they appear to consist of fibres interwoven together like thread, the colour of which is of an inexpressibly fine scarlet; with this the Indians tinge many of the ornamental parts of their dress.

**SHIN WOOD.** This extraordinary shrub grows in the forests, and rising like a vine, runs near the ground for six or eight feet, and then takes root again; in the same manner taking root and springing up successively, one stalk covers a large space; this proves very troublesome to the hasty traveller, by striking against his shins, and entangling his legs; from which it has acquired its name.

The **SASSAFRAS** is a word well known for its medicinal qualities. It might with equal propriety be termed a tree as a shrub, as it sometimes grows thirty feet high; but in general it does not reach higher than those of the shrub kind. The leaves, which yield an agreeable fragrance, are large, and nearly separated into three divisions. It bears a reddish brown berry, of the size and shape of Pimento, and which is sometimes used in the colonies as a substitute for that spice. The bark or roots of this tree is infinitely superior to the wood for its use in medicine, and I am surprised it is so seldom to be met with, as its efficacy is so much greater.

The  
grows  
a leaf  
ceives  
of tho  
and w  
pals t  
also b  
fiery  
partic  
teemed  
have  
and th  
expedi  
the bl

The  
and is  
worth  
pliable  
son, a  
as her

The  
and th

The  
elder,  
and br  
only fo  
is endo  
renders  
it affect  
years o  
or the r  
them;  
operate

The PRICKLY ASH is a shrub that sometimes grows to the height of ten or fifteen feet, and has a leaf exactly resembling that of an ash, but it receives the epithet to its name from the abundance of short thorns with which every branch is covered, and which renders it very troublesome to those who pass through the spot where they grow thick. It also bears a scarlet berry, which, when ripe, has a fiery taste, like pepper. The bark of this tree, particularly the bark of the roots, is highly esteemed by the natives for its medicinal qualities. I have already mentioned one instance of its efficacy, and there is no doubt but that the decoction of it will expeditiously and radically remove all impurities of the blood.

The MOOSE WOOD grows about four feet high, and is very full of branches; but what renders it worth notice is its bark, which is of so strong and pliable a texture, that being peeled off at any season, and twisted, makes equally as good cordage as hemp.

The SPOON WOOD is a species of the laurel, and the wood when sawed resembles the box wood.

The ELDER, commonly termed the poisonous elder, nearly resembles the other sorts in its leaves and branches, but it grows much straighter, and is only found in swamps and moist soils. This shrub is endowed with a very extraordinary quality, that renders it poisonous to some constitutions, which it affects if the person only approaches within a few yards of it, whilst others may even chew the leaves or the rind, without receiving the least detriment from them; the poison however is not mortal, though it operates very violently on the infected person whose

body and head swell to an amazing size, and are covered with eruptions, that at their height resemble the confluent small pox. As it grows also in many of the provinces, the inhabitants cure its venom by drinking saffron tea, and anointing the external parts with a mixture composed of cream and marsh mallows.

The **SHRUB OAK** is exactly similar to the oak tree, both in its wood and leaves, and like that, bears an acorn, but it never rises from the ground above four or five feet, growing crooked and knotty. It is found chiefly on a dry, gravelly soil.

The **WITCH HAZLE** grows very bushy, about ten feet high, and is covered early in May with numerous white blossoms. When this shrub is in bloom, the Indians esteem it a further indication that the frost is entirely gone, and that they might sow their corn. It has been said, that it is possessed of the power of attracting gold and silver, and that twigs of it are made use of to discover where the veins of these metals lie hid; but I am apprehensive that this is only a fallacious story, and not to be depended on; however, that supposition has given it the name of Witch Hazle.

The **MYRTLE WAX TREE** is a shrub about four or five feet high, the leaves of which are larger than those of the common myrtle, but they smell exactly alike. It bears its fruit in bunches, like a nosegay, rising from the same place in various stalks, about two inches long: at the end of each of these is a little nut containing a kernel, which is wholly covered with a gluey substance, which being boiled in water, swims on the surface of it, and becomes a kind of green wax; this is more valuable than bees wax, being of a more brittle nature, but mixed

with  
fends

WI  
the sp  
the flo  
but no  
is full  
are fm  
the sev  
in the  
berries  
rating  
interic  
in beer  
blood

The  
feet h  
bears a  
of it  
buds o  
this va  
an and  
plaints  
account  
the col

The  
of this  
that of  
vine, i  
the hei  
rarely  
being  
morass  
former



with it makes a good candle, which, as it burns, sends forth an agreeable scent.

**WINTER GREEN.** This is an evergreen, of the species of the myrtle, and is found on dry heaths; the flowers of it are white, and in the form of a rose, but not larger than a silver penny; in the winter it is full of red berries, about the size of a floe, which are smooth and round; these are preserved during the severe season by the snow, and are at that time in the highest perfection. The Indians eat these berries, esteeming them very balsamic, and invigorating to the stomach. The people inhabiting the interior colonies steep both the sprigs and berries in beer, and use it as a diet drink for cleansing the blood from scorbutic disorders.

The **FEVER BUSH** grows about five or six feet high; its leaf is like that of a lilach, and it bears a reddish berry of a spicy flavour. The stalks of it are excessively brittle. A decoction of the buds or wood is an excellent febrifuge, and from this valuable property it receives its name. It is an ancient Indian remedy for all inflammatory complaints, and likewise much esteemed on the same account, by the inhabitants of the interior parts of the colonies.

The **CRANBERRY BUSH.** Though the fruit of this bush greatly resembles in size and appearance that of the common sort, which grows on a small vine, in morasses and bogs, yet the bush runs to the height of ten or twelve feet; but it is very rarely to be met with. As the meadow cranberry, being of a local growth, and flourishing only in morasses, cannot be transplanted or cultivated, the former, if removed at a proper season, would be a

valuable acquisition to the garden, and with proper nurture prove equally as good, if not better.

**The CHOAK BERRY.** The shrub thus termed by the natives grows about five or six feet high, and bears a berry about the size of a sloe, of a jet black, which contains several small seeds within the pulp. The juice of this fruit, though not of a disagreeable flavour, is extremely tart, and leaves a roughness in the mouth and throat when eaten, that has gained it the name of choak berry.

### ROOTS AND PLANTS.

Elecampagne, Spikenard, Angelica, Sarsaparilla, Ginseng, Ground Nuts, Wild Potatoes, Liquorice, Snake Root, Gold Thread, Solomon's Seal, Devil's Bite, Blood Root, Onions, Garlick, Wild Parsnip, Mandrakes, Hellebore White and Black.

**SPIKENARD**, vulgarly called in the colonies Petty-Morrel. This plant appears to be exactly the same as the Asiatic spikenard, so much valued by the ancients. It grows near the sides of brooks, in rocky places, and its stem, which is about the size of a goose quill, springs up like that of angelica, reaching about a foot and an half from the ground. It bears bunches of berries in all respects like those of the elder, only rather larger. These are of such a balsamic nature, that when infused in spirits, they make a most palatable and reviving cordial.

**SARSAPARILLA.** The root of this plant, which is the most estimable part of it, is about the size of a goose quill, and runs in different directions,

twin  
from  
fibre  
the  
an h  
stem  
shape  
of ea  
white  
The  
in m  
bein  
tenu  
mou

G  
grow  
expo  
way  
to b  
grow  
ble.  
at th  
bran  
rilla  
ish.  
pric  
the  
whe  
the

G  
vine  
on t  
und  
up b  
skei

twined and crooked to a great length in the ground ; from the principal stem of it spring many smaller fibres, all of which are tough and flexible. From the roots immediately shoots a stalk about a foot and an half long, which at the top branches into three stems ; each of these has three leaves, much of the shape and size of a walnut leaf ; and from the fork of each of the three stems grows a bunch of bluish white flowers, resembling those of the spikenard. The bark of the roots, which alone should be used in medicine, is of a bitterish flavour, but aromatic, being a gentle sudorific, and very powerful in attenuating the blood when impeded by gross humours.

GINSENG is a root that was once supposed to grow only in Korea, from whence it was usually exported to Japan, and by that means found its way into Europe ; but it has been lately discovered to be also a native of North-America, where it grows to as great perfection, and is equally valuable. Its root is like a small carrot, but not so taper at the end ; it is sometimes divided into two or more branches ; in all other respects it resembles *sarsaparilla* in its growth. The taste of the root is bitterish. In the eastern parts of Asia it bears a great price, being there considered as a panacea, and is the last refuge of the inhabitants in all disorders ; when chewed, it certainly is a great strengthener of the stomach.

GOLD THREAD. This is a plant of the small vine kind, which grows in the swampy places, and lies on the ground. The roots spread themselves just under the surface of the morass, and are easily drawn up by handfulls. They resemble a large entangled skein of thread, of a fine bright gold colour ; and I

am persuaded would yield a beautiful and permanent yellow dye. It is also greatly esteemed both by the Indians and colonists, as a remedy for any foreness in the mouth, but the taste of it is exquisitely bitter.

**SOLOMON'S SEAL** is a plant that grows on the sides of rivers, and in rich meadow land. It rises in the whole to about three feet high, the stalks being two feet, when the leaves begin to spread themselves, and reach a foot farther. A part in every root has an impression upon it about the size of a sixpence, which appears as if it were made by a seal, and from these it receives its name. It is greatly valued on account of its being a fine purifier of the blood.

**DEVIL'S BITE** is another wild plant, which grows in the fields, and receives its name from a print that seems to be made by the teeth in the roots. The Indians say that this was once an universal remedy for every disorder that human nature is incident to ; but some of the evil spirits envying mankind the possession of so efficacious a medicine, gave the root a bite, which deprived it of a great part of its virtue.

**BLOOD ROOT.** A sort of plantain that springs out of the ground in six or seven long rough leaves, the veins of which are red ; the root of it is like a small carrot, both in colour and appearance ; when broken, the inside of it is of a deeper colour than the outside, and distils several drops of juice that look like blood. This is a strong emetic, but a very dangerous one.

## HERBS.

Balm, Nettles, Cinque Foil, Eyebright, Sanicle, Plantain, Rattle Snake Plantain, Poor Robin's Plantain, Toad Plantain, Maiden Hair, Wild Dock, Rock Liverwort, Noble Liverwort, Bloodwort, Wild Beans, Ground Ivy, Water Cresses, Yarrow, May Weed, Gargit, Skunk Cabbage or Poke, Wake Robin, Betony, Scabious Mullen, Wild Pease, Mouse Ear, Wild Indigo, Tobacco, and Cat Mint.

SANICLE has a root which is thick towards the upper part, and full of small fibres below; the leaves of it are broad, roundish, hard, smooth, and of a fine shining green; a stalk rises from these two to the height of a foot, which is quite smooth and free from knots, and on the top of it are several small flowers of a reddish white, shaped like a wild rose. A tea made of the root is vulnerary and balsamic.

RATTLE SNAKE PLANTAIN. This useful herb is of the plantain kind, and its leaves, which spread themselves on the ground, are about one inch and an half wide, and five inches long; from the centre of these arises a small stalk, nearly six inches long, which bears a little white flower; the root is about the size of a goose quill, and much bent and divided into several branches. The leaves of this herb are more efficacious than any other part of it for the bite of the reptile from which it receives its name; and being chewed and applied immediately to the wound, and some of the juice swallowed, seldom fails of averting very dangerous symptoms. So convinced are the Indians of the power of this infallible antidote, that for a trifling bribe of spiritu-

ous liquor, they will at any time permit a rattlesnake to drive its fangs into their flesh. It is to be remarked, that during those months in which the bite of these creatures is most venomous, this remedy is in its greatest perfection, and most luxuriant in its growth.

POOR ROBIN'S PLANTAIN is of the same species as the latt, but more diminutive in every respect; it receives its name from its size, and the poor land on which it grows. It is a good medicinal herb, and often administered with success in fevers and internal weaknesses.

TOAD PLANTAIN resembles the common plantain, only it grows much ranker, and is thus denominated because toads love to harbour under it.

ROCK LIVERWORT is a sort of Liverwort that grows on rocks, and is of the nature of kelp or moss. It is esteemed as an excellent remedy against declines.

GARGIT or SKOKE is a large kind of weed, the leaves of which are about six inches long, and two inches and a half broad; they resemble those of spinage in their colour and texture, but not in shape. The root is very large, from which spring different stalks that run eight or ten feet high, and are full of red berries; these hang in clusters in the month of September, and are generally called pigeon berries, as those birds then feed on them. When the leaves first spring from the ground, after being boiled, they are a nutritious and wholesome vegetable, but when they are grown nearly to their full size, they acquire a poisonous quality. The roots applied to the hands and feet of a person afflicted with a fever, prove a very powerful absorbent.

SK  
grow  
it are  
ly ov  
fed of  
made  
cure  
from  
same  
is so t

W  
py lar  
tasted  
diatel  
hard i  
some  
mouth  
its aft  
manki  
intern  
bowel

WI  
as tha  
coloni  
or fix  
many  
of sma  
breadt  
the ju

CA  
veral b  
feet hi  
betony  
a bitin

**SKUNK CABBAGE** or **POKE** is an herb that grows in moist and swampy places. The leaves of it are about a foot long, and six inches broad, nearly oval, but rather pointed. The roots are composed of great numbers of fibres, a lotion of which is made use of by the people of the colonies for the cure of the itch. There issues a strong musky smell from this herb, something like the animal of the same name, before described, and on that account it is so termed.

**WAKE ROBIN** is an herb that grows in swampy lands; its root resembles a small turnip, and if tasted will greatly inflame the tongue, and immediately convert it from its natural shape into a round hard substance; in which state it will continue for some time, and during this no other part of the mouth will be affected. But when dried, it loses its astringent quality, and becomes beneficial to mankind, for if grated into cold water, and taken internally, it is very good for all complaints of the bowels.

**WILD INDIGO** is an herb of the same species as that from whence indigo is made in the southern colonies. It grows on one stalk to the height of five or six inches from the ground, when it divides into many branches, from which issue a great number of small hard bluish leaves that spread to a great breadth, and among those it bears a yellow flower; the juice of it has a very disagreeable scent.

**CAT MINT** has a woody root, divided into several branches, and it sends forth a stalk about three feet high; the leaves are like those of the nettle or betony, and they have a strong smell of mint, with a biting acrid taste; the flowers grow on the tops

of the branches, and are of a faint purple or whitish colour. It is called cat mint, because it is said that cats have an antipathy to it, and will not let it grow. It has hardly the virtues of common mint. \*

## FLOWERS.

Heart's Ease, Lillies red and yellow, Pond Lillies, Cowslips, May Flowers, Jessamine, Honeysuckles, Rock Honeysuckles, Roses red and white, Wild Hollyhock, Wild Pinks, Golden Rod.

I shall not enter into a minute description of the flowers above recited, but only just observe, that they much resemble those of the same name which grow in Europe, and are as beautiful in colour, and as perfect in odour, as they can be supposed to be in their wild uncultivated state.

## FARINACEOUS AND LEGUMINOUS ROOTS, &c.

Maize or Indian Corn, Wild Rice, Beans, the Squash, &c.

MAIZE or INDIAN CORN grows from six to ten feet high, on a stalk full of joints, which is stiff and solid, and when green, abounding with a sweet juice. The leaves are like those of the reed, about two feet in length, and three or four inches broad. The flowers which are produced at some distance from the fruit on the same plant, grow like the ears

\* For an account of Tobacco, see a treatise I have published on the culture of that plant.



of oats, and are sometimes white, yellow, or of a purple colour. The seeds are as large as pease, and like them quite naked and smooth, but of a roundish surface, rather compressed. One spike generally consists of about six hundred grains, which are placed closely together in rows to the number of eight or ten, and sometimes twelve. This corn is very wholesome, easy of digestion, and yields as good nourishment as any other sort. After the Indians have reduced it into meal by pounding it, they make cakes of it, and bake them before the fire. I have already mentioned that some nations eat it in cakes before it is ripe, in which state it is very agreeable to the palate, and extremely nutritive.

**WILD RICE.** This grain, which grows in the greatest plenty throughout the interior parts of North-America, is the most valuable of all the spontaneous productions of that country. Exclusive of its utility as a supply of food for those of the human species who inhabit this part of the continent, and obtained without any other trouble than that of gathering it in, the sweetness and nutritious quality of it attract an infinite number of wild fowl of every kind, which flock from distant climes, to enjoy this rare repast; and by it become inexpressibly fat and delicious. In future periods it will be of great service to the infant colonies, as it will afford them a present support, until, in the course of cultivation, other supplies may be produced; whereas in those realms which are not furnished with this bounteous gift of nature, even if the climate is temperate and the soil good, the first settlers are often exposed to great hardships from the want of an immediate resource for necessary food. This useful grain grows in the water where it is about two feet deep, and where it finds a rich, muddy soil. The stalks of it, and the branches or ears that bear the seed, re-

semble oats both in their appearance and manner of growing. The stalks are full of joints, and rise more than eight feet above the water. The natives gather the grain in the following manner: Nearly about the time that it begins to turn from its milky state and to ripen, they run their canoes into the midst of it, and tying bunches of it together, just below the ears, with bark, leave it in this situation three or four weeks longer till it is perfectly ripe. About the latter end of September they return to the river, when each family having its separate allotment, and being able to distinguish their own property by the manner of fastening the sheaves, gather in the portion that belongs to them. This they do by placing their canoes close to the bunches of rice, in such position as to receive the grain when it falls, and then beat it out with pieces of wood formed for that purpose. Having done this, they dry it with smoke, and afterwards tread or rub off the outside husk; when it is fit for use, they put it into the skins of fawns, or young buffaloes, taken off nearly whole for this purpose, and sewed into a sort of sack, wherein they preserve it till the return of their harvest. It has been the subject of much speculation, why this spontaneous grain is not found in any other regions of America, or in those countries situated in the same parallels of latitude, where the waters are as apparently adapted for its growth as in the climate I treat of. As for instance, none of the countries that lie to the south and east of the great lakes, even from the provinces north of the Carolinas, to the extremities of Labradore, produce any of this grain. It is true I found great quantities of it in the watered lands near Detroit, between Lake Huron and Lake Erie, but on enquiry I learned that it never arrived nearer to maturity than just to blossom; after which it appeared blighted, and died away. This convinces me that the north-west wind,

as I  
these  
inim  
over  
whic  
than

BR  
the I  
the si  
India

TH  
of the  
called  
as a f  
round  
oblon  
eaten  
of a p  
excel  
ter's f  
for fe

as I have before hinted, is much more powerful in these than in the interior parts; and that it is more inimical to the fruits of the earth, after it has passed over the lakes, and become united with the wind which joins it from the frozen regions of the north, than it is further westward.

**BEANS.** These are nearly of the same shape as the European beans, but are not much larger than the smallest size of them. They are boiled by the Indians, and eaten chiefly with bears flesh.

The **SQUASH.** They have also several species of the **MELON** or **PUMKIN**, which by some are called squashes, and which serve many nations partly as a substitute for bread. Of these there is the round, the crane-neck, the small flat, and the large oblong squash. The smaller sorts being boiled, are eaten during the summer as vegetables; and are all of a pleasing flavour. The crane-neck, which greatly excels all the others, are usually hung up for a winter's store, and in this manner might be preserved for several months.

---

lake  
ward  
large  
sea,  
them  
open  
that  
will  
ver  
them  
inter  
the l  
do th  
who  
prod  
thofe  
den  
pow

T  
from  
fertil  
clud  
on th  
fitua  
habie  
to eff  
They  
fpon  
tobac

---

## A P P E N D I X.

THE countries that lie between the great lakes and River Mississippi, and from thence southward to West Florida, although in the midst of a large continent, and at a great distance from the sea, are so situated, that a communication between them and other realms might conveniently be opened; by which means those empires or colonies that may hereafter be founded or planted therein, will be rendered commercial ones. The great River Mississippi, which runs through the whole of them, will enable their inhabitants to establish an intercourse with foreign climes, equally as well as the Euphrates, the Nile, the Danube, or the Wolga do those people which dwell on their banks, and who have no other convenience for exporting the produce of their own country, or for importing those of others, than boats and vessels of light burden: notwithstanding which, they have become powerful and opulent states.

The Mississippi, as I have before observed, runs from north to south, and passes through the most fertile and temperate part of North-America, excluding only the extremities of it, which verge both on the torrid and frigid zones. Thus favourably situated, when once its banks are covered with inhabitants, they need not long be at a loss for means to establish an extensive and profitable commerce. They will find the country towards the south almost spontaneously producing silk, cotton, indigo, and tobacco; and the more northern parts, wine, oil,

beef, tallow, skins, buffalo-wool, and furs; with lead, copper, iron, coals, lumber, corn, rice, and fruits, besides earth and barks for dying.

These articles, with which it abounds even to profusion, may be transported to the ocean through this river, without greater difficulty than that which attends the conveyance of merchandize down some of those I have just mentioned. It is true that the Mississippi being the boundary between the English and Spanish settlements, and the Spaniards in possession of the mouth of it, they may obstruct the passage of it, and greatly dishearten those who make the first attempts; yet when the advantages that will certainly arise to settlers, are known, multitudes of adventurers, allured by the prospect of such abundant riches, will flock to it, and establish themselves, though at the expence of rivers of blood.

But should the nation that happens to be in possession of New Orleans prove unfriendly to the internal settlers, they may find a way into the Gulf of Mexico, by the river Iberville, which empties itself from the Mississippi, after passing through Lake Maurepas, into Lake Pontchartrain, which has a communication with the sea within the borders of West Florida. The river Iberville branches off from the Mississippi about eighty miles above New Orleans, and though it is at present choaked up in some parts, it might at an inconsiderable expence be made navigable, so as to answer all the purposes proposed.

Although the English have acquired since the last peace a more extensive knowledge of the interior parts than were ever obtained before, even by the French, yet many of their productions still remain unknown. And though I was not deficient either in assiduity or

attenti  
yet I  
was n  
quires  
rough  
hidden

The  
has hi  
hundr  
that is  
Plans  
of Me  
and I  
of the  
the Ill  
rokee,  
a very  
I flatter  
ed, wh  
of the  
sonal i  
confir  
plan I

I sh  
beginn  
with t

It i  
these  
procu  
and th  
quired

\* T  
Royal

attention during the short time I remained in them, yet I must acknowledge that the intelligence I gained was not so perfect as I could wish, and that it requires further researches to make the world thoroughly acquainted with the real value of those long hidden realms.

The parts of the Mississippi of which no survey has hitherto been taken, amount to upwards of eight hundred miles, following the course of the stream, that is, from the Illinois to the Ouifconsin Rivers. Plans of such as reach from the former to the Gulf of Mexico, have been delineated by several hands, and I have the pleasure to find that an actual survey of the intermediate parts of the Mississippi, between the Illinois River and the sea, with the Ohio, Cherokee, and Ouabache Rivers, taken on the spot by a very ingenious gentleman,\* is now published. I flatter myself that the observations therein contained, which have been made by one whose knowledge of the parts therein described was acquired by a personal investigation, aided by a solid judgment, will confirm the remarks I have made, and promote the plan I am here recommending.

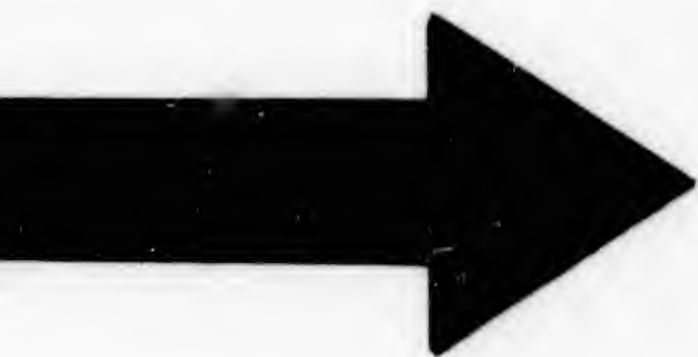
I shall also here give a concise description of each, beginning, according to the rule of geographers, with that which lies most to the north.

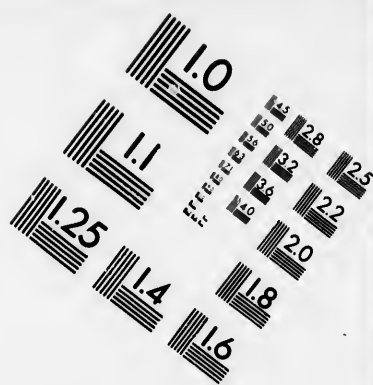
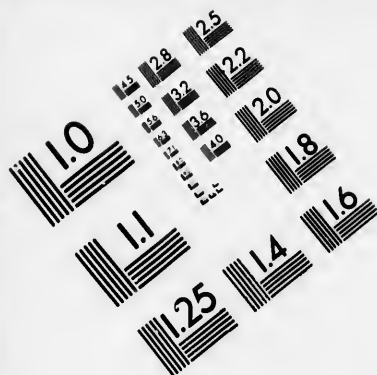
It is however necessary to observe, that before these settlements can be established, grants must be procured in the manner customary on such occasions, and the lands be purchased of those who have acquired a right to them by a long possession; but no

\* Thomas Hutchins, Esq; Captain in his Majesty's 60th, or Royal American Regiment of Foot.

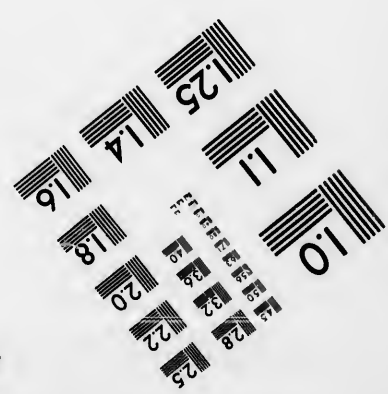
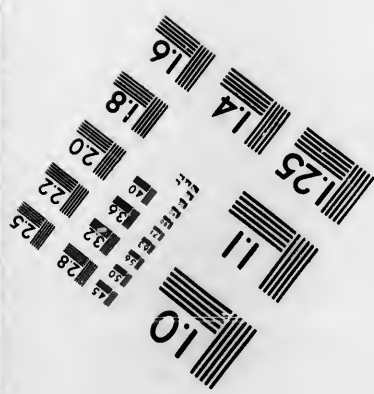
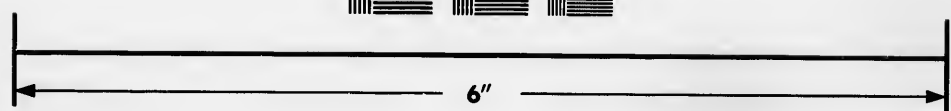
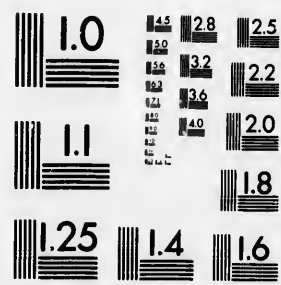








# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503



greater difficulty will attend the completion of this point, than the original founders of every colony on the continent met with to obstruct their intentions; and the number of Indians who inhabit these tracts being greatly inadequate to their extent, it is not to be doubted, but they will readily give up, for a reasonable consideration, territories that are of little use to them; or remove, for the accommodation of their new neighbours, to lands at a greater distance from the Mississippi, the navigation of which is not essential to the welfare of their communities.

No. I. The country within these lines, from its situation, is colder than any of the others; yet I am convinced that the air is much more temperate than in those provinces that lie in the same degree of latitude to the east of it. The soil is excellent, and there is a great deal of land that is free from woods in the parts adjoining to the Mississippi; whilst on the contrary, the north-eastern borders of it are well wooded. Towards the head of the River St Croix, rice grows in great plenty, and there is abundance of copper. Though the falls of Saint Anthony are situated at the south east corner of this division, yet that impediment will not totally obstruct the navigation, as the River St Croix, which runs through a great part of the southern side of it, enters the Mississippi just below the Falls, and flows with so gentle a current, that it affords a convenient navigation for boats. This tract is about one hundred miles from north-west to south-east, and one hundred and twenty miles from north-east to south-west.

No. II. This tract, as I have already described it in my Journal, exceeds the highest encomiums I can give it; notwithstanding which, it is entirely uninhabited, and the profusion of blessings that nature has showered on this heavenly spot, return unenjoyed

to the lap from whence they sprang. Lake Pepin, as I have termed it after the French, lies within these bounds; but the lake to which that name properly belongs is a little above the River St. Croix; however, as all the traders call the lower lake by that name, I have so denominated it, contrary to the information I received from the Indians. This colony lying in unequal angles, the dimensions of it cannot be exactly given, but it appears to be on an average about one hundred and ten miles long, and eighty broad.

No. III. The greatest part of this division is situated on the river Ouiskonsin, which is navigable for boats about one hundred and eighty miles, till it reaches the carrying place that divides it from the Fox River. The land which is contained within its limits, is in some parts mountainous, and in the other consists of fertile meadows and fine pasturage. It is furnished also with a great deal of good timber, and, as is generally the case on the banks of the Mississippi and its branches, has much fine, open, clear land, proper for cultivation. To these are added an inexhaustible fund of riches, in a number of lead mines which lie at a little distance from the Ouiskonsin towards the south, and appear to be uncommonly full of ore. Although the Saukies and Ottagaumies inhabit a part of this tract, the whole of the lands under their cultivation does not exceed three hundred acres. It is in length from east to west about one hundred and fifty miles, and about eighty from north to south.

No. IV. This colony consists of lands of various denominations, some of which are very good, and others very bad. The best is situated on the borders of the Green Bay and the Fox River, where there are innumerable acres covered with fine grass,

most part of which grows to an astonishing height. This river will afford a good navigation for boats throughout the whole of its course, which is about one hundred and eighty miles, except between the Winnebago Lake and the Green Bay; where there are several carrying-places, in the space of thirty miles. The Fox River is rendered remarkable by the abundance of rice that grows on its shores, and the almost infinite numbers of wild fowl that frequent its banks. The land which lies near it appears to be very fertile, and promises to produce a sufficient supply of all the necessaries of life for any number of inhabitants. A communication might be opened by those who shall settle here, either through the Green Bay, Lake Michigan, Lake Huron, Lake Erie, and Lake Ontario, with Canada, or by way of the Ouisconsin into the Mississippi. This division is about one hundred and sixty miles long from north to south, and one hundred and forty broad.

No. V. This is an excellent tract of land, and, considering its interior situation, has greater advantages than could be expected; for having the Mississippi on its western borders, and the Illinois on its south-east, it has as free a navigation as most of the others. The northern parts of it are for what mountainous, but it contains a great deal of level land, the soil of which is excellent, with many fine fertile meadows, and not a few rich mines. It is upwards of two hundred miles from north to south, and one hundred and fifty from east to west.

No. VI. This colony being situated upon the heads of the Rivers Illinois and Ouabache, the former of which empties itself immediately into the Mississippi, and the latter into the same river by means of the Ohio, will readily find a communication with the sea through these. Having also the

Ri  
La  
Ca  
ou  
an  
wil  
Fr  
fix  
eig

the  
to  
sipp  
cial  
dio  
and  
to  
con  
I ca

ba  
for  
of a  
and  
dre

N  
and  
all  
No.  
a cl  
and  
bein  
to f  
west  
to c

River Miamis passing through it, which runs into Lake Erie, an intercourse might be established with Canada also by way of the lakes, as before pointed out. It contains a great deal of rich fertile land, and though more inland than any of the others, will be as valuable an acquisition as the best of them. From north to south it is about one hundred and sixty miles, from east to west one hundred and eighty.

No. VII. This division is not inferior to any of the foregoing. Its northern borders lying adjacent to the Illinois River, and its western to the Mississippi, the situation of it for establishing a commercial intercourse with foreign nations is very commodious. It abounds with all the necessaries of life, and is about one hundred and fifty miles from north to south, and sixty miles from east to west; but the confines of it being more irregular than the others, I cannot exactly ascertain the dimensions of it.

No. VIII. This colony having the River Ouabache running through the centre of it, and the Ohio for its southern boundary, will enjoy the advantages of a free navigation. It extends about one hundred and forty miles from north to south, and one hundred and thirty from east to west.

No. IX. X. and XI. being similar in situation, and furnished with nearly the same conveniences as all the others, I shall only give their dimensions. No. IX. is about eighty miles each way, but not exactly square. No. X. is nearly in the same form, and about the same extent. No. XI. is much larger, being at least one hundred and fifty miles from north to south, and one hundred and forty from east to west, as nearly as from its irregularity it is possible to calculate.

After the description of this delightful country I have already given, I need not repeat that all the spots I have thus pointed out are as proper for colonization, abound not only with the necessaries of life, being well stored with rice, deer, buffaloes, bears, &c. but produce in equal abundance such as may be termed luxuries, or at least those articles of commerce before recited, which the inhabitants of it will have an opportunity of exchanging for the needful productions of other countries.

The discovery of a north-west passage to India has been the subject of innumerable disquisitions. Many efforts have likewise been made by way of Hudson's Bay, to penetrate into the Pacific Ocean, though without success. I shall not therefore trouble myself to enumerate the advantages that would result from this much-wished-for discovery, its utility being already too well known to the commercial world to need any elucidation; I shall only confine myself to the methods that appear most probable to ensure success to future adventurers.

The many attempts that have hitherto been made for this purpose, but which all have been rendered abortive, seem to have turned the spirit of making useful researches into another channel, and this most interesting one has almost been given up as impracticable; but, in my opinion, their failure rather proceeds from their being begun at an improper place, than from their impracticability.

All navigators that have hitherto gone in search of this passage, have first entered Hudson's Bay; the consequence of which has been, that having spent the season during which only those seas are navigable, in exploring many of the numerous inlets lying therein, and this without discovering any open-



ing, terrified at the approach of winter, they have hastened back for fear of being frozen up, and consequently of being obliged to continue till the return of summer in those black and dreary realms. Even such as have perceived the coasts to enfold themselves, and who have of course entertained hopes of succeeding, have been deterred from prosecuting their voyage, lest the winter should set in before they could reach a more temperate climate.

These apprehensions have discouraged the boldest adventurers from completing the expeditions in which they have engaged, and frustrated every attempt. But as it has been discovered by such as have sailed into the northern parts of the Pacific Ocean, that there are many inlets which verge towards Hudson's Bay, it is not to be doubted but that a passage might be made out from that quarter, if it be sought for at a proper season. And should these expectations be disappointed, the explorers would not be in the same hazardous situation with those who set out from Hudson's Bay, for they will always be sure of a safe retreat, through an open sea, to warmer regions, even after repeated disappointments. And this confidence will enable them to proceed with greater resolution, and probably be the means of effecting what too much circumspection or timidity has prevented.

These reasons for altering the plan of inquiry after this convenient passage, carry with them such conviction, that in the year 1774, Richard Whitworth Esq; Member of Parliament for Stafford, a gentleman of an extensive knowledge in geography, of an active, enterprising disposition, and whose benevolent mind is ever ready to promote the happiness of individuals, or the welfare of the public, from the representations made to him of the expedi-

ency of it by myself and others, intended to travel across the continent of America, that he might attempt to carry a scheme of this kind into execution.

He intended to have pursued nearly the same route that I did; and after having built a fort at Lake Pepin, to have proceeded up the River St Pierre, and from thence up a branch of the River Messorie, till having discovered the source of the Oregon, or River of the West, on the other side of the summit of the lands that divide the waters which run into the Gulf of Mexico from those that fall into the Pacific Ocean, he would have sailed down that river to the place where it is said to empty itself near the Straits of Annian.

Having there established another settlement on some spot that appeared best calculated for the support of his people, in the neighbourhood of some of the inlets that trend towards the north-east, he would from thence have begun his researches. This gentleman was to have been attended in the expedition by Colonel Rogers, myself, and others, and to have taken out with him a sufficient number of artificers and mariners, for building the forts and vessels necessary for the occasion, and for navigating the latter; in all not less than fifty or sixty men. The grants and other requisites for this purpose were even nearly compleated, when the present troubles in America began, which put a stop to an enterprize that promised to be of inconceivable advantage to the British dominions.

---

F I N I S.

travel  
ight at-  
cution.

e route  
ake Pe-  
e, and  
rie, till  
r River  
of the  
Gulf of  
ean, he  
where  
anian.

ent on  
e sup-  
ome of  
ist, he  
This  
expedi-  
s, and  
ber of  
ts and  
igating  
y men.  
se were  
roubles  
terprise  
age to

